

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 814SH/815SH.

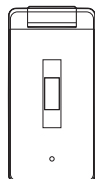
- For proper handset use, read this manual beforehand.
- This manual was created exclusively for SoftBank 814SH and 815SH handsets sold in Japan.
- Keep this manual in a convenient place for reference.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 814SH and 815SH are compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

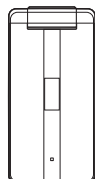
Note

- Copying this manual in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Manual content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this manual. Please contact Customer Service, General Information (**P.20-39**) about unclear or missing information.

Content Search



SoftBank
814SH



SoftBank
815SH

Using This Manual P.ii

Function/Title Search

▶ **Contents P.viii**
Index P.20-23

Objective Search

▶ **Objective Search P.iv**
Index P.20-23

Feature Search

▶ **Feature Search P.vi**
Contents P.viii

Using Handset

▶ **Display Indicators P.1-6**
Function List P.20-8

Manual Structure

▶ **Contents P.viii**
Chapter Contents

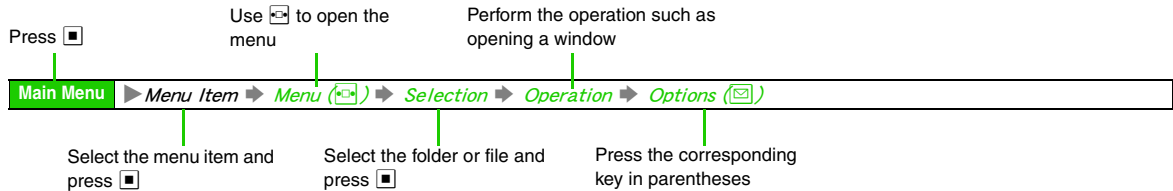
Troubleshooting & Assistance

▶ **Troubleshooting P.20-4**
Warranty & Service P.20-38

Getting Started	1
Basic Operations	2
Text Entry	3
Phone Book	4
Video Call	5
Camera	6
Media Player	7
Managing Files (Data Folder)	8
Additional Settings	9
Connectivity	10
Memory Card	11
Tools	12
Optional Services	13
Messaging	14
Yahoo! Keitai	15
S! Applications	16
S! FeliCa (Japanese)	17
Entertainment	18
Communication	19
Appendix	20

Abbreviated Steps

Handset operations starting from Main Menu are abbreviated as follows:



Manual descriptions are based on Standard Menu (P.1-22) with default font size (P.9-5). Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance when Simple Menu or Large Font Menu is active, font size is changed, etc.

In this SoftBank 814SH/815SH Instruction Manual, SoftBank 814SH/815SH is referred to as "handset."

Objective Search

My Contact Information

My Phone Number

Easily confirm your own phone number (phone number is saved on USIM Card)

My Details: P.1-17

My Mail Address

Change the default handset mail address to personalize it and help reduce spam

Customizing Handset Address: P.14-2

Customizing 814SH/815SH

Downloading Music (Japanese)

Access download site via Main Menu and follow links to find Chaku-Uta®

Downloading Media Files: P.7-3

Setting Ringtones & Ringvideos

Use downloaded music or video files as sound/video for handset responses

Ringtone/Ringvideo: P.9-2

Mastering The Basics

Learning the Handset

Learn handset key assignments and how to open/select menu items to access useful functions

Using This Manual: P.ii

Placing Calls

Place Voice Calls to other handsets or landlines, etc., or Video Calls to other video call-compatible mobile devices

Initiating a Call: P.2-2
Initiating a Video Call: P.5-3

Fun Stuff

Using Mobile Camera

Take advantage of a built-in 2 Mega Pixel camera to capture quality digital still or video images wherever you go

Capturing Still Images: P.6-6
Recording Video: P.6-7

Using Media Player

Use Media Player to play music or video files imported from PCs, etc. and saved on a Memory Card

Media Player: P.7-2

My Contact Information

Save your name, the handset mail address, etc. to exchange your own contact information with others easily

My Details: P.4-19

Messaging Multiple Recipients

Send text or multimedia messages to multiple numbers or addresses at one time using SMS or S! Mail messaging

Sending Text Messages: P.14-3
Adding Recipients: P.14-5

Exchanging Files Wirelessly

Align handset Infrared Port within 20 cm of a compatible device's infrared port to exchange a variety of handset files, etc.

Infrared: P.10-2

Customizing Standby Display

Change Wallpaper or install Custom Screens—applications that load single-themed Wallpaper, menus, tones, etc.

Wallpaper: P.9-4
Custom Screens: P.9-9

Customizing Fonts

Change font size/weight for menus, text entry, messaging windows, etc., or set all fonts with Large Font Menu

Large Font Menu: P.1-24
Font Settings: P.9-5

Customizing User Interface

Download and install applications that load user interface themes and menus based on previous handset interfaces

Familiar Usability: P.9-11

Entering Text

Enter alphanumerics and Japanese script, and Pictograms and Symbols in messages and Phone Book, etc.

Text Entry: P.3-2
Key Assignments: P.20-10

Using Messaging Services

Send short text messages via SMS or longer text/multimedia messages via S! Mail, or create Arrange Mail

Messaging: P.14-2
Creating Arrange Mail: P.14-8

Browsing the Internet

Launch Yahoo! Keitai to access Mobile Internet sites, or use PC Browser to browse PC Internet sites on handset

Yahoo! Keitai: P.15-2

Playing Games

Use preloaded S! Applications or download additional files via Yahoo! Keitai for mobile gaming

S! Applications: P.16-2

Shopping & Dining

Download Lifestyle-Appli and complete registration to use e-money, e-ticketing and reward point systems around town

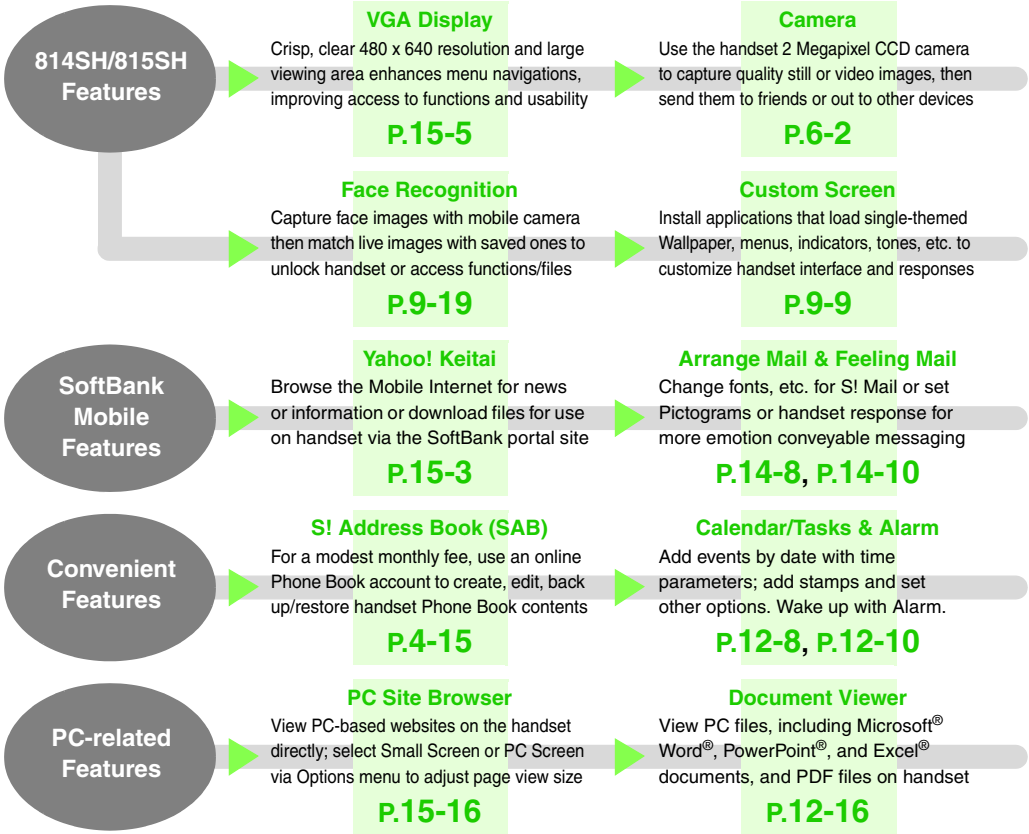
S! FeliCa (Japanese): P.17-2

Staying in Touch

Talk with multiple parties simultaneously via Circle Talk; exchange current usage status/mood with friends via Hot Status

Hot Status: P.19-3
Circle Talk: P.19-8

Feature Search



International Roaming

Make/receive calls, exchange mail or access services wherever compatible networks are available outside Japan

P.2-15

Standby Window (Japanese)

View news or Hot Status info, etc. as it scrolls across Standby Display; access shortcuts or Bookmarks, etc.

P.9-6

Memory Card

Extend handset onboard memory, back up and restore handset files, or connect handset to a PC for file transfers, etc.

P.11-2

BookSurfing® (Japanese)

Download and view e-media, such as e-books, comics and photo books, via this preinstalled S! Application

P.18-4

Simple Menu

Activate this function to radically transform handset user interface, limiting menu options to the basics

P.1-22

Near Chat (Japanese)

Exchange text messages wirelessly with another compatible Bluetooth® handset via preinstalled Near Chat S! Application

P.19-12

S! Town, S! Loop & S! Cast (Japanese)

Enjoy a virtual S! Town, keep in touch with S! Loop, or register for S! Cast for Weather Indicator, etc.

P.18-2, P.19-2

Hot Status & Circle Talk (Japanese)

Exchange current usage status, mood, etc. with other pre-registered users or talk with multiple parties simultaneously

P.19-3, P.19-8

Media Player

Use handset as a portable music player; play downloaded music as well as files transferred via PC, or stream Net media

P.7-2

Barcodes

Scan UPC/QR Code data into handset, or scan QR Codes to open Mobile Internet sites, etc.

P.12-19

Voice Recorder

Save voice memos on handset or Memory Card; use Memory Card to save longer recordings

P.12-14

Optional Services

Use Call Forwarding, Voicemail, etc. to handle incoming calls when unable to answer, or manage outgoing calling

P.13-2

USB Charge (Japanese) PC Required USB Cable Required

After installing Utility Software (CD-ROM) on a PC, connect handset via USB Cable to charge handset battery

P.10-12

Mass Storage PC Required USB Cable Required

Insert Memory Card into handset and connect it to a PC to access the Memory Card files via the PC

P.11-8

Handset Manager (Japanese) PC Required

Install Utility Software (CD-ROM) on a PC and connect handset via USB Cable to transfer files between handset and PC

P.X

1	Getting Started	
	USIM Card.....	1-2
	Parts & Functions	1-4
	About Battery	1-9
	Handset Power On/Off.....	1-16
	Handset Menus.....	1-18
	Change Menu	1-22
	Security Codes.....	1-25
2	Basic Operations	
	Initiating a Call	2-2
	Incoming Call	2-6
	Answer Phone	2-8
	Engaged Call Operations	2-10
	Call Log.....	2-12
	Call Timers.....	2-13
	Call Costs	2-14
	Outside Japan (International Roaming)	2-15
	Manner Mode & Offline Mode.....	2-17
	Emergency Calls	2-20
3	Text Entry	
	Characters	3-2
	Entering Characters.....	3-3
	Conversion Methods (Japanese).....	3-6
	Editing Characters	3-8
	User Dictionary	3-9
	Notepad.....	3-10
4	Phone Book	
	Overview	4-2
	Creating Phone Book Entries	4-4
	Using Phone Book.....	4-8

	Editing Phone Book Entries	4-10
	Category Settings.....	4-11
	Mail Groups	4-12
	Speed Dial List.....	4-14
	Additional Phone Book Settings.....	4-15
	S! Address Book (SAB).....	4-15
	My Details.....	4-19

5	Video Call	
	Getting Started.....	5-2
	Initiating a Video Call	5-3
	Answering a Video Call	5-3
	Engaged Video Call Operations	5-4
	Video Call Settings	5-5
	Remote Monitor	5-6

6	Camera	
	Getting Started.....	6-2
	Capturing Still Images.....	6-6
	Recording Video	6-7
	Opening Images & Playing Video.....	6-8
	Special Shooting Modes	6-9
	Sending Images	6-13
	Camera Settings	6-14

7	Media Player	
	Media Player Basics	7-2
	Obtaining Music/Video	7-3
	Playback Preparation	7-4
	Playing Music/Video	7-6
	Using Playlists	7-10
	Editing Video.....	7-11

8	Managing Files (Data Folder)	
	Data Folder.....	8-2
	Opening Files.....	8-3
	Managing Files & Folders.....	8-5
	Using Files	8-7
	Editing Still Images	8-9

9	Additional Settings	
	Customizing Handset Responses	9-2
	Display Settings.....	9-4
	Sound Settings	9-15
	Date & Time.....	9-16
	Handset Security	9-17
	Reset.....	9-24
	Call Settings.....	9-24

10	Connectivity	
	Infrared	10-2
	Bluetooth®.....	10-6
	Network Settings	10-11
	Location Info	10-12
	USB Charge (Japanese).....	10-12

11	Memory Card	
	About Memory Card	11-2
	Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)....	11-6
	Mass Storage	11-8

12 Tools

Calendar.....	12-2
Tasks.....	12-8
Alarm.....	12-10
World Clock.....	12-13
Calculator.....	12-13
Voice Recorder.....	12-14
Document Viewer.....	12-16
Stopwatch.....	12-17
Countdown Timer.....	12-17
Expenses Memo.....	12-18
Scan Barcode.....	12-19
Create QR Code.....	12-22
Text Scanner.....	12-23
Phone Help.....	12-25

13 Optional Services

Overview.....	13-2
Call Forwarding.....	13-3
Voicemail.....	13-4
Call Waiting.....	13-5
Conference Call.....	13-6
Call Barring.....	13-6
Caller ID.....	13-8

14 Messaging

Basics.....	14-2
Sending Text Messages.....	14-3
Incoming Text Messages.....	14-15
Using Messages.....	14-20
My Folders.....	14-28
Chat Folder.....	14-30
Settings.....	14-32

15 Yahoo! Keitai

Getting Started.....	15-2
Using Yahoo! Keitai.....	15-3
Basic Operations.....	15-5
Advanced Features.....	15-10
Streaming.....	15-13
Live Monitor (Japanese).....	15-14
Using PC Site Browser.....	15-16
Additional Functions.....	15-18

16 S! Applications

Getting Started.....	16-2
Using S! Applications.....	16-3
Managing S! Applications.....	16-5
S! Application Settings.....	16-5

17 S! FeliCa (Japanese)

Basics.....	17-2
Using S! FeliCa.....	17-3
Locking IC Card.....	17-5
S! FeliCa Settings.....	17-7

18 Entertainment

S! Cast (Japanese).....	18-2
e-Books (Japanese).....	18-4

19 Communication

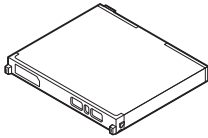
S! Town (Japanese).....	19-2
S! Loop (Japanese).....	19-2
Hot Status.....	19-3
Circle Talk.....	19-8
Near Chat (Japanese).....	19-12

20 Appendix

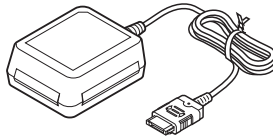
Software Update.....	20-2
Troubleshooting.....	20-4
Function List.....	20-8
Key Assignments.....	20-10
Pictogram List.....	20-12
Pager Code List.....	20-13
Character Code List.....	20-14
Specifications.....	20-20
Memory List.....	20-22
Index.....	20-23
Warranty & Service.....	20-38
Customer Service.....	20-39

Accessories

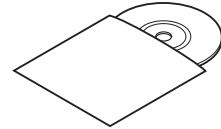
■ Lithium-ion Battery (Type 1) (SHBBB1)



■ AC Charger (SHCAA1)



■ Utility Software (CD-ROM)[★] (Japanese)



*Software updates/upgrades may become available on SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>) without notification.
Please check for the newest versions of Utility Software and download as required.

★Complimentary sample not available for purchase.

Note ► Supplied Utility Software (Japanese) is designed exclusively for 814SH and 815SH.

- Tip** ►
- For accessory-related information, please contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.20-39).
 - Handset takes microSD™ Memory Card (not included). Purchase one to use Memory Card functions.
 - In this manual, microSD™ Memory Card is referred to as "Memory Card."

Safety Precautions

- Read safety precautions before using handset.
- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

Before Using Handset

■ Symbols

Make sure you thoroughly understand these symbols before reading on. Symbols and their meanings are described below:



DANGER

Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use



WARNING

Risk of death or serious injury from improper use



CAUTION

Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use

■ Symbols



Prohibited Actions




Compulsory Actions



Attention Required

DANGER

Handset, Battery & Charger

Use specified battery, Charger and Desktop Holder only (P.x). 

Using non-specified equipment may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.


Do not short-circuit Charger terminals. 

Keep metal objects away from Charger terminals. Keep handset away from necklaces, hairpins, etc. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite causing injury. Use a case to carry battery.

Battery

Prevent injury from battery leakage, breakage or fire. Do not: 

- Heat or dispose of battery in fire
- Open/modify/disassemble battery
- Damage or solder battery
- Use a damaged or deformed battery
- Use non-specified charger (P.x)
- Force battery into handset
- Charge battery near fire or sources of heat; or expose it to extreme heat
- Use battery for other equipment

If battery fluid contacts eyes, do not rub them. Rinse with clean water and consult a doctor immediately. 

Eyes may be severely damaged.

WARNING

Handset, Battery & Charger

Do not insert foreign objects into the handset, Charger or Desktop Holder.



Do not insert metal or flammable objects into handset, Charger or Desktop Holder; may cause fire or electric shock. Keep out of children's reach.

Keep handset out of rain or extreme humidity.



Fire or electric shock may result.

Keep handset away from liquid-filled containers.



Keep the handset, Charger and Desktop Holder away from chemicals or liquids; fire or electric shock may result.

Keep battery, handset, Charger or Desktop Holder away from microwave ovens.



Battery, handset, Charger or Desktop Holder may leak, burst, overheat or ignite, leading to accidents or injury.

Do not disassemble or modify handset or related hardware.



- Do not open handset, Charger or Desktop Holder; may cause electric shock or injury. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance for repairs.
- Do not modify handset, Charger or Desktop Holder; fire or electric shock may result.

Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces.



May temporarily affect sight leading to accidents.

CAUTION:

Use of controls, adjustments or performance of procedure other than those specified herein may result in hazardous radiation exposure. As the emission level from Mobile Light LED used in this product is harmful to the eyes, do not attempt to disassemble the cabinet. Servicing is limited to qualified servicing station only.

If water or foreign matter is inside handset:



Discontinue handset use to prevent fire/electric shock. Turn off handset, remove battery and unplug Charger, then contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

WARNING

Handset, Battery & Charger

Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near filling stations or places with fire/explosion risk.



Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/explosion; turn handset off before using S! FeliCa at filling stations (cancel IC Card Lock beforehand).

Do not subject handset, Charger or Desktop Holder to strong shocks or impacts.



- Avoid strong shocks to AC Charger while it is plugged into the outlet; may cause malfunction or injury.
- Strong shocks or impacts to handset, Charger or Desktop Holder may cause malfunction or injury. Should handset be damaged, remove battery then contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance. Discontinue handset use; fire or electric shock may occur.

If an abnormality occurs:



If a handset emits an unusual sound, smoke or odor, discontinue use; may cause fire or electric shock. Turn off handset, remove battery and unplug Charger; contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

Handset

Take measures to prevent accidents.



- Do not use handset while driving; park beforehand. Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the Road Traffic Law (revised November 1, 2004).
- Do not use Headphones while driving or cycling. Accidents may result.
- Moderate volume outside, especially near road/rail crossings, etc. to avoid accidents.

Do not swing handset by strap.



May result in injury or breakage.

Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.



Using wireless devices aboard aircraft may cause electronic malfunctions or endanger aircraft operation.

Adjust vibration and ringtone settings:



Users with a heart condition/pacemaker/defibrillator should adjust handset settings accordingly.

During thunderstorms, turn power off; find cover.



There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.

WARNING

Charger

Use only the specified voltage.

Non-specified voltages may cause fire or electric shock.

• AC Charger: AC 100V-240V Input

- SoftBank is not liable for problems caused by charging battery abroad.

• In-Car Charger: DC 12V-24V Input



Do not use power adapters.

Using AC Charger with step-up/step-down transformer may cause fire, electric shock or damage.



Do not use In-Car Charger in positive earth vehicles.

Fire may result. Use in negative earth vehicles only.



Charger care

- Do not touch with wet hands. Electric shock may occur.



- Pull AC Charger straight out to unplug it; may cause malfunction or injury.
- Do not use multiple cords in one outlet; may cause excess heat/fire.
- Do not bend, twist, pull or set objects on cord. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.



Do not short-circuit Charger terminals.

May cause overheating, fire or electric shock. Keep metal away from terminals.



Do not use Desktop Holder inside vehicles.

Extreme temperature or vibration may cause fire or damage handset, etc.



Take measures to prevent accidents.

Secure In-Car Charger to avoid injury or accidents.



Damaged AC Charger/In-Car Charger cord:

May cause fire or electric shock; discontinue use and purchase a new Charger.



During thunderstorms:

Unplug Charger to avoid damage, fire or electric shock.



Charger/Desktop Holder use and children:

May cause electric shock/injury; keep out of reach.



WARNING

Battery

- If battery does not charge properly, stop charging. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.
- If there is leakage or abnormal odor, avoid fire sources. Battery may catch fire or burst.



If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery from handset. It may leak, overheat or explode.



Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away.



Radio waves can interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

Turn handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near.



Radio waves can interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

Observe these rules inside medical facilities:

- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals, including lobbies.
- Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.



Consult electronic medical equipment vendor on radio wave effects.



CAUTION

Handset, Battery & Charger

Handset care

- Place handset on stable surfaces to avoid malfunction or injury.
- Keep handset away from oily smoke or steam. Fire or accidents may result.
- Cold air from air conditioners may condense, resulting in leakage or burnout.
- Keep handset away from direct sunlight (inside vehicles, etc.) or heat sources. Distortion, discoloration or fire may occur. Battery shape may be affected.
- Keep handset out of extremely cold places to avoid malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from fire sources to avoid malfunction or accidents.



Usage environment

- Excessive dust may prevent heat release and cause burnout or fire.
- Avoid using handset on the beach. Sand may cause malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from credit cards, telephone cards, etc. to avoid data loss.



Handset

Handset temperature

Handset may become hot while in use. Avoid prolonged contact with skin especially at high temperature. May cause burn injuries.



Avoid leaving handset in extreme heat (inside vehicles, etc.).

Handset may become hot to the touch, leading to burn injuries.



Volume settings

Moderate handset volume; excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.



Inside vehicles

Handset use may cause electronic equipment to malfunction.



CAUTION

Handset

If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.

See handset materials below. Some materials may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.



Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Display side)	Magnesium alloy/Chemical conversion treatment, baking finish
Housing (External Display side)	ABS resin/Discontinuous deposition, UV painting
Housing (Keypad/battery side), battery cover	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Housing (hinge)	Nylon resin/Paint
Display window, lens cover, Mobile Light cover	Acrylic resin
Back ornament	Acrylic resin/Double-sided in-mold decorating
Small Light cover*	Acrylic resin
Infrared Port	ABS resin (infrared grade)
Portrait/Macro Selector	ABS resin
Housing stop pads	Silicon
Multi Selector (Cursor Keys)	814SH: PC resin/Chrome plating 815SH: PC resin/Paint, deposition (ring)
Multi Selector (center)	814SH: PC resin/Deposition 815SH: PC resin/Chrome plating
Start Key, Power On/Off Key, Mail Key, Yahoo! Keitai Key, Side Keys, Shortcuts & A/a Key, Clear/Back Key, Multimedia/Text Key, Multi Job/Manner Key, Keypad	PC resin/Paint
Memory Card Slot cover, AV OUT/Headphone Port cover, External Device Port cover	PC resin/Paint, elastomeric resin
Battery	PC resin
Charger Terminal	SUS/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)
Screw (all pieces)	SWCH16A/Ni plating
USIM pin	Copper alloy/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)

*814SH only.

CAUTION

Charger

Charger & In-Car Charger

- Grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect Charger. May cause fire/electric shock.
- Keep cord away from heaters. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.
- Stop use if plug is hot or improperly connected. May cause fire/electric shock.
- Keep In-Car Charger socket clean. May overheat and cause injury.



Do not touch Desktop Holder while in use.

May cause burn injuries.



Use only the specified fuse.

1 A fuse for In-Car Charger. Or may cause damage/fire.



Always charge battery in a well-ventilated area.

Avoid covering/wrapping Charger and Desktop Holder; may cause damage/fire.



Do not use In-Car Charger when engine is off.

To avoid weakening the car battery, always start engine before charging the handset using In-Car Charger.



During periods of disuse

Always unplug AC Charger or In-Car Charger after use.



Handset maintenance

Always disconnect AC Charger or In-Car Charger when cleaning handset.



In-Car Charger installation

Properly position the cable for safe driving to avoid injury or accidents.



⚠ CAUTION

Battery

Do not throw or abuse battery. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.



Do not leave battery in direct sunlight or inside a closed vehicle; may reduce battery performance or overheat. An overheated battery may cause fire.



Do not expose battery to liquids. Performance may deteriorate.



If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, rinse with clean water immediately.



Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.



Keep battery out of children's reach.



- Charge battery in ambient temperatures between 5°C and 35°C; outside this range, battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.
- If your child is using handset, explain all instructions and supervise usage.
- If there is abnormal odor or excessive heat, stop using battery and call SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.
- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable.



General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset or Memory Card data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**
Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.

Eavesdropping

Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

Inside Vehicles

- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.
- Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Aboard Aircraft

- Never use handset aboard aircraft (keep power off).
Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

Electromagnetic Waves

For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with accessories containing no metal, that position handset a minimum of 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

FCC Notice

- This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
 - (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

Highest SAR value:

Model	FCC ID	At the Ear	On the Body
814SH	APYHRO00056	0.774 W/kg	0.640 W/kg
815SH	APYHRO00057	0.947 W/kg	0.666 W/kg

This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.

The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid> after searching on the corresponding FCC ID (see table on the left).

Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) Website at <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide*.

Highest SAR value:

Model	At the Ear**	On the Body
814SH	1.235 W/kg	0.959 W/kg
815SH	1.312 W/kg	0.901 W/kg

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the Network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a hands-free device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

*Please see General Notes (Electromagnetic Waves) on **P.xxi** for important notes regarding body-worn operation.

**Values are measured in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

Declaration of Conformity

CE 0168

Hereby, Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd, declares that 814SH and 815SH are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

A copy of the original declaration of conformity for each model can be found at the following Internet address:
<http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/>

Handset Care

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset between 5°C - 35°C (35% - 85% humidity). Avoid extreme temperatures and direct sunlight.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- Clean handset with dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Do not expose handset to rain, snow or high humidity.
- Never disassemble or modify handset.
- Avoid scratching handset Display.
- When closing handset, keep straps, etc. outside to avoid damaging the Display.
- When using Headphones, moderate volume to avoid sound bleed.
- **Function Usage Limits**
These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/
replacement or service cancellation:
 - Camera ■ Media Player ■ S! ApplicationsAfter a period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; retrieve Network Information (**P.10-11**) to restore usability.
- **Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.**
 - Keep handset away from precipitation.
 - Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.
 - Avoid dropping handset in damp places (toilet, bathroom, etc.).
 - On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.
 - Perspiration may seep inside handset causing malfunction.
- **Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.**
 - Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.
 - Do not place heavy objects on handset in a bag.
- Connect only specified products to AV OUT/Headphone Port. Other devices may malfunction or cause damage.
- Always turn off handset before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

Video recording and playback are based on **MPEG-4**.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use.

Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA.

See <http://www.mpegla.com>.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional license and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.

See <http://www.mpegla.com> for additional details.



Handset employs RSA® BSAFE™ software developed by RSA Security Inc.

RSA is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

This product is equipped with JBlend™ designed to accelerate the performance of Java™ Application. Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 1997-2007 Aplix Corporation.

All rights reserved.

JBlend and JBlend-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.

Java and Java-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.





microSD™ and miniSD™ are trademarks of the SD Card Association.

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:

4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773 5,101,501 5,506,865
5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054 5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196
5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338 5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420
5,416,797 5,659,569 5,710,784 5,778,338

NetFront®

This product employs NetFront Browser (Internet browser) and NetFront SMIL Player (SMIL player) developed by ACCESS Co., Ltd. Copyright © 1996-2007 ACCESS Co., Ltd.

ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan or other countries.

This product includes a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by SHARP is under license.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.

FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.

 is a registered trademark of FeliCa Network, Inc.

IrSS™ and IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of the Infrared Data Association®.

The frequency band used for the Bluetooth® function of handset is shared with other industrial, scientific or medical equipment (microwave ovens, etc.), and used at premises radio stations, amateur radio stations, etc. (hereinafter "other radio stations").

- 1 Before using the Bluetooth® function, visually check that there are no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band nearby.
- 2 Should interference occur between handset and other radio stations, move to other place or stop the Bluetooth® function (stop the transmission) immediately.
- 3 For additional information and support, contact us at the following number.

SoftBank Customer Center, General Information

From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157 for General Information.
From landlines, see **P.20-39** "Customer Service."

- This radio equipment operates in the 2.4 GHz band using the FH-SS modulation, and its maximum communication distance is ten meters.

2.4FH1



Microsoft® Word is a product name of Microsoft Corporation in the United States.

Microsoft, PowerPoint and Microsoft Excel are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

This product employs Adobe® Flash® Lite™ technology developed by Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Copyright© 1995-2007 Adobe Macromedia Software LCC. All rights reserved.

Adobe and Flash are either trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.



QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.

Powered by Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™

Mascot Capsule is a registered trademark of HI Corporation.
©2002-2007 HI Corporation. All rights reserved.



Document Viewer is enabled by Picstel Technologies.

Picstel, Picstel Powered, Picstel Viewer, Picstel File Viewer, Picstel Document Viewer, Picstel PDF Viewer and the Picstel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picstel Technologies Ltd.

Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

BookSurfing® is a registered trademark of CELSYS Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.

- SOFTBANK, SoftBank and the SoftBank logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.
- Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

Video Call, S! Application, Custom Screen, Sky Mail, Movie Sha-mail, Sha-mail, 3D Pictogram, Input Memory, Near Chat, Multi Job, S! Mail, Arrange Mail, Feeling Mail, S! Cast, S! Town, S! Loop, Standby Window, PC Site Browser, Weather Indicator, Live Monitor, S! Address Book, Circle Talk, Hot Status, Lifestyle-Appli and Familiar Usability are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

CP8 PATENT

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

814SH and 815SH meet the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.

These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg^* .

This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).

The highest SAR value is 1.01 W/kg for 814SH, and 0.882 W/kg for 815SH. Tests for SAR are conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level, and follow the testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.

Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the Websites on the right.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (Protection from Radio Wave Environment)

<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/index.htm>

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)

<http://www.arib-emf.org/index02.html> (Japanese)

*Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2)

1

Getting Started

USIM Card	1-2	Handset Menus	1-18
■ About USIM Card	1-2	■ Main Menu	1-18
■ USIM Card Installation	1-3	■ User Shortcuts	1-19
■ USIM PINs.....	1-3	■ Quick Operations	1-20
Parts & Functions	1-4	■ Standby Window (Japanese)	1-20
■ Handset	1-4	■ Multi Job.....	1-21
■ Display Indicators	1-6	■ Pen Light.....	1-21
■ Handset Positions.....	1-8	Change Menu	1-22
About Battery	1-9	■ Simple Menu	1-22
■ Battery & Charger.....	1-9	■ Large Font Menu.....	1-24
■ Battery Installation.....	1-12	Security Codes	1-25
■ AC Charger.....	1-13	■ Handset Code	1-25
■ Desktop Holder.....	1-14	■ Center Access Code	1-25
■ In-Car Charger	1-15	■ Network Password	1-25
Handset Power On/Off	1-16		
■ My Details.....	1-17		
■ Keypad Lock.....	1-17		

USIM Card

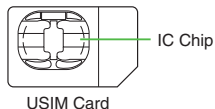
About USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including the handset number, and limited storage for Phone Book entries and SMS messages. USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset.

- Save contacts on USIM Card Phone Book (**P.4-3**).
- Insert into compatible SoftBank handsets to access files.
- Do not apply excessive force to insert/remove USIM Card.
- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device.

SoftBank is not liable for resulting damages.

- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean; malfunction may result.
- Use a dry, soft cloth to clean the USIM Card.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Malfunction may result.



Note ▶ Some downloaded files may be inaccessible after repairs, USIM Card replacement or handset upgrade/replacement. In addition, S! Applications, BookSurfing®, S! Town and Near Chat may be disabled after USIM Card replacement.

■ If Handset is Dropped or Subjected to Shocks

Handset may not recognize USIM Card; **REFRESH** appears and handset returns to Standby. This is not a malfunction. If **Insert USIM Card** appears, clean and properly reinsert USIM Card then restart handset.

Important

- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Back up USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (**P.20-39**).

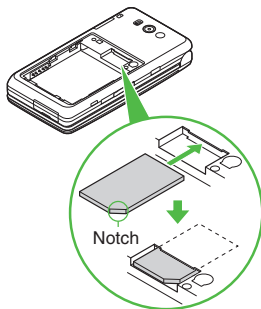
USIM Card Installation

- Follow the steps below after removing battery (P.1-12).
- Take care not to lose removed USIM Card.

Inserting

1 Slide in USIM Card with IC chip facing down

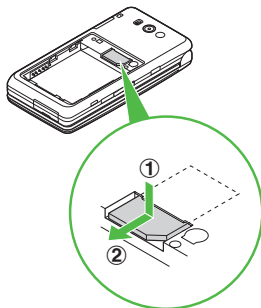
- Reinstall battery (Steps 3 - 4 in "Inserting" on P.1-12).



Removing

1 Gently slide out USIM Card as shown

- Reinstall battery (Steps 3 - 4 in "Inserting" on P.1-12).



USIM PINs

There are two Security Codes for USIM Card: **PIN1** and **PIN2**. PIN 1 and PIN 2 are **9999** by default; change as needed (P.9-23).

PIN1	A 4-digit Security Code to prevent unauthorized use of handset; required when PIN Entry (P.9-23) is active
PIN2	Required to clear Call Costs and to set Max Cost (P.9-24)

PIN Lock & PUK Code

Entering incorrect PIN1 or PIN2 three consecutive times activates PIN1 Lock or PIN2 Lock. Personal Unlocking Key (PUK Code) cancels PIN Lock. Call SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.20-39) for details.

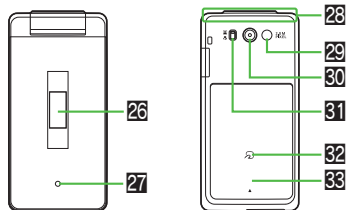
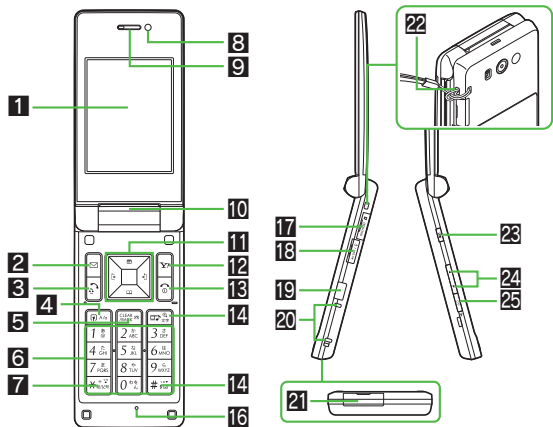
Canceling PIN Lock

- Open a function requiring PIN ➔ Enter PUK Code ➔ Press ➔ Enter new PIN ➔ Press ➔ Re-enter new PIN ➔ Press
- Entering incorrect PUK Code ten consecutive times locks USIM Card, disabling handset. Write it down. To learn how to unlock USIM Card, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.20-39).

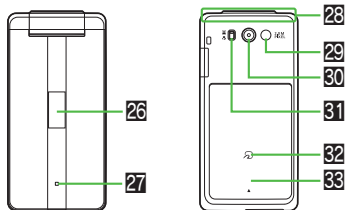
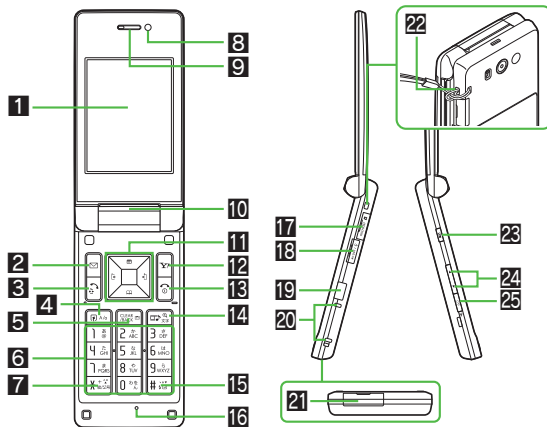
Parts & Functions

Handset

814SH



815SH



- 1 Display**
- 2 Mail Key**
Open Messaging menu or execute Softkey functions (P.1-18).
- 3 Start Key**
Initiate/answer calls. Open records of All Calls.
- 4 Shortcuts & A/a Key**
Open Shortcuts menu. In text entry windows, toggle upper/lower case roman letters or standard/small hiragana/katakana.
- 5 Clear/Back Key**
Delete entries, escape/return to previous window.
- 6 Keypad**
- 7 * Key**
- 8 Internal Camera**
Use during Video Call.
- 9 Earpiece**
- 10 Speaker**
- 11 Multi Selector & Keypad Lock Key**
Select menu items, move cursor, scroll, etc. In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Keypad Lock.
- 12 Yahoo! Keitai Key**
Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu or execute Softkey functions (P.1-18).
- 13 Power On/Off Key**
Press and hold to turn handset power on/off.
- 14 Multimedia/Text Key**
Start Media Player or change character entry mode.
- 15 # Key**
- 16 Microphone**
- 17 Memory Card Slot**
Insert Memory Card here.
- 18 AV OUT/Headphone Port**
Connect Headphones, Video Cable, etc.
- 19 Infrared Port**
Use for infrared data transmissions.
- 20 Charger Terminal**
- 21 External Device Port**
Connect Charger here.
- 22 Strap Eyelet**
Attach straps as shown; avoid metallic straps.
- 23 Circle Talk Key**
Press and hold to speak during Circle Talk.
- 24 Volume/Zoom Key**
Adjust Earpiece Volume or zoom mobile camera.
- 25 Multi Job/Manner Key**
Toggle multiple active function windows. Press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Manner mode.
- 26 External Display**
- 27 Small Light**
Flashes for calls/new mail; illuminates red while charging.
- 28 Internal Antenna Location**

29 Mobile Light

Use as strobe/Pen Light.

30 External Camera (lens cover)**31 Portrait (👤)/Macro (🌺) Selector****32 Logo**

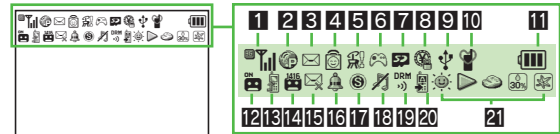
SI FeliCa contactless IC Card embedded.

33 Battery Cover**Note ▶ Internal Antenna**

- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna.
- Voice quality varies with handset usage/location.

Tip ▶ External Display

Shuts off when handset is open; see P.1-8 "External Display."

Display Indicators**Display****1 Signal Strength**

📶: Within 3G Range, 📶: Within GSM Range

📶: Strong, 📶: Moderate, 📶: Low, 📶: Weak

out: Out-of-Range

2 Calls/Circle Talk, Offline Mode (P.2-19)**SSL (P.15-2), Packet Transmission**

📞: Incoming Voice Call, 📞: Voice Call in Progress

📞: Incoming Video Call, 📞: Video Call in Progress

📞: Incoming Circle Talk Request, 📞: Offline Mode, 📞: SSL

📶: Packet Transmission Protocol Ready

📶: Waiting/Packet Transmission in Progress

📶: Packet Transmission Available

3 Mail (P.14-17)

📧: Unread Mail, 📧: Unread Delivery Report

📧 (red): Memory Low, 📧: Receiving Mail, 📧: Sending Mail

4 Hot Status (P.19-3)

📶: Hot Status Online, 📶: Unread Hot Status Notification

📶: Hot Status Registration Request Received

5 Cast Info (P.18-2), Software Update (P.20-2)**Live Monitor Info (P.15-14)**

📶: Cast Info, 📶: Software Update

📶: Software Update Result, 📶: Live Monitor Info

6 S! Application (P.16-3), Music Player (P.7-5)

- : Active S! Application, : Paused S! Application
- : Music Player Active

7 Memory Card Status (P.11-2)

- : Inserted, : In Use, : Formatting
- : Unusable/Poor Connection

8 Multi Job (P.1-21), IC Card Lock

- : Multiple Functions (Multi Job) Active
- : IC Card Lock Active

9 External Transmission, S! Address Book Transmission (P.4-15)**PC Site Browser (P.15-16)**

- : USB Transmission Ready, : USB Transmission in Progress
- : Infrared Connection in Progress
- : Infrared Transmission in Progress
- : Bluetooth® Transmission Ready
Appears in gray when Visibility is set to **Hide My Phone**.
- : Bluetooth® Transmission in Progress
- : Bluetooth® Talk in Progress
- : Bluetooth® Audio Output in Progress
- : S! Address Book Transmission in Progress
- : PC Site Browser in Use

10 Mode (P.9-2), Loudspeaker (P.2-10)**Microphone Mute (P.2-10)**

- : Manner, : Drive, : Original
- : Loudspeaker Active, : Microphone Muted
- : Loudspeaker Active & Microphone Muted

11 Battery Strength (P.1-11)

Indicator may appear vertically (e.g.).

12 Answer Phone (P.2-8)

- : Answer Phone Active
- : Answer Phone Active & Message Recorded
- : Answer Phone Canceled & Message Recorded

13 Call Forwarding (P.13-3) or Voicemail (P.13-4) Active

Appears when **Always** (forwarding condition) is set for Voice Calls.

14 New Voicemail (P.13-4)**15 Message Delivery Failure (P.14-3)****16 Alarm (P.12-10), Schedule (P.12-4)**

- : Alarm Set
- : Schedule (Alarm Set), : Schedule (Alarm Unset)

17 Show Secret Data (P.9-23)**Password Lock (P.9-17), Keypad Lock (P.1-17)**

- : Show Secret Data Active
- : Password Lock Active, : Keypad Lock Active

18 Ringtone (P.9-2), Vibration (P.9-3)




- : Silent, : Increasing Volume, : Vibration Active
- : Silent & Vibration Active

19 Copyright Information, Infrared Transmission (P.10-2)

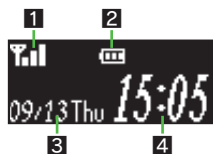
- : Content Key Received
When Content Key memory is low, (below 10 %) or (below 5 %) appears.
- (gray): Infrared Transmission Ready

20 Auto Answer (P.9-25) or Remote Monitor (P.5-6) Active**21 Weather Indicator (P.18-3)**

External Display

Press ,  or  with handset closed to turn External Display Backlight on.

See major External Display indicators below.



1 Signal Strength

















2 Battery Strength





3 Date

4 Time


Additional Indicators

Indicator and number of calls/messages, etc. appear (after animation) for missed calls, new mail/information, etc.

	Missed Calls		New Delivery Report
	Answer Phone Message		Message Delivery Failure
	Missed Call Notification		Content Key
	New Voicemail		Bluetooth® Notification
	Alarm		New Cast Info
	Schedule Alarm		Cast Reception Failure
	Task Alarm		Hot Status Notification
	New Messages		Weather Indicator Update

- Up to two indicators appear at the same time. Press  or  to view more.
- Corresponding Pictogram (, etc.) appears for Feeling Mail.
- When new mail arrives, press  to read the message (P.14-15).

Toggle Clock View

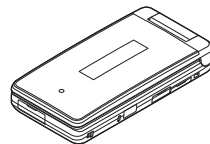
■ With handset closed, press .

- View is fixed while music plays, during infrared transfers, etc.

Handset Positions

■ Handset Closed

Handset is closed. Keep handset in this position when not in use.



■ Handset Open

Handset is open. Place or answer calls, enter text, etc.



About Battery

Battery & Charger

Charge battery before first use/after period of disuse.

Battery Life

- Do not use/store battery at extreme temperatures; this may shorten battery life.
Ideally, use/store between 5°C - 35°C.
- Use specified Charger only; others may damage handset/battery or overheat or ignite battery.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.


Charging

- Do not use Charger for other purposes.
- Contact with metal may short, overheat or burst battery.
- Small Light illuminates red while charging. (It may take longer for the light to illuminate when handset is off.)

- Charging via AC Charger takes approximately 140 minutes (with handset off).
 - **Charging time may vary by ambient temperature.**
- Handset and Charger may warm during charging.
- Separate Charger from TV/radio if interference occurs.

Precautions

- Clean device charging terminals with a dry cotton swab.
- Avoid:
 - Extreme temperatures
 - Humidity, dust and vibration
 - Direct sunlight
- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable.
- Use a case when carrying battery separately.

- Tip** ►
- Battery must be inside handset to charge it.
 - While charging battery with handset on,  flashes until battery is fully charged.
 - Charge battery via PC USB port (P.10-12 "USB Charge").

Estimated Hours of Use (fully charged battery)

Continuous Talk Time (P.20-20)	230 minutes in 3G 230 minutes in GSM
Continuous Standby Time (P.20-20)	300 hours in 3G 290 hours in GSM
Continuous Operating Time	5 hours
Continuous Playback Time	12 hours
Continuous Video Call Talk Time	120 minutes (with Internal Camera in use)

Values calculated with Backlight Brightness set to **Level:2**.

- Continuous Operating Time is the length of time handset keys can be pressed continuously without calls.
- Continuous Playback Time is measured while music plays (Sound Effects set to **Normal**) using Headphones, Offline Mode canceled, and with handset closed.
- The above values (Battery Time) are nominal values, measured under stable signal conditions.

Battery Time

Using handset in poor conditions may shorten Battery Time:

• Power Consuming Operations

- Activating/using S! Applications
- Repeated mobile camera use or barcode scanning
- Frequent use of Mobile Light
- Playing video images
- Frequent use of Pen Light
- Continuous Keypad use (keeping backlights on for long periods)
- Using Music Player/Voice Recorder
- Frequent Bluetooth® transmissions
- Frequent infrared transfers
- Frequent opening/closing of handset
- Signal is weak/handset is out-of-range

• Power Hungry Settings

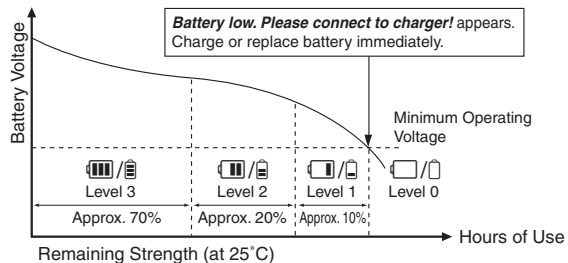
- Long Backlight Time Out/Display Saving times consume more power (especially if Display Saving is **Always On**)
- Setting Backlight to illuminate brighter
- Activating Bluetooth® in Standby
- Activating Video Output
- Activating Keypad Tones

■ Extend Battery Time

Adjust Light Settings (**P.9-12**) to extend Battery Time. Select shorter Display Saving/Backlight time and lower Brightness.

Battery Strength

Battery Strength indicator varies as shown.



Battery Strength & Environment



At low temperatures, battery is consumed faster.

At high temperatures, battery lasts longer.



Note ► At Level 1, some functions including Video Camera, Music Player and Voice Recorder do not operate.

Small Light & Battery Strength Indicator


Handset Power On

Small Light	Indicator ( / )	Conditions
Off	Flashes	Ambient temperature is outside the range of 5°C to 35°C
Flashes red	Flashes	Battery life has ended, or battery defect
Illuminates red	Flashes	Charging
Off	On	Charging completed/Standby

Handset Power Off

Small Light	Indicator ( / )	Conditions
Flashes red	Off	Battery life has ended, or battery defect
Illuminates red	Off	Charging
Off	Off	Charging completed

When Battery Runs Out

A message appears and short beeps sound. Press  to stop short beeps. (Short beeps do not sound in Manner mode.)

During Voice Call

A double beep sounds every five seconds. After 20 seconds, the call ends and handset shuts down.

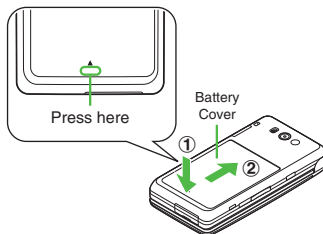
During Video Call

A message appears and call ends with a double beep, then short beeps sound. Handset shuts down after 20 seconds.

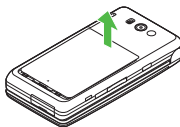
Battery Installation

Inserting

- 1 Press down and slide cover as shown**

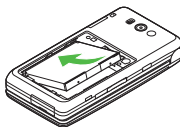


- 2 Lift and remove cover as shown**



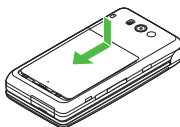
3 Insert battery

- With printed side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.



4 Close cover

- Position and slide the cover gently as shown until it stops.



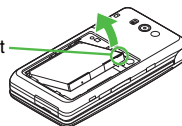
Removing

- Turn handset power off before removing battery.
- Do not remove battery immediately after saving files, sending messages, etc.

1 Perform Steps 1 - 2 on the left

2 Remove battery

- Take hold of Battery Tab here and lift as shown.



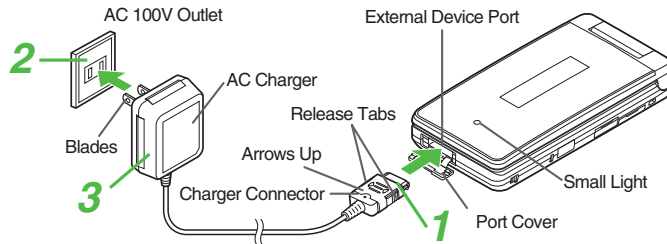
Battery Disposal

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take exhausted battery to a SoftBank shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

Tip ▶ This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.

- To recycle a used lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown to the right.
- To avoid fire or electric shock, do not:
 - Short-circuit battery
 - Disassemble battery





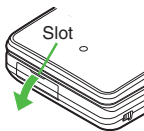
Use supplied/optional AC Charger only.

1 Open Port Cover to connect Charger

- Use slot to gently pull Port Cover down and out as shown.
- Insert connector until it clicks.

2 Plug Charger into AC outlet

- Small Light illuminates red while charging (P.1-11); may take up to approximately 140 minutes.
- When charging completes Small Light goes out.
- **Extend Charger blades. (Fold back when not in use.)**



3 After Charging

Unplug Charger, then disconnect handset

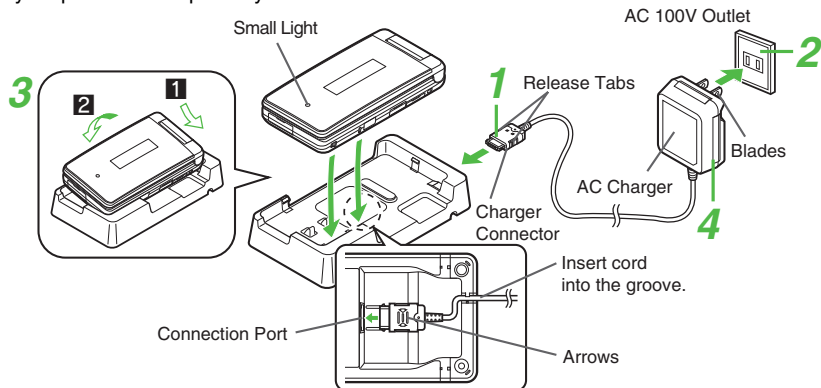
- Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.
- Replace Port Cover to protect External Device Port.

Note ▶

- Do not pull, bend or twist AC Charger cord.
- Pull AC Charger straight out to unplug it.
- AC Charger is compatible with household currents between AC 100V and 240V.
- SoftBank is not liable for problems resulting from charging battery abroad.

Desktop Holder

Desktop Holder may be purchased separately.



Use supplied/optional AC Charger only.

1 Insert Charger connector into Desktop Holder until it clicks

- Connection Port is on the back of Desktop Holder.

2 Plug Charger into AC outlet

- Extend Charger blades. (Fold back when not in use.)



3 Gently insert handset into Desktop Holder

- Fit tabs into slots as shown in **1** and push handset as indicated in **2** until it clicks into place (resting flat).
- Small Light illuminates red while charging (P.1-11); may take up to approximately 140 minutes.
- When charging completes Small Light goes out.

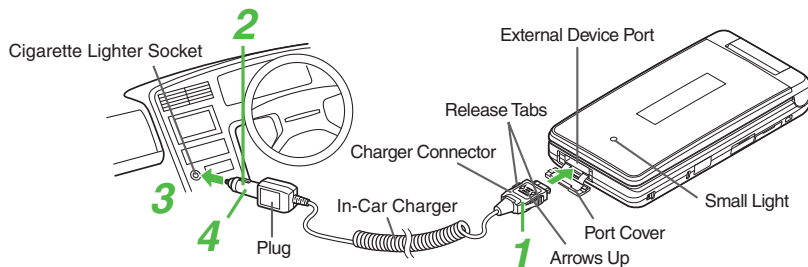
4 After Charging

Unplug Charger, then disconnect handset

- To remove connector, squeeze release tabs.

In-Car Charger

In-Car Charger may be purchased separately.



1 Open Port Cover to connect In-Car Charger

- Insert connector until it clicks.

2 Plug Charger into cigarette lighter socket

3 Start car engine

- Small Light illuminates red while charging (P.1-11); may take up to approximately 140 minutes.
- When charging completes Small Light goes out.

4 After Charging

Unplug Charger, then disconnect handset

- Squeeze release tabs to remove connector.
- Replace Port Cover to protect External Device Port.

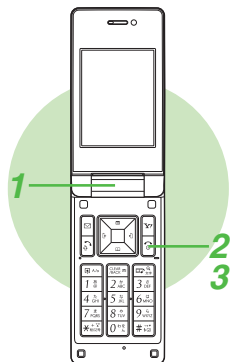
Note

- Use In-Car Charger in negative earth vehicles only.
- Disconnect Charger before leaving vehicle to prevent charging with engine off.
- Do not use In-Car Charger with Desktop Holder.
- Avoid charging battery inside extremely hot vehicles.
- Never use handset while driving.

Tip

- For more information, see In-Car Charger manual.
- Use optional In-Car Holder to secure handset.

Handset Power On/Off



Standby

1 Open handset

2 Press and hold

After Power On Graphic, handset enters Standby.

3 Turning Off

Press for 2+ seconds

After Power Off Graphic, handset shuts down.

Initial Setup (Menu, My Details & Network Information)

If Japanese appears the first time handset is powered up, follow these steps to restart it in English:


Press  → Press  → Press  → Press  → Press  → Select 設定 (at bottom right) → Press  → Select Language → Press  → Select English → Press  → Perform Step 3 above → Perform Step 2 above




■ After startup, Change Menu window opens. (For details, see P.1-22.)

Select Simple Menu, Standard Menu or Large Font Menu → Press 

■ After menu interface is set, My Details setup starts.

Enter last name → Press  → Enter first name → Press 

• Change Menu display option confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** or **No** and press . Standby appears.

■ Handset initiates Network Information retrieval when ,  or  is pressed for the first time.

Choose Yes → Press 

• Retrieve Network Information to use Network-related services; retrieval automatically sets Clock.

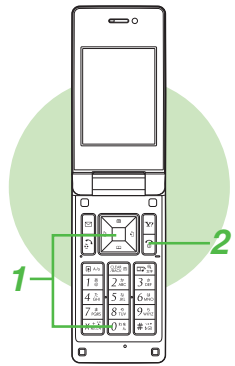
• To update Network Information manually, see P.10-11 "Retrieve NW Info."

• Unless otherwise noted, operations in this manual are described with Clock set.

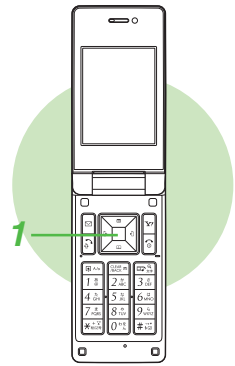
- Note** ▶
- USIM Card data is read after turning power on. Signal strength indicator may take some time to appear. It may take longer when turning power on for the first time.
 - **Insert USIM Card** appears when USIM Card is not inserted (P.1-2).

Tip ▶ Display turns off after a period of inactivity.

My Details



- 1** Press Handset phone number appears.
 - To add, edit or delete My Details, see P.4-19.
- 2** Press to exit



Keypad Lock

Use Keypad Lock to lock handset keys and prevent accidental operation/function activation.

Activating Canceling

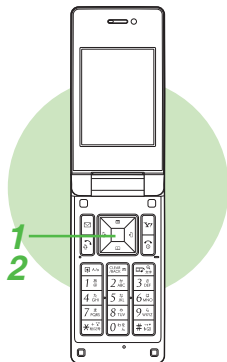
- 1** Press for 1+ seconds
 appears and Keypad Lock is set.
- 1** Press for 1+ seconds
 disappears.

Note ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when Keypad Lock is active. See P.2-20.

Tip ▶ **When Keypad Lock is Active**

- Incoming calls temporarily cancel Keypad Lock. To answer a call, press . [Activate Any Key Answer (P.9-3) to answer calls with other keys (P.2-6).] Keypad lock reactivates after the call.
- Handset power does not turn off even if is pressed for 2+ seconds.

Handset Menus



1
2



Main Menu
Shortcut to Custom
Screens (P.9-9)

Main Menu

Access functions/operations from **Main Menu**.

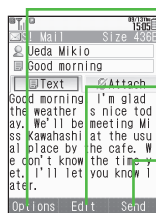
- 1 Press

Main Menu opens.
- 2 Use to select an item and press

Sub Menu opens (P.20-8 - 20-9).

Softkeys

- Softkey functions appear at the bottom of Display.



Press to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

Press to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

Press to select or execute the assigned function or operation.

Return to Standby

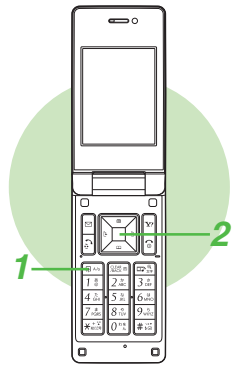
- Press to return to Standby from function windows, menus, etc.
 - When a confirmation appears, choose **Yes** and press . Handset returns to Standby.

Main Menu Items

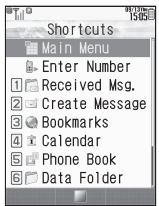
Communication	Launch Hot Status, Circle Talk, S! Town, S! Loop or Near Chat
Yahoo! Keitai	Access Yahoo! Keitai Mobile Internet and PC sites or use Live Monitor
Media Player	Play/download music/video
Messaging	Open/create messages, etc.
Camera	Capture images or record video
Data Folder	Open files saved on handset/ Memory Card
Tools	Use Calendar, Alarms, etc.
Entertainment	Use e-Book Viewer, access BookSurfing® or launch S! Cast
S! Appli	Use/download S! Applications
Lifestyle-appli	Customize IC Card settings to use e-money services, etc.
Phone	Search contacts, add entries, etc.
Settings	Customize handset interface, sounds, etc.

User Shortcuts

Access functions, folders or menus quickly via Shortcuts.



1 Press
 Default shortcuts appear.

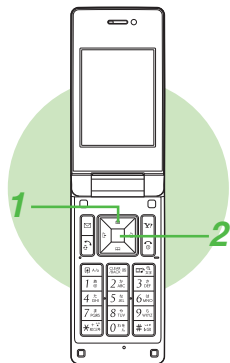
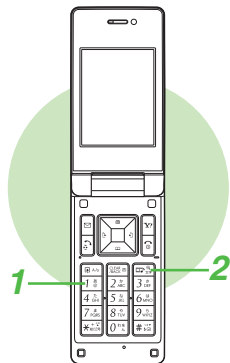


2 Select an item and press

■ Editing Shortcuts

Edit items except *Main Menu* and *Enter Number*.

Assign	Change default shortcuts
	Press → Select an item → Press Options → Select Assign → Press → Select new item → Press or Assign
Move	Change item order
	Press → Select an item → Press Options → Select Move → Press → Use to select target location → Press
Set to Default	Restore default shortcuts
	Press → Press Options → Select Set to Default → Press → Choose Yes → Press

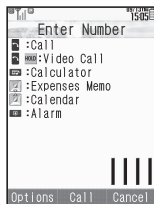


Quick Operations

In Standby, enter numbers to access functions. Accessible functions vary by entered digits. To activate functions, press corresponding Softkey.

■ Example: Enter 1111 to use Calculator

1 Press



2 Press

■ Available Operations

Function	Digits	Refer to
Speed Dial*	1	P.4-14
Speed Video Call*	1	P.4-14
Speed Mail*	1	P.14-13
Expenses Memo	1 - 6	P.12-18
Calculator	1 - 12	P.12-13
Calendar	4	P.12-2
Set Alarm	4	P.12-10
Place International Calls	5 - 32	P.2-3
Call Circle Talk	11 - 32	P.19-8

*Save entries beforehand.

Standby Window (Japanese)

View Live Monitor news in Standby.

1 Press

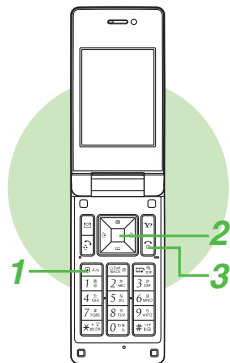
Standby Window (P.9-6) opens.

2 Press

Information appears.

■ Press to exit.






Multi Job


1 In a function window, press

Shortcuts menu opens.


- In text/phone number entry windows, press  for 1+ seconds.
- Some shortcuts are disabled.
- Multi Job cannot be activated from some windows/under some conditions (e.g. when an S! Application is active, etc.).


2 Select a function and press

Menu/window opens ( appears).


- Press  to toggle active windows.

3 Press to exit

The other window appears ( disappears).

- When a confirmation appears, choose **Yes**
 - ➔ Press 

Handling Incoming Calls

- Press  to answer a call. End the call to return.

Pen Light

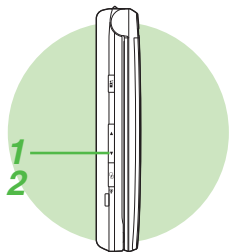
Use handset as a flashlight when handset is closed.

1 Press for 1+ seconds

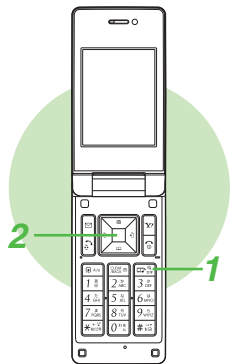
Mobile Light illuminates.

2 Press to turn off

Note ▶ Do not point Pen Light at people or look at it directly.



Change Menu



Handset Menu Interface Options:

Standard Menu	All menus are available
Simple Menu	Simplified menus appear in large fonts
Large Font Menu	All menus appear in large fonts

Simple Menu

Activate Simple Menu to reduce available handset functions and simplify menus.

- Handset is limited to basic operations (P.1-23).
- Clock and fonts are enlarged and Calendar is hidden while Simple Menu is active.

- Note** ▶
- Some menu items, function names, etc. differ from Standard Menu.
 - These functions are not available while Simple Menu is active:
 - Bluetooth® ■ Infrared ■ Mass Storage/USB Charge
 - Drive mode ■ Original mode
 - Simple Menu activation is disabled in the following cases:
 - Media Player is active (playing background music)
 - Infrared transmission is in progress ■ S! Application is paused
 - Bluetooth® is active



Simple Main Menu


Activating

- 1 Press **[MFP]** for 1+ seconds
- 2 Select **Simple Menu** and press **[OK]**
 - Simple Menu remains active even after handset power is turned off.

Canceling

- 1 Press **[MFP]** for 1+ seconds
- 2 Select **Standard Menu** and press **[OK]**
 - Alternatively, select **Large Font Menu** (P.1-24).

Simple Menu Operations















In Standby, press  to open Simple Main Menu.

Messaging	Received Msg.	P.14-20	
	Create Msg.	P.14-4	
	Drafts	P.14-26	
	Templates	P.14-10	
	Sent Messages	P.14-20	
	Unsent Msg.	P.14-20	
	Create SMS	P.14-11	
Phone	Phone Book	P.4-2	
	Add New Entry	P.4-4	
	Play Messages	P.2-9	
	Answer Phone	P.2-8	
	Call VM	P.13-4	
	My Details	P.4-19	
Speed Dial	P.4-14		
Camera	-	P.6-2	
Convenient Tool	Calendar	P.12-2	
	Alarms	P.12-10	
	Calculator	P.12-13	
	Assignment	Wallpaper	P.9-4
		Assign Tone	P.9-2
		Volume	P.9-2
	Hot Status	P.19-3	
	Circle Talk	P.19-8	
Change Menu	P.1-22		
Data Folder	Pictures	P.8-2	
	DCIM	P.8-2	
	My Pictograms	P.8-2	
	Ring Tones	P.8-2	
	S! Appli	P.16-2	
	Music	P.8-2	
	Videos	P.8-2	

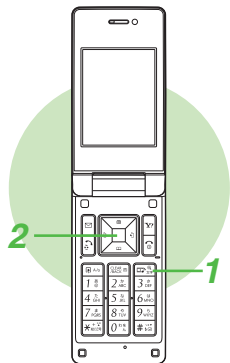
Data Folder	Lifestyle-appli	P.17-2
	Books	P.8-2
	CustomScreens	P.9-9
	Flash [®]	P.8-2
	Flash [®] Ringtones	P.8-2
	Other Docs.	P.8-2
	Memory Status	P.8-2

Key Assignments

In Standby:

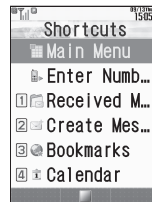
 (Long Press)	Switch to Standard Menu	P.1-22
 (Long Press)	Turn handset on/off	P.1-16
	Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu	P.15-2
	Open Messaging menu	P.14-2
 (Long Press)	Open S! Mail Composition window	P.14-4
	Open Call Log (All Calls)	P.2-12
	Open Call Log (Dialled No.)	P.2-4
	Open Call Log (Received Calls)	P.2-5
	Open Phone Book	P.4-8
 (Long Press)	Create new Phone Book entry	P.4-4
 (Long Press)	Activate/cancel Manner mode	P.2-18
 (Long Press)	Activate/cancel Keypad Lock	P.1-17
	Play Answer Phone messages	P.2-9
 (Long Press)	Activate/cancel Answer Phone	P.2-8

While Simple Menu is active, shortcuts and some Quick Operations (P.1-20) are disabled.





Large Font Menu

Activate Large Font Menu to enlarge fonts for menus, text entry, etc. at the same time.





Large Font Shortcuts Menu

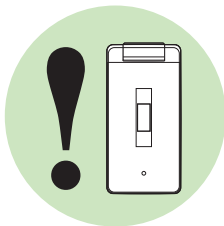
Activating

- 1 Press  for 1+ seconds
- 2 Select **Large Font Menu** and press 
 - Large Font Menu remains active even after handset power is turned off.

Canceling

- 1 Press  for 1+ seconds
- 2 Select **Standard Menu** and press 
 - Alternatively, select **Simple Menu** (P.1-22).

Security Codes



Handset Code, Center Access Code and Network Password are needed for handset use. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.20-39).

Handset Code

4-digit number (**9999** by default) required to use or change some handset functions.

- ✕ appears as digits are entered.
- If **Handset code is incorrect!** appears, enter again.
- Change Handset Code as needed (P.9-17).

Center Access Code

4-digit number selected at initial subscription; required to access Voicemail via landlines or subscribe to fee-based information.

Network Password

4-digit number selected at initial subscription; required to restrict handset services (P.13-6 "Call Barring").

- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.20-39).
- Change Network Password as needed (P.13-7).

- Note** ►
- Write down Handset Code, Center Access Code and Network Password.
 - Do not reveal Handset Code, Center Access Code and Network Password. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.

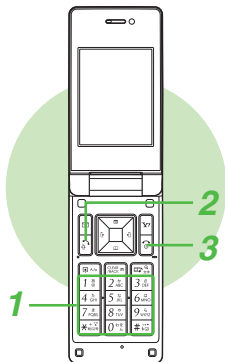
- Tip** ► There are two other Security Codes: PIN 1 and PIN2. For details, see P.1-3 "USIM PINs."

2

Basic Operations

Initiating a Call	2-2	Call Timers	2-13
■ Placing an International Call from Japan.....	2-3	■ Dialed Calls & Received Calls.....	2-13
■ Redial	2-4	■ Clear Timers	2-13
■ Calling from Received Calls	2-5	Call Costs	2-14
Incoming Call	2-6	■ Last Call & All Calls.....	2-14
■ Information	2-7	■ Additional Functions.....	2-14
Answer Phone	2-8	Outside Japan (International Roaming)	2-15
■ Activating & Canceling.....	2-8	■ Switching Network Services	2-15
■ Playing Messages	2-9	■ Calling from Outside Japan.....	2-16
Engaged Call Operations	2-10	Manner Mode & Offline Mode	2-17
■ Earpiece Volume	2-10	■ Minding Mobile Manners.....	2-17
■ Voice Output	2-10	■ Activating/Canceling Manner Mode	2-18
■ Caller Voice	2-11	■ Activating/Canceling Offline Mode	2-19
■ Other Engaged Call Operations	2-11	Emergency Calls	2-20
Call Log	2-12	■ Emergency Location Report	2-20
■ Deleting/Using Call Log.....	2-12	■ Handset Restrictions & Emergency Calls	2-20

Initiating a Call

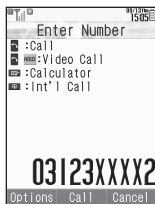


CHECK!

- Confirm handset is on.
- Check signal strength (P.1-6).
- Handset will not transmit when **out**, or appears (P.20-4 - 20-6).

See **P.2-3** to initiate international calls from Japan, **P.2-16** for Voice Calls from outside Japan and **P.5-3** for Video Calls.

1 Enter a phone number



- Include area code for all numbers.

2 Confirm the number and press

Handset dials the number.

Correcting Numbers

- Use to move cursor and press to delete the digit above the cursor. Move cursor and press for 1+ seconds to delete the digits above and after the cursor.
- Before moving cursor, press for 1+ seconds to delete the entire number and return to Standby.

3 Press to end call

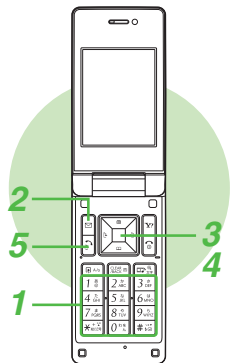
- Alternatively, close handset.

- Note** ▶
- Do not cover Microphone while talking.
 - Avoid covering area over Internal Antenna.
 - Voice quality is affected depending on how and where handset is used.

- Tip** ▶
- For operations during a call (Loudspeaker, Mute, Hold, etc.), see **P.2-10 - 2-11**.
 - To send/block Caller ID, enter the following numbers/symbols before a phone number when placing a call.



- Alternatively, enter a phone number and press **Options** to select **Show My ID** or **Hide My ID**.



Contract Required

- Service requires an additional contract. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.20-39).

Placing an International Call from Japan

See **P.2-16** to initiate Voice Calls from outside Japan.

1 Enter a phone number

- Include area code for landline numbers.

2 Press

3 Select *Int'l Call* and press

Country names appear.

4 Select a country and press

- To call unlisted countries, select **Enter Code** ➔ Press ➔ Enter country code ➔ Press

5 Press

Quick Operation

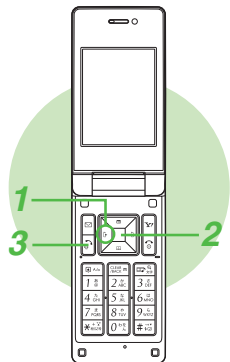
■ Enter a phone number ➔ Press ➔ Select a country ➔ Press ➔ Press

Direct Entry

■ Press (+ appears) ➔ Enter country code ➔ Enter a phone number including the area code ➔ Press

- Omit the first **0** of the area code except when calling Italy (country code: 39).

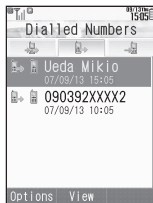
- Tip** ➤
- To change the default international prefix (denoted by +), see **P.9-26** "Int'l Prefix."
 - To save frequently used country codes, see **P.9-26** "Country Codes."
 - To restrict outgoing international calls, see **P.13-6** "Call Barring."



Redial

Place calls from Dialed Numbers. Up to 30 recently dialed numbers are saved. (Records remain even after handset power is turned off.)

1 Press



2 Select a record and press

3 Press

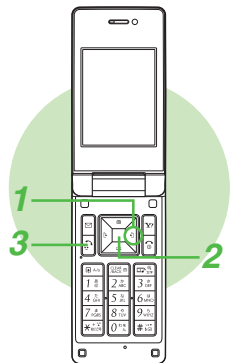
Handset dials the number.

■ Indicators

	Dialed Voice Call		Dialed Video Call
	Requested Circle Talk		

- Use to open Received Calls/All Calls.

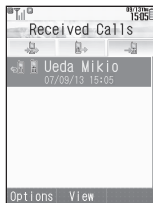
- Tip** ▶
- When the same number is dialed more than once, only the last record appears. (All records appear for Circle Talk.)
 - Names in Secret entries appear only when Show Secret Data is active.
 - When there are 30 records, oldest records are replaced by new ones. To delete records manually, see **P.2-12**.



Calling from Received Calls

Up to 30 received calls are saved. When Caller ID is sent, number appears. Place calls directly to those numbers. (Records remain even after handset power is turned off.)

1 Press



- Use to open Dialed Numbers/All Calls.

2 Select a record and press

3 Press

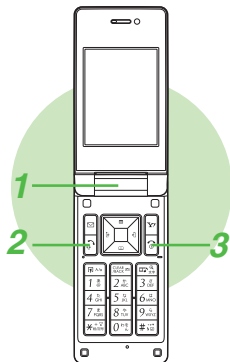
Handset dials the number.

■ Indicators

	Answered Voice Call		Rejected Voice Call
	Answered Video Call		Rejected Video Call
	Requested Circle Talk		Missed Call Notification
	Missed Voice Call		Answer Phone Answered
	Missed Video Call		Forwarded to Voicemail Center
	Missed Circle Talk Request		

- Tip** ▶
- Names in Secret entries appear only when Show Secret Data is active.
 - When there are 30 records, oldest records are replaced by new ones. To delete records manually, see P.2-12.

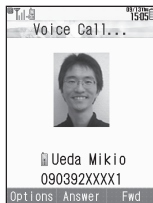
Incoming Call



Redirecting a Call

- Call Forwarding (P.13-3)
- Voicemail (P.13-4)
- Answer Phone (P.2-8)

1 When a call arrives, open handset



- Quick Recorder: When a call arrives, press **Options** → Select **Record Message** → Press **■**
 - Use Quick Recorder to record caller messages on handset when Answer Phone is inactive.
- To reject an incoming call, press **Options** while handset is ringing/vibrating → Select **Reject** → Press **■**
 - Standby returns; record appears in Received Calls.
- To place a caller on hold, press **⏸** while handset is ringing/vibrating.
 - Press **⏸** to answer the call on hold.
- Answering a Video Call: **P.5-3**

- Tip** ▶
- When Caller ID is not sent, **Withheld** appears instead of the phone number.
 - Names in Secret entries appear only when Show Secret Data is active.
 - Change ringtone volumes/patterns, vibration patterns and Small Light status (P.9-2 - 9-3).
 - To instantly mute ringer, press **⏸**.

2 Press **⏸**

When Any Key Answer (P.9-3) is Active

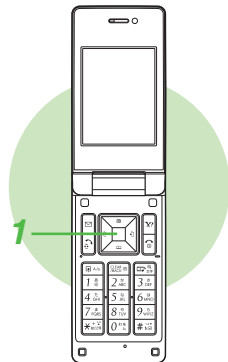
- Press any of these keys to answer calls
⏸, **⏸**, **⏸**, **⏸**, **⏸**, **⏸**, **⏸**

Answering Calls with Headphones

- Press Call Button for 1+ seconds. To end the call, press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a beep sounds.

3 Press **⏸** to end call

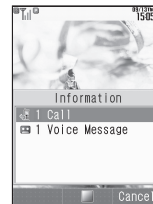
- Alternatively, close handset.



Information

Information window opens for:

- Missed Calls
- New messages
- New S! Cast information
- Calls answered with Answer Phone
- Alarms
- Weather Indicator updates, etc.



Information Window

Opening Information Items

- 1 In Information window, select an item and press

Corresponding window opens.

Opening Information List Manually

- Press → Select *Phone* → Press → Select *Information* → Press
 - To clear list, open Information list and press **Options** → Select *Reset* → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

Answer Phone



Record caller messages on handset.

- Answer Phone cannot be used when handset is off, out-of-range or in Offline Mode. Use Voicemail (P.13-4) to record caller messages when Answer Phone is not available.
- Record up to 90 seconds or 20 messages between Answer Phone and Caller Voice (P.2-11).
- Answer Phone is inactive by default.

Activating & Canceling

Activating

- 1 Press **CLEAR/BACK** for 1+ seconds
 appears and Answer Phone is set.

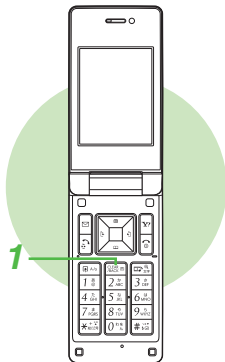
Canceling

- 1 Press **CLEAR/BACK** for 1+ seconds
 disappears and Answer Phone is canceled.

When Answer Phone is Active

- For incoming calls, outgoing message plays and recording starts.
 - Recording continues even if handset is closed.
 - To answer calls, press during recording (no message will be recorded).
 - When recording ends, appears.
- If recording capacity becomes full after the recording, Answer Phone is canceled and appears.


- Note** ▶
- When less than 12 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded, Answer Phone is disabled. Delete messages to activate Answer Phone.
 - Answer Phone is not available for incoming Video Calls.
 - In Manner, Drive or Original mode, respective Answer Phone setting (P.9-4) takes priority.










Playing Messages

1 Press







Number of recordings appears and playback starts from the most recent message. After all messages have played, playback ends automatically.

- Message playback stops for incoming calls. Press  to answer a call.

■ Playback Operations

Replay	Press 
Stop	Press 
Skip Forward	Press  Next or 
Skip Backward	Press  twice
Delete	Press  Delete → Choose Yes → Press 

Answer Time

- Adjust ring time between 0 and 30 seconds (Answer Phone waits to answer calls).
Press  → Select *Settings* → Press  → Use  to select *Call/Video Call* → Select *Answer Phone* → Press  → Select *Answer Time* → Press  → Enter time (00 - 30) → Press 

- Activation Time is **18** seconds by default.

- When Answer Phone and Voicemail or Call Forwarding are both active, the function with the shortest ring time takes priority.

Example:







Ring time for Answer Phone: 9 seconds

Ring time for Voicemail or Call Forwarding: 10 seconds

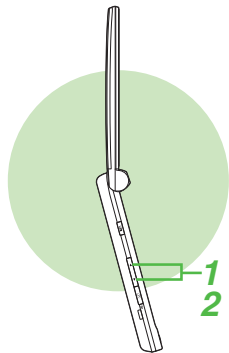
In this example, Answer Phone responds first. (Priority may change depending on signal conditions.)

- If Answer Phone is full or handset is in Offline Mode, incoming calls are handled by Voicemail or Call Forwarding.

Earpiece Volume

- Follow these steps to activate or mute Earpiece for outgoing message/caller message recordings.
Press  → Select *Settings* → Press  → Use  to select *Call/Video Call* → Select *Answer Phone* → Press  → Select *Volume* → Press  → Select *Link to Profile or Silent* → Press 
- For **Link to Profile**, current Earpiece Volume applies.

Engaged Call Operations



Earpiece Volume

Adjust Earpiece Volume (5 levels).

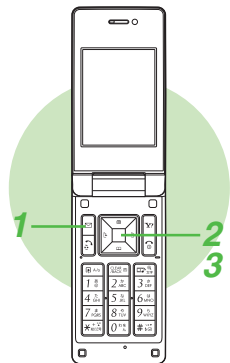
- Volume level remains as set even after handset power is turned off.
- To adjust Earpiece Volume in Standby, see **P.9-26**.
- Earpiece Volume is **Level:3** by default.

1 During a call, press or

2 Press (up) or (down) to adjust volume

Voice Output

Loudspeaker	Use Loudspeaker for handsfree conversations Press <input type="button" value="□"/> <input type="button" value="■"/> To cancel, press <input type="button" value="■"/> .
Mute	Mute Microphone Other party's voice is audible Press <input type="button" value="⌘"/> Mute <input type="button" value="■"/> To cancel, press <input type="button" value="⌘"/> Unmute .
Hold	Hold tone sounds and each other's voice is not audible Press <input type="button" value="ⓧ"/> Options ➔ Select Hold ➔ Press <input type="button" value="■"/> <input type="button" value="■"/> To cancel, press <input type="button" value="ⓧ"/> .



Caller Voice

- Record up to 90 seconds or 20 messages between Caller Voice and Answer Phone (P.2-8).
- To play recorded messages, see P.2-9.

- 1** During a call, press **Options**
- 2** Select **Record Caller Voice** and press

Recording starts.

- 3** Press to stop

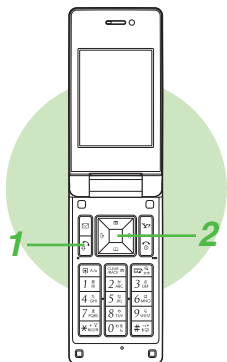
- Alternatively, end call to stop. (Recordings remain even after handset power is turned off.)

Other Engaged Call Operations

Open Phone Book Entry	Open Phone Book entries Press Options → Select Phone Book → Press → Select an entry → Press
Save Phone Book Entry	Save the other party's number to Phone Book Press Options → Select Phone Book → Press → Press Options → Select Add New Entry → Press → Perform from Step 1 on P.4-4
Open Message	Check received/sent/draft messages Press Options → Select Messaging → Press → Select an item → Press
Create Message	Create a new message Press Options → Select Messaging → Press → Select Create Message or Create New SMS → Press → Perform from Step 3 on P.14-4 or on P.14-11
Dial New Number	Call another number Press Options → Select Dial New Number → Press → Enter a phone number → Press
Enable/Disable DTMF	Select whether to send Touch Tones during a call Press Options → Select Disable DTMF or Enable DTMF → Press
Touch Tones	Send alphanumeric messages to pagers or operate a home answer phone remotely Use - / /

- Touch Tones for the pressed buttons are sent.

Call Log



1 Press

- All Calls opens.
 - Available in Standby or during calls.
- Press to open others.

2 Select a record and press

Record details appear.

■ Tabs

All Calls	All dialed/received calls
Dialled Numbers	All dialed calls
Received Calls	All received calls

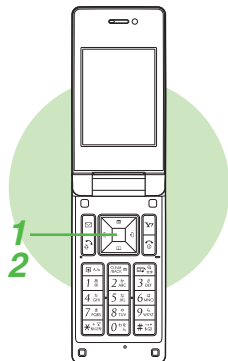
Deleting/Using Call Log

Follow these steps first.

Press ➔ Select a record ➔ Press **Options**

Delete	Delete records one at a time Select Delete ➔ Press ➔ Choose Yes ➔ Press
Delete All	Delete all records Select Delete All ➔ Press ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press ➔ Choose Yes ➔ Press
Call	Place calls Select Call or Video Call ➔ Press <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select Int'l Call to place international calls. Select Edit Before Call to edit numbers before dialing.
Create Message	Create messages Select Create Message ➔ Press ➔ Select S! Mail or SMS ➔ Press ➔ Perform from Step 6 on P.14-4 or on P.14-11
Call Circle Talk	Initiate Circle Talk Select Call Circle Talk ➔ Press ➔ Perform from Step 2 on P.19-8

Tip ➔ To save phone numbers to Phone Book, see P.4-7 "Saving from Other Functions."



Dialled Calls & Received Calls

Check estimated time of the most recent call (Last Call Time) and all calls made since Clear Timers was last applied (All Calls Time).

To show elapsed Call Time during a call, see **P.9-26** "Call Time Counter."

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Time & Cost ▶ Call Timers

1 Select **Dialled Calls or Received Calls** and press **■**

2 Press **■** to return

- Tip** ▶
- Last Call Time and All Calls Time remain even after handset power is turned off.
 - Ring time for incoming or outgoing calls is not counted. On hold time is counted.

Clear Timers

Follow these steps first.

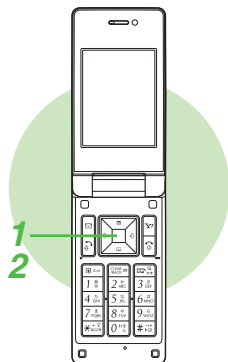
Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Time & Cost ▶ Call Timers

Clear Timers

Reset Call Timers

Select **Clear Timers** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press **■** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **■**

Call Costs



Call Costs (including Max Cost) may not be available depending on subscription status.

Last Call & All Calls

Check estimated call charge of the most recent call or all calls.

To show Call Cost automatically after each call, see **P.9-26** "Display Call Cost."

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Time & Cost ▶ Call Costs

1 Select **Last Call or All Calls** and press **■**

2 Press **■** to return

- Tip** ▶
- Call Costs remain even after handset power is turned off.
 - Sum of charges appears for Conference Call (Optional Service).

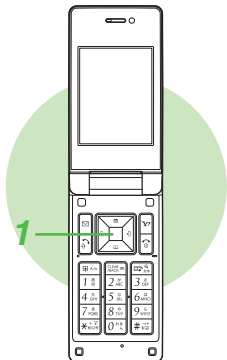
Additional Functions

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Time & Cost ▶ Call Costs

Clear Costs	Reset Call Costs Select Clear Costs ▶ Press ■ ▶ Enter PIN2 ▶ Press ■ ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press ■
Cost Units Default YEN 1	Set currency and conversion rate (per yen) to show converted amount in Call Costs Select Cost Units ▶ Press ■ ▶ Press ☎ Edit ▶ Enter PIN2 ▶ Press ■ ▶ Enter currency ▶ Press ■ ▶ Enter conversion rate ▶ Press ■ ▶ Press ■

Outside Japan (International Roaming)



Switching Network Services

- **Auto** is set by default.
- Use **Auto** whenever possible.

Auto		Sets Network by location (Network status) when selected and each time handset is turned on thereafter
	3G/GSM	Use in 3G or GSM service areas
Manual	3G	Use in 3G service areas
	GSM	Use in GSM service areas

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Network Settings (☰) ▶ Select Service

1 Switching Automatically

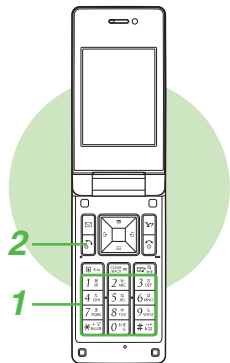
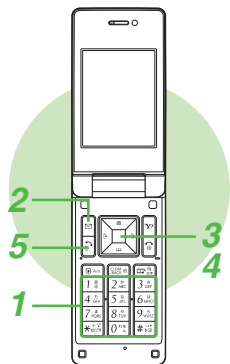
- 1 Select **Auto** and press

Switching Manually

- 1 Select **Manual** and press
- 2 Select **3G/GSM**, **3G** or **GSM** and press

Selected service is activated.

- Note** ▶
- International roaming requires a separate contract. For service basics, see **Global Roaming Guide**, available in English via SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>). For up-to-date information, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.20-39).
 - Download and print **Global Roaming Guide** to carry with you while traveling abroad.



Calling from Outside Japan

Use the same SoftBank handset number overseas.

Calling Other Countries

1 Enter a phone number

- Include area code for landline numbers.

2 Press Options

3 Select *Int'l Call* and press

Country names appear.

- To call Japan, select *日本 (JPN)* → Press → Skip ahead to Step 5

4 Select a country and press

- + and country code are inserted before the phone number. The first 0 is omitted except when calling Italy (39). (+ indicates an outgoing international call.)
- To call unlisted countries, select *Enter Code* → Press → Enter country code → Press

Calling SoftBank Handsets

- Always select *日本 (JPN)* (or press for direct entry).

5 Press

Calling Japan via Quick Operation

- Enter a phone number → Press → Perform from Step 4

Direct Entry

- Press (+ appears) → Enter country code → Enter a phone number including the area code → Perform Step 5
 - Omit the first 0 of the area code except when calling Italy (country code: 39).

Calling Landlines & Mobiles within the Same Country

1 Enter a phone number

- Include area code for landline numbers.

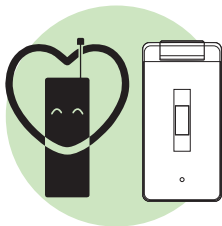
2 Press

Note ▶ In some areas, other parties may not be able to hear you and vice versa after returning to calls on hold (P.2-10).

Tip ▶ Adding Country Codes

To save frequently used country codes, see P.9-26 "Country Codes." For more information, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (P.20-39).

Manner Mode & Offline Mode



Minding Mobile Manners

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn it off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner-Related Features

■ Manner Mode: P.2-18

Press Manner Key to automatically mute all sounds and activate vibration for incoming transmissions.

■ Vibration Mode: P.9-3

Activate vibration for incoming transmission alerts.

■ Volume Settings: P.9-2

When carrying handset in public, decrease or mute incoming transmission alerts or S! Application tones.

■ Offline Mode: P.2-19

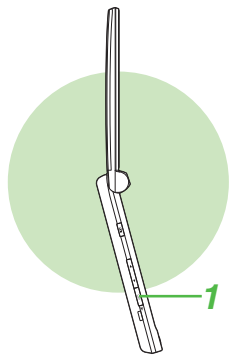
Temporarily suspend all handset transmissions without turning off handset power.

■ Answer Phone: P.2-8

Handle incoming calls inappropriate/unsafe to answer.

■ Drive Mode: P.9-2

Small Light flashes for incoming calls; if unanswered driving message plays and Answer Phone activates.







Activating/Canceling Manner Mode

Activate/cancel Manner mode in Standby, while browsing the Internet, during calls or while using Media Player or S! Applications.


Activating

1 Press for 1+ seconds

-  appears and Manner mode is set.
-  (Answer Phone),  (Silent) and  (Silent & Vibration) appear as set in Manner settings (P.9-2 "Mode Settings").

Canceling

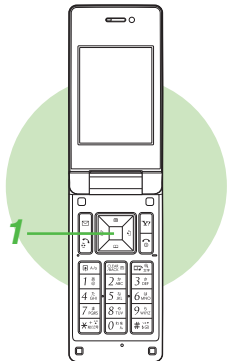
1 Press for 1+ seconds

-  disappears and Manner mode is canceled.

When Manner Mode is Active

- Keypad Tones, Power On/Off and error tones are muted. Swap Call (P.13-6) beeps are audible.
 - Even in Manner mode, ringtone is audible from Headphones. Volume is fixed to **Level 1**.
- Shutter click and Self-timer tone sound even in Manner mode.
- Manner settings (P.9-2 "Mode Settings") apply to Answer Phone, ringtones, Vibration, etc.

Tip ▶ While Answer Phone is recording, caller's voice is audible from Earpiece.



Activating/Canceling Offline Mode

Use Offline Mode to temporarily suspend all handset transmissions.

- Offline Mode blocks all calls/Internet transmissions. Bluetooth®/infrared transmissions are available.
- Offline Mode is **Off** by default.

Activating

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Network Settings (☎)
▶ Offline Mode

1 Choose **On** and press

☎ appears and Offline Mode is set.

Canceling

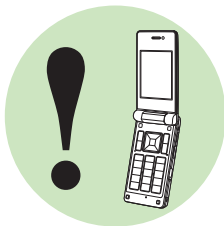
Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Network Settings (☎)
▶ Offline Mode

1 Choose **Off** and press

☎ disappears and Offline Mode is canceled.

Note ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are not possible in Offline Mode. See P.2-20.

Emergency Calls



Emergency Location Report

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with SoftBank 3G handsets.

- Handset reports Location Information based on positioning signals from radio stations.
- Registration/transmission fees do not apply.

- Note** ▶
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location/signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
 - Location Information is not reported when emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with **184**). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
 - Not available during international roaming (**P.2-15**).

Handset Restrictions & Emergency Calls

Emergency calls (110, 119, 118, etc.) are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

Active Restriction	Emergency Calls	Active Restriction	Emergency Calls
Keypad Lock (P.1-17)	Possible	Password Lock (P.9-17)	Possible
Max Cost (P.9-24)	Possible	Outgoing Calls (P.13-7)	Possible
Offline Mode (P.2-19)	Not Possible	PIN Entry (P.9-23)	Not Possible

- Note** ▶ Emergency calls may not be possible when outside Japan as handset operations are affected by wireless network/radio signals available in the country or handset settings.

Characters	3-2	Editing Characters	3-8
■ Switching Entry Modes	3-2	■ Deleting & Replacing	3-8
■ Character Entry Basics	3-2	■ Copy/Cut & Paste	3-8
Entering Characters	3-3	User Dictionary	3-9
■ Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana	3-3	■ Entries (Japanese)	3-9
■ Alphanumerics	3-4	■ 814SH/815SH Download Dictionary (Japanese) ..	3-9
■ Symbols, Pictograms & Emoticons	3-4	Notepad	3-10
■ Mail & Web Extensions	3-5	■ New Entry	3-10
■ Character Code	3-5	■ Opening Notepad	3-10
■ Pager Code	3-5	■ Editing & Deleting Entries	3-10
■ Additional Character Entry Options	3-6		
Conversion Methods (Japanese)	3-6		
■ Phonetic Conversion	3-6		
■ Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric Conversion ..	3-6		
■ Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)	3-7		
■ One-Hiragana Conversion	3-7		
■ Conversion Settings	3-7		

Characters

Use Kana and Pager (P.3-5) to enter alphanumerics, Symbols, hiragana, kanji, katakana and Pictograms. Unless otherwise noted, text entry operations are described for use in text entry windows using Kana Mode.

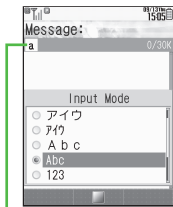
Switching Entry Modes

1 Press

- Entry mode list appears.


2 Use to select a mode and press

- For **Pictogram** or **Symbols**, corresponding list appears. (Entry mode remains unchanged.)




Current Entry Mode

- Available Modes:


漢	Kanji (hiragana)	A	Single-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
ア	Double-byte katakana	a	Single-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
ア	Single-byte katakana	l	Single-byte number
A	Double-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)		Character Code
a	Double-byte alphanumerics (lower case)		

Character Entry Basics


Use Keypad to enter characters. Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key to toggle between character options for that key.

Example: In double-byte katakana entry, press  three times.



- Press  to toggle options in reverse. (Not available for single-byte numbers or Character Codes.)
- Key Assignments: P.20-10

■ Entering Characters Assigned to the Same Key

When the next character is on the same key, press  first to move cursor.

Example: In single-byte alphanumerics mode, enter *no*.



- Press a key for 1+ seconds to enter the current character and advance cursor.



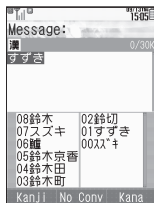
Entering Characters

Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana

Following the example below, enter **鈴木タロウ** to learn how to enter characters in kanji (hiragana) entry mode.

1 Enter **すずぎ**

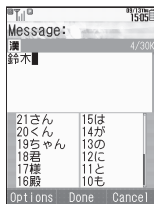
- 1 Press **3 DEF** three times
- 2 Press **[C]**
- 3 Press **3 DEF** three times
- 4 Press **[+12]**
- 5 Press **2 ABC** twice



2 Convert **すずぎ** to **鈴木**

- 1 Press **[Q]** (convert)
- 2 Use **[Q]** to select **鈴木**
 - To exit the list, press **[BACK]**.
 - To change segment, see "Segmenting Phrases" on the right.
- 3 Press **[]**

- Press **[X]** to cancel conversion. (Not available for Arrange Mail.)



3 Switch to double-byte katakana mode

- 1 Press **[KATA]**
- 2 Select **アイウ** and press **[]**

4 Enter **タロウ**

- 1 Press **4 GH**
- 2 Press **9 WXYZ** five times
- 3 Press **1 abc** three times
- 4 Press **[]**

■ Segmenting Phrases

If the word is not listed, press **[CLEAR/BACK]** after Step 2-2 on the left to exit. Use **[C]** to segment hiragana to convert separately.

Example: Segment **みち** into **み** and **ち**.



■ Selecting Multiple Converted Words

Press **[P/AB]**.

Example: To enter **西山大輔**



User Dictionary

- Save frequently used words/phrases to select from the word suggestion list. For details, see P.3-9.

Help

- Press **[]** Options → Select **Help** → Press **[]**

Predictive & Previous Usage

- Use these functions to convert hiragana to kanji more quickly.

Predictive	Word suggestions change as up to five hiragana are entered
Previous Usage	Suggests words/characters likely to follow entry based on previous entries

- Both functions are active by default (P.3-7 "Optional Predictive Functions").

Small Kana (っ, っ, etc.)

- Enter a character and press

Adding ° or °

- Enter a character and press
 - For か (Ka), さ (Sa) and た (Ta) row characters, press to add/remove °. For は (Ha) row characters, press once to add °, twice to add ° and three times to remove.
 - In single-byte katakana entry, ° and ° each count as one character.

Line Break

- Press at the end of text
 - Insert line breaks in message text, Notepad, etc.
 - To insert line breaks in text, press until ↓ appears, then press .

Space

- Press

Alphanumerics

- In double or single-byte alphanumerics mode, press a key until the assigned character appears
 - Alternatively, enter numbers in single-byte number mode.
 - Press to toggle case.

- Press

Symbols, Pictograms & Emoticons

Symbols & Pictograms

Pictograms do not appear in e-mail or on incompatible handsets.

- In double-byte entry mode, press to open Log/History (Log/History is available in some entry modes; see P.20-10)

Recently used double-byte Symbols/Pictograms appear.

In single-byte entry mode, press → Press

- Press or to toggle Symbol/Pictogram List(s)
- Use to select one and press
- Pictograms are double-byte even in single-byte entry mode.
- Press to exit list

Clear Log/History

- 1 Press **Options** → Select **Input/Conversion** → Press
- Select **Clear History** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press
- To return to the text entry window, press → Press

- Tip ▶
- For available Pictograms, see P.20-12.
 - Enter cross-carrier Pictograms (Step 9 on P.14-4) or My Pictograms (P.14-8).

Emoticons

- 1 Press **Options**
- 2 Select **Emoticons** and press
- 3 Select an emoticon and press

- Tip ▶
- For other emoticons, enter **かお** and press (convert). Alternatively, enter a descriptive word such as **かーい** or **うーん** and press (convert). Corresponding emoticons can be selected.
 - Immediately after inserting a descriptive word such as **嬉しい** or **悲しい**, corresponding emoticons may appear in the word suggestion list. To disable this function, see P.3-7 "Optional Predictive Functions" (EmoticonWordLink).

Mail & Web Extensions

Enter **.co.jp**, **http://**, etc., easily.

- 1 Press **Options**
- 2 Select **Quick Address List** and press
- 3 Select an extension and press
 - Extensions are single-byte even in double-byte entry modes.

Character Code

- 1 In Character Code entry mode, enter four digits (P.20-14)

Pager Code

- 1 Press **Options**
- 2 Select **Input/Conversion** and press
- 3 Select **Input Method** and press
- 4 Select **Pager Code** and press
 - To switch to Kana Mode, select **Kana** → Press
- 5 Enter two digits (P.20-13)

Character Entry Modes

- Press → Select a mode → Press
 - For **Pictogram** or **Symbols**, corresponding list appears. (Entry mode remains unchanged.)
 - To toggle between upper and lower case modes, press
 - Press **P/p**

Additional Character Entry Options

Jump to Jump to the end or top of text

Press **Options** → **Select Cursor Position** → Press → **Select Jump to End or Jump to Top** → Press

Undo Cancel the previous conversion or recover characters immediately after deletion

Press **Options** → **Select Undo/Reverse Order** → Press

Phone Book Insert Phone Book entry items into text entry windows

Press **Options** → **Select Advanced** → Press → **Select Phone Book** → Press → **Select a Phone Book entry or My Details** → Press → **Select an item** → Press

Font Size Change font size

Press **Options** → **Select Advanced** → Press → **Select Font Size** → Press → **Select a size** → Press Default Standard

Candidates Format Change word suggestion list view (Single or Double Column)

Press **Options** → **Select Input/Conversion** → Press → **Select Candidates Format** → Press → **Select a format** → Press Default Double Column

- Format is fixed to **Single Column** when Font Size (above) is **Large** or **Huge**.

Conversion Methods (Japanese)

Phonetic Conversion

Enter alternate readings to search for kanji.

1 Enter reading in hiragana

2 Press **Kanji**

3 Select a kanji and press

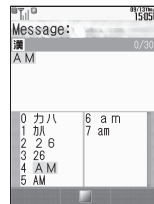
Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) entry mode. See P.20-10 "Key Assignments" or use Keypad inscriptions.

1 Enter hiragana and press **Kana**

- To enter **AM**, press then **Kana**.

2 Use to select a word and press



Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)

Quick Conversion helps reduce keystrokes needed to enter frequently used words. A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.

Example: To enter 微妙

Normal Conversion	6 [M] 6 [M] 7 [R] (ウ) 7 [R] 7 [R] (あ)
	8 [T] 8 [T] 8 [T] 8 [T] 8 [T] 8 [T] (よ)
	1 [C] 1 [C] 1 [C] (う) [C] (convert)
Quick Conversion	6 [M] 7 [R] (あ) 7 [R] (あ) 8 [T] (あ) 1 [C] (あ)
	[C] (convert)

1 Enter hiragana and press [C]

Cursor turns green.

- While cursor is green, use [C] to segment entered hiragana and then convert one segment at a time.

To cancel Quick Conversion, press [ESC] → Press [C] for normal conversion

2 Use [C] to select a word and press [C]

One Hiragana Predictive Entry

- Enter hiragana and initiate Quick Conversion. Word suggestions preset by time blocks appear.
 - Words starting with a hiragana in the same row appear.

One Hiragana Word Call

- Enter the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for and press [C].

One-Hiragana Conversion

Enter the first hiragana to access previously selected words.

Example: To enter 鈴木



Up to 20 word selections are saved per hiragana. When memory is full, the oldest entry is deleted to make room for a new entry.

Conversion Settings

Optional Predictive Functions Activate or cancel Predictive, Previous Usage or EmoticonWordLink

- Press [Options] → Select **Input/Conversion** → Press [C] → Select **Predictive, Previous Usage or EmoticonWordLink** → Press [C] → Choose **On or Off** → Press [C]
- Predictive is disabled when Show Secret Data (P.9-23) is active.

Set Low Priority Select types of words to lower their priorities in the word suggestion list

- Press [Options] → Select **Input/Conversion** → Press [C] → Select **Set Low Priority** → Press [C] → Select an item → Press [C] → Press [Y] [OK]
- To select multiple items, select and press [C] for each item before pressing [Y] [OK].

Reset Learning Clear log of words selected in kanji conversion, Predictive, etc.

- Press [Options] → Select **Input/Conversion** → Press [C] → Select **Reset Learning** → Choose **Yes** → Press [C]
- Words saved in User Dictionary remain.

Editing Characters

Deleting & Replacing

- 1** Use to select a character and press .

The highlighted character is deleted.

Press for 1+ seconds to delete characters on and after cursor.

To delete all text, place cursor at the end of text and press for 1+ seconds.

Mikako



Miko



Miko

- 2** Enter another character

Recovering Deleted Characters

- Press once for each character immediately after deletion to recover up to 64 characters.
 - Not available for Arrange Mail or after using (Long Press).

Copy/Cut & Paste

When **Options** appears, copy or cut and paste text into the same window or another.

- Copy text strings of up to 6 KB each.
- My Pictograms copied from Arrange Mail Composition window, etc. may not be pasted.

- 1** Press **Options**

- 2** Select **Copy** or **Cut** and press

- 3** Use to select the first character of text and press

Start point is set.

To change the start point, press **Quit**.

- 4** Select the end point and press

- Up to ten copied/cut text strings are saved in Paste List (below). Entries appear most recent first.

- 5** Open text paste target window

- 6** Press for 1+ seconds

Using Paste List

- Press **Options** → **Select Paste** → Press → **Select text** → Press
 - Available when text is saved in Paste List. To reset the list, press **Reset** → Choose **Yes** → Press
 - In Arrange Mail Composition window (**P.14-8**), last text string copied or cut is pasted. Paste List does not appear.

User Dictionary

Entries (Japanese)

Save frequently used words/phrases. Assign a reading (keyword) in hiragana to each entry. In text entry windows, enter a reading and convert. Saved words/phrases appear among word suggestions.

- Save up to 100 entries.
- Save up to five words/phrases per reading.

New Entry Save words/phrases to User Dictionary

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ User Dictionary
▶ New Entry

Enter a word/phrase ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ **Enter a reading (keyword)** ▶ Press [Enter]

- Enter up to 15 characters per word/phrase and eight characters in hiragana per reading.

- Alternatively, in other text entry windows, press [Options] ▶ Select **Add to Dictionary** ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Select the first character of text ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Select the end point ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Enter a reading (keyword) ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Press [Enter]

Edit/Delete Edit or delete entries

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ User Dictionary
▶ Saved Word List

Edit

Select a word/phrase ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ **Edit the word/phrase** ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ **Edit reading** ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ Press [Enter]

Delete

Select a word/phrase ▶ Press [Options] ▶ **Delete** ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ Press [Enter]

814SH/815SH Download Dictionary (Japanese)

Download specialized 814SH/815SH Download Dictionaries from Sharp Space Town Mobile Internet site (P.15-10). Activate up to five dictionaries at one time to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among word suggestions.

Acquire Dictionary Activate downloaded dictionary

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ User Dictionary
▶ Acquire Dictionary

Select from Dictionary 1 to Dictionary 5 ▶ Press [Enter]
▶ **Select a dictionary** ▶ Press [Enter]

- Follow the same steps to replace dictionaries.

Note ▶ Some dictionary files may not be usable.

Cancel Cancel dictionary

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ User Dictionary
▶ Acquire Dictionary

Select a dictionary ▶ Press [Options] ▶ **Select Cancel** ▶ Press [Enter]

Info View dictionary information

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ User Dictionary
▶ Acquire Dictionary

Select a dictionary ▶ Press [Options] ▶ **Select Info**
▶ Press [Enter]



- Press [Enter] to return.

Notepad





Save frequently used phrases for use in mail message, etc.
Save up to 60 entries (1,536 characters each).

New Entry

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 3 (☰) ► Notepad ► <Add New Entry>

- 1 Enter text and press 
- 2 Select a category and press 

Call Notepad

- Insert text saved in Notepad into text entry windows.
Press  Options ► Select **Notepad** ► Press  ►
Select **Call Notepad** ► Press  ► Select an entry
► Press 

Opening Notepad









Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 3 (☰) ► Notepad

- 1 Select an entry and press 
- 2 Press  to return

Editing & Deleting Entries

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 3 (☰) ► Notepad

Edit	Edit Text Select an entry ► Press  Edit Text ► Edit text ► Press 
	Change Category Select an entry ► Press  Options ► Select Change Category ► Press  ► Select a Category ► Press 
Delete	Select an entry ► Press  Options ► Select Delete ► Press  ► Choose Yes ► Press 

4

Phone Book

Overview	4-2	Mail Groups	4-12
■ Phone Book Entry Items.....	4-2	■ Creating Mail Groups	4-12
■ USIM Card Phone Book	4-3	■ Saving Group Members	4-12
■ Phone Book Memory Status.....	4-3	■ Editing Mail Groups.....	4-13
■ Phone Book-Related Functions.....	4-3	■ Editing Group Members	4-13
Creating Phone Book Entries	4-4	Speed Dial	4-14
■ Saving Basic Items	4-4	■ Saving Phone Numbers	4-14
■ Customizing Handset Responses	4-5	■ Speed Dial	4-14
■ Saving Secret Entries	4-7	■ Editing Speed Dial List.....	4-14
■ Saving from Other Functions.....	4-7	Additional Phone Book Settings	4-15
Using Phone Book	4-8	S! Address Book (SAB)	4-15
■ Dialing from Phone Book.....	4-8	■ SAB Sync Commands & Features	4-16
Editing Phone Book Entries	4-10	■ Service Usage Outline	4-16
■ Correction/Change	4-10	■ Backup & Restore	4-17
■ Copying Phone Book Entries	4-10	■ Synchronizing Phone Book	4-18
■ Deleting Phone Book Entries	4-11	■ Opening Log	4-18
Category Settings	4-11	My Details	4-19
■ Changing Category Name.....	4-11	■ Opening My Details.....	4-19
■ Moving Categories	4-11	■ Editing My Details	4-19
■ Customizing Handset Responses	4-12		

Overview

Save frequently used phone numbers and mail addresses to Phone Book (up to 750 entries). Entry names appear for calls from numbers saved in Phone Book.

Phone Book Entry Items

Item	Description	Item	Description
Last Name:	Enter up to 32 characters	Note:	Add personal details. Enter up to 256 characters.
First Name:		Birthday:	Enter birth date
Reading (Last Name):	Enter up to 32 characters	Picture:	Set an image to appear for incoming calls/mail
Reading (First Name):			
Add Phone Number:	Enter up to five numbers (32 digits each)		
Add Email Address:	Enter up to five addresses (128 single-byte alphanumerics each)	Tone/Video for Voice Call:	Set ringtone/ringvideo, Small Light or Vibration by caller/sender
Category:	Sort entries into 16 Categories. Category names can be changed. Set ringtone/ringvideo, Small Light and Vibration by Category.	Tone/Video for Video Call:	
		Tone/Video for New Message:	
		Light for Voice Call:	
Address:	Enter postal code (20 characters), country name (32 characters), state/province (64 characters), city name (64 characters), street name/number (64 characters) and building name (64 characters)	Light for Video Call:	
		Light for New Message:	
		Vibration for Incoming Call:	
		Vibration for New Message:	
Homepage:	Save URLs. Enter up to 1,024 bytes.	Secret:	Restrict access to Phone Book entries by saving them as Secret entries

Note ► Back Up Important Information

When battery is exhausted/removed for long periods, Phone Book entries may be lost; handset damage may also affect handset information recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost/altered data.

USIM Card Phone Book

Save entries to USIM Card.

Entry Items:

- Name, reading, phone number (up to two numbers per entry), mail address (one address per entry) and Category

Note ▶ Depending on the USIM Card in use, some items may not be supported, and some limits (character entry, etc.) may be lower.

Phone Book Memory Status

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Manage Entries

1 Select *Memory Status* and press

Numbers of entries on handset and USIM Card appear.

Press to return.

Phone Book-Related Functions

Phone Book Lock	Restrict access to Phone Book information (P.9-18)
S! Address Book	Back up Phone Book via Server; synchronize Phone Book/SAB to reflect changes (P.4-15)
Speed Dial	Save phone numbers (directly or via Phone Book) to Speed Dial List for easy dialing (P.4-14)

Creating Phone Book Entries

Saving Basic Items

Enter a name, reading, phone number and mail address.
To create USIM Card Phone Book entries, set storage media beforehand (P.4-15 "Save New Entry").

Main Menu ▶ Phone

1 Enter name (last/first)

- 1 Select **Add New Entry** and press

Phone Book Details appears.

- 2 Select **Last Name:** and press

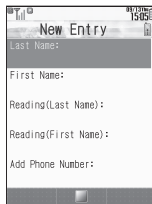
- 3 Enter last name and press

- 4 Select **First Name:** and press

- 5 Enter first name and press

Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear.

■ To correct reading, select **Reading(Last Name):** or **Reading(First Name):** ➔ Press ➔ Edit reading ➔ Press



Phone Book
Details

2 Enter phone number

- 1 Select **Add Phone Number:** and press

- 2 Enter a phone number and press

- Include area code for landline numbers.

- 3 Select an icon and press

- To save additional phone numbers, repeat Step 2.

3 Enter mail address

- 1 Select **Add Email Address:** and press

- 2 Enter a mail address and press

- 3 Select an icon and press

- To save additional mail addresses, repeat Step 3.
- Enter other items as needed.

- 4 Press **Save**

Ringtone/Ringvideo

- 1 Select from *Tone/Video for Voice Call: to Tone/Video for New Message:* and press
- 2 Select *Assign Tone* and press
 - To cancel assigned tone/video, select *Remove Tone/Video*
 - ▶ Press ▶ Choose *Yes* ▶ Press
- 3 *Ringtone*
 - 1 Select *Preset Sounds, Ring Songs-Tones, Music or Flash® Ringtones* and press
 - 1 Select *Videos* and press
- 4 Select a file and press

Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail

- After Step 4, select *Tone/Video for New Message:* ▶ Press ▶ Select *Duration* ▶ Press ▶ Enter time ▶ Press

- Note** ▶ Sounds & Alerts (P.9-2 "Ringtone/Ringvideo") setting applies when:
- Source file is deleted, moved or renamed (warnings do not appear)
 - Source file license or usage period expires (copy protected files, etc.)
 - Memory Card with the source file is removed (setting returns when the card is re-inserted)

Light/Vibration

- 1 Select from *Light for Voice Call: to Vibration for New Message* and press
- 2 Select *Switch On/Off* and press
- 3 Select *On, Link to Sound or Off* and press
 - Link to Sound: P.9-3
- 4 Select *Light Colour or Vibration Pattern* and press
- 5 Select a color/pattern and press
- 6 Press CLEAR BACK

Saving Secret Entries

Restrict access to Phone Book entries by saving them as Secret entries.

- Name/image is hidden for calls/mail from Secret entries.
- Follow these steps after opening Phone Book Details (P.4-4).
When finished, Phone Book Details returns. Complete other fields.

1 Select **Secret:** and press

2 Choose **On** and press

Unlock Temporarily

- For temporary access to Secret entries, follow these steps.

Press ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Unlock Temporarily** ➔ Press ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press

- Secret entries are hidden next time Phone Book is opened.

- Note** ➤
- Activate Show Secret Data (P.9-23) to open Secret entries.
 - To cancel Secret, activate Show Secret Data (P.9-23) and choose **Off** in Step 2. To edit Phone Book entries, see P.4-10 "Editing Phone Book Entries."
 - Secret entries do not appear in Standby Window or Hot Status member list.

Saving from Other Functions

Save phone numbers and mail addresses from Call Log, messages, etc.

- Available when **Save to Phone Book** or **Save Address** appears in Options.
- Follow these steps to save from Call Log.

1 Use to open Dialed Numbers/Received Calls

2 Use to select a record and press **Options**

3 Select **Save to Phone Book** and press

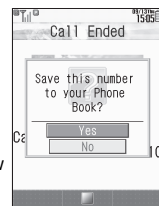
4 Select **As New Entry** and press

Phone number is entered automatically and Phone Book Details (P.4-4) appears. Complete other fields.

- To save to an existing Phone Book entry, select **As New Detail** ➔ Press ➔ Select an entry ➔ Press

After Calls with Unsaved Numbers

- Confirmation for saving the number to Phone Book appears.
 - To save, choose **Yes** ➔ Press ➔ Perform Step 4 above
 - To end without saving, choose **No** ➔ Press
- To hide this confirmation, see P.4-15 "New Number Prompt."



Using Phone Book

Dialing from Phone Book

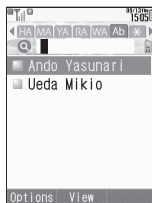
Search Phone Book by katakana row (default search method) to call numbers within entries.

- To dial numbers saved in Secret entries, first activate Show Secret Data (P.9-23).
- To search by other methods, see P.4-9.
- To use USIM Card Phone Book, first set Select Phone Book (P.4-15) to USIM Memory.

1 Press


2 Use to specify katakana row

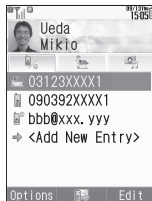
- Alternatively, enter Reading to search Phone Book.



3 Use to select an entry and press



Phone Book entry opens.
(Window Description: P.4-9)

- For entries with multiple numbers, use  to select one.



4 Press

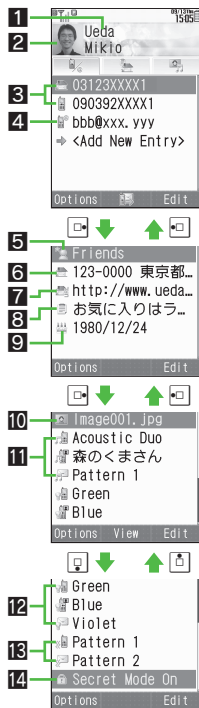
Handset dials the number.

- For other options, press  → Select an option → Press 



Tip ► Save phone numbers to Speed Dial List (P.4-14) for easy dialing.

Window Description



- 1 Name
- 2 Image Set for Picture
- 3 Phone Number
- 4 Mail Address
- 5 Category Name
- 6 Address
- 7 Homepage
- 8 Note
- 9 Birthday
- 10 Name of Image Set for Picture
- 11 Ringtone/Ringvideo Settings
- 12 Small Light Settings
- 13 Vibration Settings
- 14 Secret Status

Tip ▶ To see details or use saved information, select an item and press **■**. To add information, select an item in angle brackets (<Add New Entry>, etc.) and press **☑**.

Phone Book Search Methods

By Reading	Shows entries that start with specified Reading
By Category	Opens entries in the specified Category
By a-ka-sa-ta-na	Shows entries with Readings that start with katakana in the specified row

By a-ka-sa-ta-na is set by default.

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Ph.Book Settings ▶ Sort Entries

1 Select *By Reading*, *By Category* or *By a-ka-sa-ta-na* and press **■**

• Dialing Methods:

By Reading	Enter Reading ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press ■ ▶ Press ☑
By Category	Select a Category ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press ■ ▶ Press ☑
By a-ka-sa-ta-na	Use ☑ to specify a row ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press ■ ▶ Press ☑









For entries with multiple numbers, select one and press **☑**.

Tip ▶ In Standby, press **☑** and follow the steps above.

Editing Phone Book Entries

To edit Secret entries, first activate Show Secret Data (P.9-23).

Correction/Change







- 1** Press , then select an entry
- 2** Press  **Options**
- 3** Select **Edit** and press 
- 4** Select an item and press 
 - See procedure for saving items to Phone Book (P.4-4 - 4-7).
 - Edit Reading after editing names.
- 5** Press  when finished
 - To edit other items, repeat Steps 4 - 5.
 - To cancel, press  ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press 
- 6** Press  **Save**

The entry is overwritten.

Copying Phone Book Entries



Exchange entries between handset and USIM Card. Only supported entry items are copied to USIM Card (P.4-3 "USIM Card Phone Book").

One Entry

- 1** Press , then select an entry
- 2** Press  **Options**
- 3** Select **Manage Entries** and press 
- 4** **Handset to USIM Card**
 - 1** Select **Copy Entry to USIM** and press 
 - 2** Choose **Yes** and press 
- USIM Card to Handset**
 - 1** Select **Copy Entry to Phone** and press 

All Entries





Main Menu ➤ *Phone* ➤ *Manage Entries* ➤ *Copy All*

- 1** Select **USIM to Phone** or **Phone to USIM** and press 
- 2** Choose **Yes** and press 

Note ➤ If handset or USIM Card memory is low, entries cannot be copied all at once.




Deleting Phone Book Entries

One Entry

- 1 Press , then select an entry
- 2 Press  **Options**
- 3 Select **Delete** and press 
- 4 Choose **Yes** and press 

All Entries

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Manage Entries ▶ Delete All









- 1 Select **Phone Entries**, **USIM Entries** or **Both Entries** and press 
- 2 Choose **Yes** and press 
- 3 Enter **Handset Code** and press 

Category Settings

Customize Category options; create new Category names or sort Categories.







Changing Category Name

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Category Control

- 1 Use  to select  (**handset**) or  (**USIM**)
- 2 Select a **Category** and press 
 - **No Category** cannot be renamed.
- 3 Select **Edit Name** and press 
 - To change icons, select **Change Icon** ▶ Press  ▶ Select an icon ▶ Press  (Omit the next steps.)
- 4 Enter name
 - Enter up to 16 characters on handset; USIM Card character entry limit varies according to card specifications.
- 5 Press 

Moving Categories

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Category Control

- 1 Use  to select  (**handset**) or  (**USIM**)
- 2 Select a **Category** and press  **Move**
- 3 Use  to select target location and press 






Tip ▶ Moving Categories changes Category view for *By Category* Phone Book search (P.4-9) accordingly.

Customizing Handset Responses

Set ringtone/ringvideo, Small Light or Vibration for incoming calls/mail by Category.

Category settings for incoming calls/mail are not available for Categories on USIM Card.

Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Category Control

- 1** Use  to select  (handset)
- 2** Select a Category and press  **Options**
- 3** Select *Assign Ringtone, Assign Event Light or Assign Vibration* and press 
- 4** Select an item and press 
 - For more, see the corresponding procedure for Phone Book entries (P.4-6).

- Note ▶**
- Ringtone/ringvideo setting is canceled when:
 - Source file is deleted, moved or renamed (warnings do not appear)
 - Source file license or usage period expires (copy protected files, etc.)
 - Ringtone/ringvideo, Small Light and Vibration settings for Phone Book entries (P.4-6) take priority.



Mail Groups

Create Mail Groups to send messages to multiple recipients at one time.

Creating Mail Groups

Create up to 20 Mail Groups.






Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Mail Groups

- 1** Select *<Add New Group>* and press 
- 2** Enter name and press 
 - Enter up to 16 characters.

Saving Group Members

Save up to 20 members per Group.





Main Menu ▶ Phone ▶ Mail Groups

- 1** Select a Group and press 
- 2** Select *<Assign New Entry>* and press 
- 3** Select an entry and press 
 - For entries with multiple numbers/addresses, use  to select a SoftBank handset number or mail address ▶ Press 
 - To add more members, repeat Steps 2 - 3.

Editing Mail Groups





Renaming Groups

Main Menu ► Phone ► Mail Groups

- 1 Select a Group and press  Options
- 2 Select *Edit Name* and press 
- 3 Enter name and press 
- 4 Choose *Yes* and press 

Deleting Groups








Main Menu ► Phone ► Mail Groups

- 1 Select a Group and press  Options
- 2 Select *Delete* and press 
- 3 Choose *Yes* and press 
- 4 Enter Handset Code and press 

Editing Group Members




Changing Members

Main Menu ► Phone ► Mail Groups ► *Open a Group*

- 1 Select a member and press  Options
- 2 Select *Re-assign Entry* and press 
- 3 Select an entry and press 
 For entries with multiple numbers/addresses, use  to select a SoftBank handset number or mail address ► Press 
- 4 Choose *Yes* and press 

Deleting Members

Main Menu ► Phone ► Mail Groups ► *Open a Group*

- 1 Select a member and press  Options
- 2 Select *Remove Entry* and press 
- 3 Choose *Yes* and press 

Tip ► Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting members.

Speed Dial List

Saving Phone Numbers

Save phone numbers to Speed Dial List for easy dialing.

Main Menu ► Phone ► Speed Dial List

1 Select from 0 to 9 and press

2 Select an entry and press

For entries with multiple numbers, use to select one ► Press

To overwrite existing number, choose **Yes** ► Press

Saving from Phone Book

Open a Phone Book entry (P.4-9) and follow these steps.

Select a phone number ► Press **Options** ► Select **Add Speed Dial** ► Press ► Select from 0 to 9 ► Press

To overwrite existing number, choose **Yes** ► Press

Note ► Saved numbers are deleted from Speed Dial List when edited in Phone Book or when source entry is deleted.

Tip ► Use Headphones with Call Button to call the number saved in Speed Dial .

Speed Dial

1 Press a key (-)

2 Press

To place Video Calls, press for 1+ seconds. (Speed Video Call)

Using Headphones with Call Button

In Standby, press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a double beep sounds; handset dials the number saved in Speed Dial .

To end the call, press Call Button for 1+ seconds until a beep sounds.

Editing Speed Dial List

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ► Phone ► Speed Dial List

Delete	Delete entries one at a time Select an entry ► Press Options ► Select Delete ► Press ► Choose Yes ► Press
	Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting Speed Dial entries.
Clear All	Return Speed Dial List to default setting Press Options ► Select Clear All ► Press
	Choose Yes ► Press

Additional Phone Book Settings

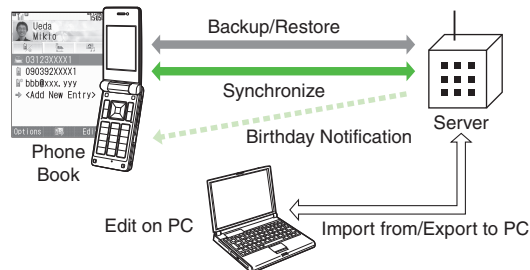
Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ► Phone ► Ph.Book Settings

Select Phone Book Default: Phone	Switch between handset and USIM Card Select Select Phone Book ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select Phone, USIM Memory or Both ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> • For Both , entries in both storage media appear.
Save New Entry Default: Phone	Set default storage media for new entries Select Save New Entry ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select Phone, USIM Memory or Ask Each Time ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> • For Ask Each Time , select storage media for each new entry.
New Number Prompt Default: On	Show or hide confirmation for saving to Phone Book after calls with unsaved numbers Select New Number Prompt ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select Incoming Call or Outgoing Call ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Choose On or Off ► Press <input type="checkbox"/>

S! Address Book (SAB)

Back up Phone Book content in SAB; add Phone Book changes to SAB anytime. Edit SAB online via PC; add SAB changes to Phone Book anytime. Restore lost or altered Phone Book content from SAB.



- SAB requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Use SAB to add Phone Book content to a new compatible SoftBank handset; some conditions apply (P.4-17).
- Use a PC to edit SAB online.
- For more about SAB, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/support/useful/sab/>).

Note ► Sync commands (Backup, Restore and Synchronize) all incur transmission fees.

SAB Sync Commands & Features

Backup/ Restore	Backup	Export Phone Book content to SAB ¹
	Restore	Import SAB content to Phone Book ²
Synchronize	Synchronize	Synchronize Phone Book and SAB ³
	Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB ⁴
	Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book ⁵
Edit on PC	Import from PC	Upload PC address book info to SAB
	Export to PC	Export SAB content to PC address book
Send Notice	Birthday Notification ⁶	SAB sends reminders via SMS to handset
	Email Address Notification ⁶	Notify latest handset mail address to specified addresses

¹Any existing SAB content is deleted.

²Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

³If the same entry item is edited in Phone Book and SAB, SAB content is referenced.

⁴Unrelated SAB changes remain.

⁵Unrelated Phone Book changes remain.

⁶Access this function via handset or a PC.

Service Usage Outline

Complete Contract

Visit a SoftBank shop, dial 157 from a SoftBank handset for SoftBank Customer Center, General Information or access My SoftBank via Yahoo! Keitai.



Receive User ID & Password

After subscription, User ID and Password arrive via SMS.
 • User ID and Password are required to use SAB via a PC.



Use SAB

Export Phone Book content to SAB.

Tip ▶ If User ID and Password SMS does not arrive, dial 157 for Customer Service or follow these steps.

Press **[v]** ▶ Select **メニュー/ソフト** ▶ Press **[■]** ▶
 Select **My SoftBank** ▶ Press **[■]** ▶ Select
English ▶ Press **[■]** ▶ Select **Password**
confirmation for S! Address Book ▶ Press **[■]**
 ■ Follow onscreen instructions.

Precautions

Unsynchronizable Items

SAB restoration cancels these Phone Book settings:

- Picture, Tone/Video, Light, Vibration

Unintentional Phone Book or SAB Content Deletion

- When no Phone Book content exists, selecting **Synchronize**, **Sync from Client** or **Backup** deletes all SAB content.
- When no SAB content exists, selecting **Synchronize**, **Sync from Server** or **Restore** deletes all Phone Book content.

Phone Book ⇔ SAB Content Capacity Disparities

When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB entries, Synchronization reflects lower limit.

SAB Transfers to New Handsets

SAB-Compatible 3G Handsets

SAB remains as last saved and is fully accessible.

Other 3G Handsets

SAB remains as last saved and is accessible via PC.

V3/V4/V5/V6/V8 Series

Service contract is terminated and SAB content is deleted.

Contract Termination

SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.

Availability

SAB is only accessible within Japan.

Backup & Restore

Backup (Phone Book → SAB)

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Address Book ► Backup

1 Choose Yes and press

2 Enter Handset Code and press

Handset connects to the Server and Backup starts.

- After Backup, details appear.

To cancel, press **Cancel** ► Choose **Yes** ► Press

3 Press to return

Restore (SAB → Phone Book)

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Address Book ► Restore

1 Choose Yes and press

2 Enter Handset Code and press

Handset connects to the Server and Restore starts.

- After Restore, details appear.

To cancel, press **Cancel** ► Choose **Yes** ► Press

3 Press to return

Synchronizing Phone Book

Manual Synchronization

- For details, see the table on P.4-16.
- If this is your first use of SAB (new handset), Synchronization is performed via **Synchronize** regardless of selection.

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Address Book

1 Select **Synchronize, Sync from Client or Sync from Server** and press

2 Choose **Yes** and press

3 Enter Handset Code and press

Handset connects to the Server and Synchronization starts.

- After Synchronization, details appear.

To cancel, press **Cancel** ► Choose **Yes** ► Press

4 Press to return

Auto Synchronization

Auto Sync Settings is **Off** by default.

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Address Book ► Auto Sync Settings

1 Enter Handset Code and press

2 Select **Set On/Off** and press

3 Choose **On** and press

Setting Auto Sync Frequency and Command

- By default, when Auto Sync is activated, **Synchronize** starts at 4:00 AM every Sunday. To change Auto Sync frequency/command, follow these steps after completing the above steps.

- **Set Frequency**

Select **Set Frequency** ► Press ► Select **Every Month, Every Week or Every Day** ► Press ► Enter date/time/day of the week ► Press

- **Set Sync Mode**

Select **Set Sync Mode** ► Press ► Select a command ► Press

Opening Log

View up to ten Backup/Restore/Synchronization records.

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Address Book ► View Log

1 Select a record and press



2 Press to return

My Details

Opening My Details



Confirm handset number (phone number on USIM Card).

Main Menu ► Phone




- 1 Select **My Details** and press 
 - My Details are similar to Phone Book entries (P.4-9).
- 2 Press  to exit

Editing My Details

Main Menu ► Phone ► My Details

- 1 Press  **Edit**
 - 2 Select an item and press 
 - For more, see the procedures for creating/editing Phone Book entries.
- Note** ► Phone number in **Tel 1**: cannot be changed.

Clearing My Details

- Open My Details and press  **Options** ► Select **Reset My Details** ► Press  ► Choose **Yes** ► Press 
- Phone number in **Tel 1**: remains.

5

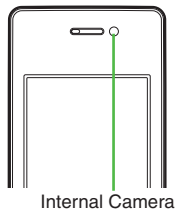
Video Call

Getting Started	5-2
Initiating a Video Call	5-3
Answering a Video Call	5-3
Engaged Video Call Operations	5-4
Video Call Settings	5-5
Remote Monitor	5-6
■ Activating Remote Monitor	5-6
■ Adding to Auto Answer List	5-6

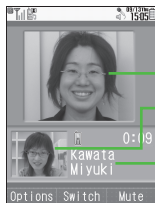
Getting Started

Communicate with another party using live video images.

- Use Video Call with compatible handsets only.
- Use Internal Camera to send your own image.
- Use External Camera to send higher quality images.



Window Description



Incoming Image¹

Outgoing Image¹

Other Party's Number²

¹Change incoming/outgoing image size/position (P.5-4 "Switch Images").

²Name appears if saved in Phone Book.

Important Video Call Usage Notes

- If both parties are not using the same Video Call system, call may be interrupted. (Video Call charges apply.)
- Rapid motion can make images appear choppy or distorted.
- Conversations may be hampered by ambient noise. Use Headphones to reduce noise.
- Handset temperature may rise during Video Calls; this is normal.
- Use AC Charger during Video Call to avoid battery exhaustion.

Loudspeaker

- Increasing Earpiece Volume for Loudspeaker (P.5-4, P.5-5) use may cause feedback/interference. Moderate volume or use Headphones.
- Loudspeaker is temporarily canceled when receiving Video Calls in Manner mode. To reactivate, set to **Loudspeaker On** during a call.

Initiating a Video Call

1 Enter a phone number

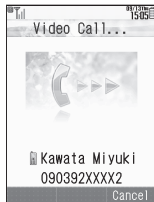
- Alternatively, select a record from Call Log.

2 Press for 1+ seconds

When the call is answered, incoming image appears.

- Incoming image may appear small depending on the other party's handset. Incoming image may not appear depending on handset settings. (Video Call charges apply.)

- For operations during a Video Call, see P.5-4.







3 Press to end call

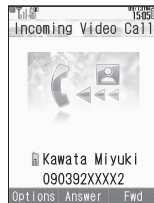
- Alternatively, close handset to end calls. (Note, however, that if Headphones or a Bluetooth® headset is in use, line will remain open even when handset is closed.)

Tip ▶ Select **Video Call** in Options menu of Phone Book, etc. to initiate a Video Call.

Answering a Video Call

1 When a Video Call arrives, open handset

- To reject the call, press  **Options** → Select **Reject** → Press .
- To redirect the call, press  **Fwd**.
- To place the caller on hold, press .
 - Callers placed on hold receive Hold Guidance Picture; Microphone is muted.



2 Answer with Video Image

1 Press **Answer**

2 Choose **Yes** and press

Internal Camera image is sent.

- For operations during a Video Call, see P.5-4.

Answer with Voice Only

1 Press **Answer**

2 Choose **No** and press

- Outgoing image is suppressed. (Video Call charges apply.)

- For operations during a Video Call, see P.5-4.

3 Press to end call

- Alternatively, close handset to end calls. (Note, however, that if Headphones or a Bluetooth® headset is in use, line will remain open even when handset is closed.)

Engaged Video Call Operations

Camera Picture Default Internal Camera	Toggle outgoing image between Internal Camera image, External Camera image and Alternative Image Use <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To change Alternative Image, see P.5-5 "Camera Picture."
Switch Images	Toggle incoming/outgoing image view Press
Loudspeaker	Cancel or activate Loudspeaker Press Options ➔ Select Loudspeaker Off or Loudspeaker On ➔ Press
Hold	Pause live voice/image transmissions Press Options ➔ Select Hold ➔ Press <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Hold Guidance Picture is sent.
Mirror Image	Activate or cancel reversed Internal Camera image Press Options ➔ Select Settings ➔ Press ➔ Select Mirror Image ➔ Press ➔ Choose On or Off ➔ Press <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mirror Image is On when initiating Video Calls.
Exposure	Adjust outgoing image brightness Press Options ➔ Select Settings ➔ Press ➔ Select Exposure ➔ Press ➔ Use to adjust level ➔ Press <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alternative Image appearance is fixed. Exposure is Level 0 when initiating Video Calls.

Enable/Disable DTMF	Select whether to send Touch Tones during a call Press Options ➔ Select Enable DTMF or Disable DTMF ➔ Press <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enable DTMF is set when initiating Video Calls.
Help	View a summary of key assignments Press Options ➔ Select Help ➔ Press <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press to return.

Other Engaged Call Operations

Mobile Light*	Press for 1+ seconds
Digital Zoom	Press (zoom in) or (zoom out) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Not available for Alternative Image.
Settings	Press Options ➔ Select Settings ➔ Press ➔ See P.5-5
Earpiece Volume	P.2-10 "Earpiece Volume"
Mute	P.2-10 "Mute"
Phone Book	P.2-11 "Other Engaged Call Operations"
Manner Mode	P.2-18 "Activating/Canceling Manner Mode"
Video Output	P.9-13 "Viewing Images on External Devices"
Transfer Audio	P.10-9 "Switching Sound Output"

*Available for External Camera.

Video Call Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call/Video Call (☎)** ▶ **Video Call**

These settings can also be changed during calls.

<p>Camera Picture <small>Default: Internal Camera</small></p>	<p>Outgoing image is either live video via Internal Camera or Alternative Image when initiating Video Calls</p> <p>Select Camera Picture ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select Default Image ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select Internal Camera or Alternative Image ▶ Press ■</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To change Alternative Image, select Alternative Image ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select Preset Picture or Pictures ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select an image ▶ Press ■ ▶ Press ■ To use Custom Screen image, select Alternative Image ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select Custom Screen ▶ Press ■ ▶ Press ■ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> External Camera image is selectable during a call.
<p>Incoming Picture/Outgoing Picture <small>Default: Normal</small></p>	<p>Select quality of incoming/outgoing images</p> <p>Select Incoming Picture or Outgoing Picture ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select quality ▶ Press ■</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select Quality Prior for higher quality and Frame Rate Prior for faster frame rate. Outgoing Picture setting may automatically change during calls depending on the other party's setting.

<p>Hold Guidance Pict <small>Default: Picture 1</small></p>	<p>Select image that can be sent while calls are on hold</p> <p>Preset Picture/Data Folder Images Select Hold Guidance Pict ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select Preset Picture or Pictures ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select an image ▶ Press ■ ▶ Press ■</p> <p>Custom Screens Select Hold Guidance Pict ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select Custom Screen ▶ Press ■ ▶ Press ■</p>
<p>Backlight <small>Default: Always On</small></p>	<p>Select a Backlight status for Video Calls</p> <p>Select Backlight ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select a pattern ▶ Press ■</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Selecting Normal Setting applies Display Backlight setting (P.9-12).
<p>Loudspeaker <small>Default: On</small></p>	<p>Activate or cancel Loudspeaker for Video Calls</p> <p>Select Loudspeaker ▶ Press ■ ▶ Choose On or Off ▶ Press ■</p>
<p>Mute Microphone <small>Default: Off</small></p>	<p>Mute Microphone for Video Calls</p> <p>Select Mute Microphone ▶ Press ■ ▶ Choose On (mute) or Off ▶ Press ■</p>

Remote Monitor

Automatically answer Video Calls from numbers saved in Auto Answer List.

- A tone sounds from Speaker for calls answered via Remote Monitor. (Tone and volume are fixed.)
- Internal Camera image is sent when answering calls via Remote Monitor regardless of Camera Picture settings (P.5-5). (Switch to Alternative Image during the call.)
- Remote Monitor is effective only when handset is open.

Activating Remote Monitor

Remote Monitor is **Off** by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Video Call ▶ Remote Monitor

1 Enter Handset Code and press

To change ring time (00 seconds by default), select **Answer Time** ▶ Press ▶ Enter time ▶ Press

2 Select **Switch On/Off** and press

3 Choose **On** and press

To cancel Remote Monitor, choose **Off** ▶ Press (Omit the next step.)

4 Press

Adding to Auto Answer List

Save up to ten numbers.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Video Call ▶ Remote Monitor

1 Enter Handset Code and press

2 Select **Auto Answer List** and press

To edit numbers, select an entry ▶ Press ▶ Edit the number ▶ Press (Omit the next steps.)

To delete numbers, select an entry ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press (Omit the next steps.)

3 Direct Entry

1 Select **<empty>** and press

From Phone Book or Call Log

1 Select **<empty>** and press **Options**

2 Select **Change** and press

3 Select **From Phone Book** or **From Call Log** and press

4 Enter or select a number and press

6

Camera

Getting Started	6-2	Special Shooting Modes	6-9
■ Mobile Camera Basics	6-2	■ Self-timer.....	6-9
■ Key Assignments	6-3	■ Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera).....	6-10
■ Photo Camera Mode	6-4	■ Adding Frames (Photo Camera)	6-11
■ Video Camera Mode	6-5	■ Camera Effects (Photo Camera).....	6-11
Capturing Still Images	6-6	■ Panorama Picture (Photo Camera).....	6-12
■ Still Image Functions	6-6	Sending Images	6-13
Recording Video	6-7	■ Still Images	6-13
■ Video Recording Operations	6-8	■ Video Clips.....	6-13
Opening Images & Playing Video	6-8	Camera Settings	6-14
		■ Shooting Options	6-14
		■ Image Settings	6-15
		■ Additional Settings	6-16

Getting Started

814SH and 815SH feature a 2 Megapixel CCD camera. Capture still images or record video.

Tip ► Use Internal Camera or External Camera; unless otherwise noted, mobile camera operations are described for External Camera.

■ Shutter Click

- Shutter click volume is fixed, and sounds even in Manner mode.
- To change shutter click sound for still images, see **P.6-14**.

■ Exporting Images

View images and video on PCs, TVs or other display devices via optional Video Cable (**P.9-13** "Viewing Images on External Devices").

Mobile Camera Basics

- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover with a soft cloth before use.
- Handset movement may blur images; hold handset firmly or place it on a stable surface and use Self-timer (**P.6-9**).
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument, however, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Subjecting the lens to direct sunlight will damage the camera's color filter.

Auto Shut-off

- Before image capture, mobile camera shuts down after three minutes of inactivity and handset returns to Standby.

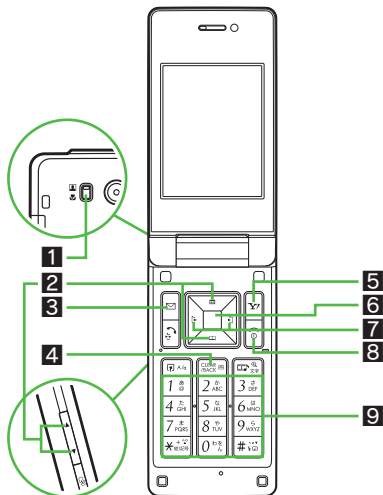
Internal Camera Images

- Your image appears on Display as a mirror image before/after shutter is released; saved image appears reversed.

Precautions for Video Recording

- When battery is low, Video Camera is not available. If battery runs low while recording video, recording stops. (Recorded video is saved.)

Key Assignments



1 Portrait (👤)/Macro (📷) Selector

Slide to Macro to capture images as close as 10 cm. Allow at least 40 cm for Portrait.

2 Digital Zoom

Press (zoom in) or (zoom out).

- Alternatively, use (zoom in) and (zoom out).

3 Options

4 Cancel

5 Toggle Mode

6 Shutter

7 Exposure

(darker), (brighter)

8 Exit

9 Function Shortcuts

Activate mobile camera and press the following keys to use the corresponding functions.

	Show Exposure slider (P.6-15)
	Hide indicators to frame image on full Display (P.6-14 "Display Indicators")
	Toggle Viewfinder size (P.6-14 "Display Size")
	Scan barcodes (P.12-19)
	Switch save location (P.6-16 "Save to")
	Change image size (P.6-15 "Picture Size" or "Record Time/Size")
	Switch Scene options for still image capture (P.6-16)
	Turn Microphone on/off for video recording (P.6-15)
	Change image quality (P.6-15)
	Toggle Self-timer mode (P.6-9)
	Maximize or cancel Digital Zoom
	Open Help (below Step 1 on P.6-6 or below Step 2 on P.6-7)
	Toggle between Internal Camera and External Camera (P.6-16 "Internal Camera/External Camera")
	Toggle Mobile Light mode (P.6-14)

- Available options vary by selected image capture mode. For details, see P.6-6 "Still Image Functions" and P.6-8 "Video Recording Operations."

Photo Camera Mode

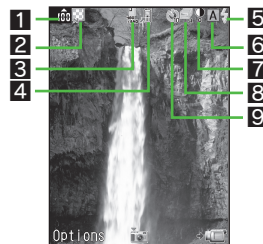
Picture Size & Digital Zoom	2M (W 1200 x H 1600 dots: UXGA) ¹ : None Wide (W 900 x H 1600 dots) ¹ : None 1.2M (W 960 x H 1280 dots: Quad-VGA) ¹ : 1 - 1.3x Wallpaper (W 480 x H 640 dots: VGA) ¹ : 1 - 2.5x Mail L (W 240 x H 320 dots: QVGA): 1 - 10.2x Mail S (W 120 x H 160 dots: QQVGA): 1 - 20x
Format	JPEG (.jpg) ²
Save Location	Handset or Memory Card Data Folder [Pictures or DCIM (P.6-16 "Save to")]
Picture Quality	High Quality/Fine/Normal
S! Mail Attachment	OK
Memory Capacity³	850 files

¹Images appear as landscape images when viewed on PCs, etc.

²Default file names appear as *Image001.jpg*, *Image002.jpg*, etc. (*SBSH0001.JPG*, *SBSH0002.JPG*, etc. in DCIM folder).

³Approximate value for images captured with default settings.

Display Indicators



1 Capacity (left)

- : 101 or more

2 Picture Quality (P.6-15)

- : High Quality, : Fine, : Normal

3 Picture Size (P.6-15)

4 Save to (P.6-16)

- : Handset, : Memory Card
- : Memory Card (DCIM), : Ask Each Time

5 Mobile Light (P.6-14)

- : On, : Automatic, : Low Light

6 Scene (P.6-16)

- : Automatic, : Night, : Sports, : Text

7 Exposure (P.6-15)

-
- Dark Standard Bright

8 Continuous Shoot (P.6-10)

- : 4 Pictures, : 9 Pictures, : Overlapped

9 Self-timer (P.6-9)

- : 10 seconds, : 5 seconds, : 2 seconds

Video Camera Mode

Image Size	W 176 x H 144 dots (QCIF)	W 640 x H 480 dots (VGA)	
	W 128 x H 96 dots (SubQCIF)	W 320 x H 240 dots (QVGA)	
		W 240 x H 176 dots (HQVGA) ¹	
Format	MPEG-4 or H.263 (.3gp) ²	MPEG-4 (.3gp) ²	MPEG-4 (.ASF) ³
Save Location	Handset or Memory Card Data Folder (Videos)		Memory Card (SD VIDEO)
Video Quality	High Quality/Fine/ Normal		High Quality
Send Mail Attachment	OK		N/A
Recording Time (per shot)	For Message	Approx. 60 seconds (Normal) Approx. 50 seconds (Fine) Approx. 30 seconds (High Quality)	—
	Extended Video	30 minutes on Memory Card ⁴	
	SD VIDEO	—	Capacity-based

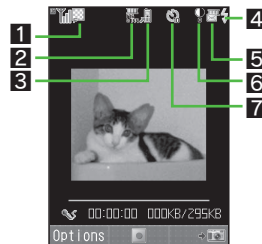
¹MPEG-4 (.3gp) only.

²Default file names appear as **video001.3gp**, **video002.3gp**, etc.

³Default file names appear as **MOL001.ASF**, **MOL002.ASF**, etc.

⁴Varies by selected image size when saving to handset.

Display Indicators



1 Video Quality (P.6-15)

📺: High Quality, 📺: Fine, 📺: Normal

2 Record Size (P.6-15)

3 Save to (P.6-16)

📱: Handset, 📁: Memory Card, 🔄: Ask Each Time

4 Mobile Light (P.6-14)

🔦: On, 🌙: Automatic

5 Record Time (P.6-15)

📺: For Message, 📺: Extended Video, 📺: SD VIDEO

6 Exposure (P.6-15)

🌑 🌒 🌓 🌔 🌕

Dark ◀ Standard ▶ Bright

7 Self-timer (P.6-9)

🕒: 10 seconds, 🕒: 5 seconds, 🕒: 2 seconds

Capturing Still Images

Main Menu ▶ Camera

1 Frame image on Display

- To open Help, press **0**.
- Press **□** to return.

2 Press **□**

Shutter clicks and the captured image appears on Display.

- To start over, press **□**.
- To send image via S! Mail, press **☑** (☑)
- ▶ Perform from Step 3 on **P.14-4**
- To send image via IrSS transfer, press **☑** (Long Press) ▶ Perform Step 3 in "Transferring JPEG Images at High Speed" on **P.10-4**

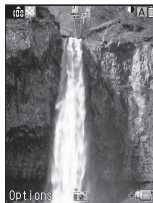


Photo Camera

3 Press **□** to save

Image is saved and Viewfinder returns for another shot.

- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ▶ Press **□**
- To open saved images, see **P.6-8**.

4 Press **⓪** to exit

When Captured Image is Unsaved

- A confirmation appears when closing mobile camera before returning to Viewfinder. Follow onscreen prompt.

Incoming Calls/Alarm after Capturing Images

- Captured image is temporarily saved.
 - End the call or close Alarm Time notice to return.

Tip ▶ When Auto Save is active, captured image is saved automatically and Viewfinder returns.

Still Image Functions

Before image capture, press **☑** **Options** to use the following functions.

Available options vary by selected Picture Size or camera type (Internal/External).

Exposure		Adjust amount of light (P.6-15)
Modes	Add Frame	Add frames (P.6-11)
	Continuous Shoot	Capture images sequentially (P.6-10)
	Camera Effects	Capture images with special effects (P.6-11)
	Panorama Picture	Capture panoramic images (P.6-12)
Scan Barcode		Scan barcodes (P.12-19)
Data Folder		Access Data Folder files (P.6-8)
Picture Size		Select image size (P.6-15)
Scene		Select a mode to suit lighting conditions or subject (P.6-16)
Picture Quality		Select High Quality , Fine or Normal (P.6-15)
Self-timer		Set Self-timer (P.6-9)
Settings	Display Indicators	Hide indicators to frame image on full Display (P.6-14)
	Shutter Sound	Change shutter click sound (P.6-14)
	Save Pictures to	Select handset or Memory Card (P.6-16)
	Auto Save	Select whether to save captured image automatically (P.6-16)
Panorama Settings		Show/hide guides or adjust Brightness automatically (P.6-12)
Internal Camera/ External Camera		Toggle between Internal Camera and External Camera (P.6-16)
Help		View a summary of key assignments (left)
Mobile Light		Select mode (P.6-14)

Tip ▶ Before saving captured images, press **☑** **Options** to select a save location, or delete Data Folder files to free memory.

Recording Video

For best results, record within 1.5 meters, in good light.

Main Menu ▶ Camera

1 Press (+)

Video Viewfinder appears.

- Omit this step if Video Camera is already active.

2 Frame image on Display

- To open Help, press .
- Press to return.

3 Press

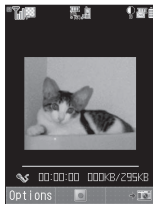
Recording begins after a tone.

- To start over, press .

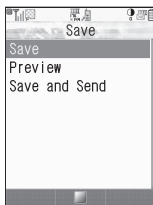
4 To stop, press

Recording stops with a tone.

- To play back, select **Preview** ▶ Press .
 - Press during playback to toggle Display Size.
- To start over, press .
- To send image via S! Mail, select **Save and Send** ▶ Press ▶ Perform from Step 3 on **P.14-4**



Video Camera



5 To save, select **Save** and press

Image is saved and Viewfinder returns for another shot.

- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ▶ Press

6 Press to exit

When Recorded Video is Unsaved

- A confirmation appears when closing mobile camera before returning to Viewfinder. Follow onscreen prompt.

Incoming Calls/Alarm while Recording Video

- If a call or Alarm Time arrives before recorded video is saved, captured clip is temporarily saved.
 - End the call or close Alarm Time notice to return.
- When Alarm Time arrives while recording video, Alarm Time is announced after exiting mobile camera.

Tip ▶ When Auto Save is active, recorded video is saved automatically and Viewfinder returns.

Video Recording Operations

Before recording, press  **Options** to use the following functions.

Available options vary by selected Record Time/Size or camera type (Internal/External).

Exposure	Adjust amount of light (P.6-15)
Display Size	Change Viewfinder size (P.6-14)
Data Folder	Access Data Folder files (right)
Record Time/Size	Select a format based on recording time and image size (P.6-15)
Microphone	Activate to record sound (P.6-15)
Video Quality	Select High Quality , Fine or Normal (P.6-15)
Self-timer	Set Self-timer (P.6-9)
Settings	Save Videos to Select handset or Memory Card (P.6-16)
	Auto Save Select whether to save recorded video automatically (P.6-16)
	Video Encode Select a video encoding format (P.6-15)
Internal Camera/ External Camera	Toggle between Internal Camera and External Camera (P.6-16)
Help	View a summary of key assignments (P.6-7)
Mobile Light	Select mode (P.6-14)

Tip ▶ Save menu opens after recording; save or play recorded clip or attach it to S! Mail.

Opening Images & Playing Video

To open files directly from Data Folder, see P.8-3.

Main Menu ▶ *Camera*

1 Opening Still Images

1 In Photo Camera mode, press  **Options**



Playing Video




1 In Video Camera mode, press  **Options**



2 Select *Data Folder* and press

File list appears.

- Memory Status appears at the top.

 To open still images with Memory Card inserted, select **Pictures** or **DCIM** ▶ Press 

 To switch between handset and Memory Card, press  **Options** ▶ Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to MemoryCard** ▶ Press 

 To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it ▶ Press 

3 Select a file and press

 To open other files, press  ▶ Select one ▶ Press 

- Playback starts after opening video files.

SD VIDEO Play QVGA or VGA size (.ASF) video

Main Menu ▶ *Media Player* ▶ *Videos* ▶ *SD VIDEO*

Select a file ▶ **Press** 

 To open other files, press  ▶ Select one ▶ Press 

Special Shooting Modes

Self-timer

Delay shutter release after Shutter Key is pressed to capture still images or record video.



- Available for External Camera.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.6-6) or recording video (after Step 2 on P.6-7).
- Self-timer is **Off** by default.

1 Press  **Options**

2 Select **Self-timer** and press 

3 Select time and press 



Viewfinder returns (👁, 📷 or 📹 appears).

 To cancel, choose **Off** ➔ Press 

4 Frame image on Display and press 

Tone sounds and countdown starts.

- After selected time elapses, shutter is released and captured image appears or video recording starts.



 To cancel Self-timer during countdown, press  **Cancel**.

- Viewfinder returns. (Self-timer remains active.)

5 Press  to save image or stop recording

- Still image is saved and Viewfinder returns. Self-timer is canceled.


 To save video, select **Save** ➔ Press 

 When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press 


6 Press  to exit

 When Captured Image/Recorded Video is Unsaved: P.6-6, P.6-7

Self-timer Details

- To release shutter manually during countdown, press . Image is captured or video recording starts and Self-timer is canceled.
- Incoming calls and Alarm interrupt countdown. (Self-timer remains active.)
- Available functions during countdown are Digital Zoom, Mobile Light and Exposure.

Note ➤ Self-timer is not available when shooting speed for Continuous Shoot (P.6-10) is **Manual**.

Tip ➤ Activate mobile camera and press  to toggle Self-timer as follows:

10 seconds ➔ **5 seconds** ➔ **2 seconds** ➔ **Off**

Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera)

Capture a series of 4 or 9 separate images automatically with a single press of the Shutter Key. Select from three speed settings or choose the manual option to control the rate at which images are captured.

4 Pictures	Capture four separate images with Index Image
9 Pictures	Capture nine separate images with Index Image
Overlapped	Capture five images to create a composite image

- Switch to External Camera to use Continuous Shoot; depending on selected Picture Size, Continuous Shoot may not be available or Index Image may not be created.
- Available shooting speed options vary by selected Picture Size.
- In 4 Pictures or 9 Pictures mode, select shutter interval from three levels, or select **Manual** to release shutter manually.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.6-6).

1 Press  **Options**

2 Select **Modes** and press 

3 Select **Continuous Shoot** and press 

4 Select from **4 Pictures** to **Overlapped** and press 

5 Select speed and press 



Viewfinder returns with corresponding indicator (P.6-4).

- **Manual** is not available when Self-timer (P.6-9) is active.

6 Frame image on Display and press



The first frame is captured with subsequent frames captured at selected speed.




- For manual control (4 Pictures and 9 Pictures modes), repeat Step 6 for each frame.



 To stop before capturing all frames, press  **Cancel**.

7 Index Image or a composite image appears

- When Picture Size is **Wallpaper(480x640)**, the first captured image appears.

 Use  to toggle between frames and Index Image.



 To send image via S! Mail, press  ()
➔ Perform from Step 3 on P.14-4

 To send image via IrSS transfer, press 
(Long Press) ➔ Perform Step 3 in
"Transferring JPEG Images at High Speed" on P.10-4



4 Pictures


8 To save, press

 When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press 





9 Select **All Pictures** and press

Images are saved and Viewfinder returns with Continuous Shoot active.

10 Press to exit

 When Captured Image is Unsaved: P.6-8

Saving the Selected Image

 In Step 7, use  to select an image ➔ Press  ➔ Select **Selected Picture** ➔ Press 

- Viewfinder returns. To save other images, repeat the steps above.

Note ➤ In low light, shooting speed may slow down.

Adding Frames (Photo Camera)

- In addition to Preset Frames, use transparent PNG files (40 KB or smaller) obtained via the Internet, S! Mail, etc.
- Switch to External Camera to add frames; depending on selected Picture Size, frames may not be available.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.6-6); after Viewfinder returns, complete image capture.

1 Press  **Options**



2 Select *Modes* and press 

3 Select *Add Frame* and press 

4 *Preset Frames*

1 Select *Preset Frames* and press 

2 Select a frame and press 

 To check frames, select one → Press  **View**

■ Press  to return.

Frames in Date Folder

1 Select *Data Folder* and press 

2 Select a frame and press 

 To check frames, select one → Press  **View**

■ Press  to return.

3 Press 

Canceling

1 Choose *Off* and press 

Tip ▶ In Continuous Shoot, frame is added to each image.

Camera Effects (Photo Camera)

Capture images with special effects.



- Switch to External Camera to use Camera Effects; depending on selected Picture Size, Camera Effects may not be available.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.6-6); after Viewfinder returns, complete image capture.

1 Press  **Options**

2 Select *Modes* and press 

3 Select *Camera Effects* and press 

4 Select an effect and press 

 To check effects, press  **View**.

■ Press  to return.

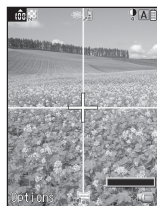
 To cancel, choose *Off* → Press 

Panorama Picture (Photo Camera)

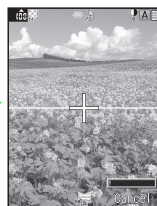
Capture panoramic images in portrait or landscape orientation.

- Switch to External Camera to use Panorama Picture.
- While Panorama Picture is active, other image capture modes are not available and Self-timer is disabled.
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.6-6).

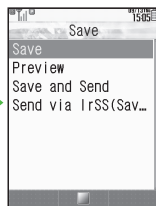
- 1 Press **Options**
- 2 Select **Modes** and press
- 3 Select **Panorama Picture** and press
- 4 Choose **On** and press
- 5 Capture an image



Press



Move handset horizontally or vertically



Press
(Captured)

To start over, press .

- Move handset slowly to keep aligned with either of yellow lines.
- Image is captured automatically when the bar () turns blue.

6 Select **Save** and press

- To check captured image, select **Preview** Press
 - To change preview method, press **Options** Select **Auto Scroll**, **Manual Scroll** or **Full Image** Press
- To send image via S! Mail, select **Save and Send** Press
 - Perform from Step 3 on P.14-4
- To send image via IrSS transfer, select **Send via IrSS(Save)**
 - Press Perform Step 3 in "Transferring JPEG Images at High Speed" on P.10-4

Panorama Settings

Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.6-6).

Assisting Lines Default: On	Show or hide yellow lines and during image capture Press Options Select Settings Press Select Panorama Settings Press Select Assisting Lines Press Choose On or Off Press
AE-Lock Default: Disable	Select whether to lock Display Brightness during image capture Press Options Select Settings Press Select Panorama Settings Press Select AE-Lock Press Select Disable (adjust automatically) or Enable Press


Sending Images

- To set pre-attachment save option for files newly captured with 814SH or 815SH camera, see **P.14-34** "Send File Settings."
- To attach files in Data Folder, see **P.8-8**.
- Confirm recipient handset attachment-compatibility. For information on Mail service and model compatibility, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Still Images


Capture and send images as S! Mail attachments.

1 Capture an image

- Perform Steps 1 - 2 on **P.6-6**.
- To attach Continuous Shoot images, after Step 7 on **P.6-10**, use  to select a frame or Index Image.

2 Press ()

Image is saved to Data Folder and Mail Composition window opens with image attached.

- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press .

3 Complete other fields and send S! Mail (perform from Step 3 on P.14-4)

Video Clips

Send recorded video clips via S! Mail.


- For details of attachable files, see the table on **P.6-5**.
- Send video clips to S! Mail- or VGS-compatible SoftBank handsets supporting MPEG-4.

1 Record video

- Perform Steps 1 - 4 on **P.6-7**.

2 Select **Save and Send** and press

Video is saved to Data Folder and Mail Composition window opens with the video file attached.

- If **Attach Only** is set for Send File Settings (**P.14-34**), **Multimedia** appears.
- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ➔ Press .

3 Complete other fields and send S! Mail (perform from Step 3 on P.14-4)

Camera Settings

- Available options vary by selected image capture mode.
- Shortcut keys are assigned to some functions (P.6-3 "Function Shortcuts").
- Follow these steps before capturing an image (after Step 1 on P.6-6) or recording video (after Step 2 on P.6-7); after Viewfinder returns, complete image capture/recording.

Shooting Options

Display Indicators	Hide indicators to frame image on full Display		
Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Press **Options** \rightarrow **Select Settings** \rightarrow Press \rightarrow **Select Display Indicators** \rightarrow Press \rightarrow **Select Normal FINDER or Hide Indicators** \rightarrow Press

Shutter Sound	Change shutter click sound		
Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Press **Options** \rightarrow **Select Settings** \rightarrow Press \rightarrow **Select Shutter Sound** \rightarrow Press \rightarrow **Select a pattern** \rightarrow Press

To check sound, select a pattern \rightarrow Press **Play**

- Volume is fixed.
- Shutter click sounds for Continuous Shoot and Panorama Picture are unique and fixed.

Mobile Light	Select mode		
Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/> ¹	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/> ^{1, 2}

¹Available for External Camera.

²**Low Light** is not available.

Default Off

Press **Options** \rightarrow **Select Mobile Light** \rightarrow Press \rightarrow **Select a mode** \rightarrow Press

- Setting returns to default after exiting mobile camera.

On	Mobile Light activates (and brightens for still image capture)
Automatic	Mobile Light activates in low light (and brightens for still image capture)
Low Light	Mobile Light activates and brightness is constant
Off	Mobile Light remains off

- Note** \rightarrow
- Do not use Mobile Light near people's faces or look into the light yourself.
 - Mobile Light may not illuminate if battery is low.

Display Size	Change Viewfinder size for video		
Photo Camera	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/> [*]

^{*}Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF.

Default Standard

Press **Options** \rightarrow **Select Display Size** \rightarrow Press \rightarrow **Select Standard or Enlarge** \rightarrow Press

Image Settings

Exposure

Adjust brightness for still images and video

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	-----------------------

Press **Options** \Rightarrow Select **Exposure** \Rightarrow Press \Rightarrow Use to adjust level

Default 0 (standard)

- Exposure setting returns to default upon exiting Photo Camera/ Video Camera or switching between Internal Camera and External Camera (P.6-16).

Picture Size

Select still image size

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	----------------------------------

Press **Options** \Rightarrow Select **Picture Size** \Rightarrow Press \Rightarrow Select a size (P.6-4) \Rightarrow Press

Default Wallpaper (480 x 640)

- Select **Mail L (240x320)** or **Mail S (120x160)** for Internal Camera.

Picture/Video Quality

Select image or video quality

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input checked="" type="radio"/>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	----------------------------------

Press **Options** \Rightarrow Select **Picture Quality or Video Quality** \Rightarrow Press \Rightarrow Select quality \Rightarrow Press

*Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF.

Default Normal (Photo Camera), Fine (Video Camera)

- The image quality increases as follows: **Normal** \rightarrow **Fine** \rightarrow **High Quality**. Saving higher quality images/video requires more space in memory.

Record Time/Size

Select **For Message** to record short video (up to 295 KB) to send via S! Mail
For longer recording, select **Extended Video**

Photo Camera	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>
--------------	----------------------------------	--------------	-----------------------

Default For Message, QCIF (176 x 144)

Press **Options** \Rightarrow Select **Record Time/Size** \Rightarrow Press \Rightarrow Select **For Message, Extended Video or SD VIDEO** \Rightarrow Press \Rightarrow Select a size \Rightarrow Press

For SD VIDEO sizes, choose **Yes** \Rightarrow Press

- For more information, see the table on P.6-5.

Microphone

Record sound together with video

Photo Camera	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>
--------------	----------------------------------	--------------	-----------------------

Default On

Press **Options** \Rightarrow Select **Microphone** \Rightarrow Press \Rightarrow Choose **On or Off** \Rightarrow Press

Video Encode

Select a video encoding format

Photo Camera	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>
--------------	----------------------------------	--------------	-----------------------

*Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF.

Default MPEG4

Press **Options** \Rightarrow Select **Settings** \Rightarrow Press \Rightarrow Select **Video Encode** \Rightarrow Press \Rightarrow Select **H.263 or MPEG4** \Rightarrow Press

Scene

Select a mode according to lighting or subject

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	-------------------------------------

*Available for External Camera.

Default Automatic

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Scene** ➔ Press ➔
Select a mode ➔ Press

- Scene setting returns to default upon exiting Photo Camera/ Video Camera or switching between Internal Camera and External Camera (below).

Automatic	Automatic adjustment
Night	Use in low light conditions
Sports	Best suited for action sports or fast-moving subjects
Text	Most suitable for high contrast black and white subjects

Additional Settings

Internal Camera/ External Camera	Switch between Internal Camera and External Camera
---	--

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	-------------------------------------

*Available when Record Time/Size is SubQCIF or QCIF.

Default External Camera

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Internal Camera or External Camera** ➔ Press

- Setting returns to default after exiting mobile camera.

Save to

Select a save location for images or video

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	-------------------------------------

*Not available when Record Time/Size is set to **SD VIDEO**.

Default Phone Memory

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press ➔
Select Save Pictures to or Save Videos to ➔ Press ➔
Select Phone Memory (handset Pictures or Videos folder), Memory Card (Memory Card Pictures or Videos folder), SD(Pictures) (Memory Card Pictures folder), SD(DCIM) (Memory Card DCIM folder) or Ask Each Time ➔ Press

- For **Ask Each Time**, confirmation appears each time you save an image or video (with Record Time/Size set to **For Message**).
- **Memory Card** appears for video and 240 x 320 or smaller still images. **SD(Pictures)** and **SD(DCIM)** appear for 640 x 480 or larger still images.

- Note** ➔
- **Ask Each Time** is not available when Auto Save (below) is active.
 - To save to Memory Card, insert a card before saving image or recording video.

Auto Save

Select whether to save captured images or recorded video automatically

Photo Camera	<input type="radio"/>	Video Camera	<input type="radio"/>
--------------	-----------------------	--------------	-----------------------

Default Off

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Settings** ➔ Press ➔
Select Auto Save ➔ Press ➔ **Choose On or Off** ➔
 Press

- Note** ➔ Auto Save is not available when **Ask Each Time** is set for Save Pictures to or Save Videos to (above).

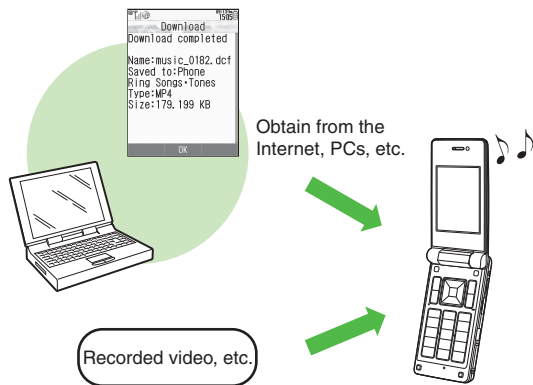
7

Media Player

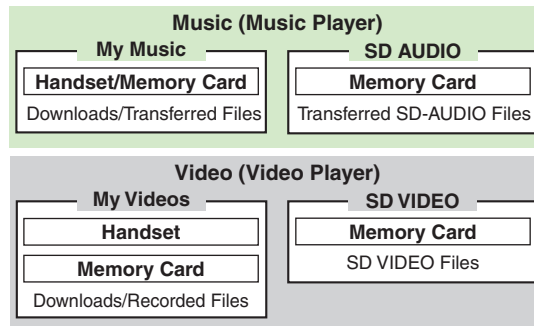
Media Player Basics	7-2	Using Playlists	7-10
Obtaining Music/Video	7-3	■ Accessing Playlists	7-10
■ Downloading Media Files	7-3	■ Starting Playback from a Playlist.....	7-10
■ Saving Music Files from PCs.....	7-3	■ Editing Playlists	7-11
Playback Preparation	7-4	Editing Video	7-11
■ Precautions	7-4	■ Cropping & Editing Video Clips.....	7-11
■ Playback Window Indicators.....	7-5	■ Adding Subtitles	7-12
Playing Music/Video	7-6		
■ Playing Music	7-6		
■ Playing Video.....	7-6		
■ Playback Operations	7-7		
■ Music Playback Settings.....	7-8		
■ Video Playback Settings.....	7-8		
■ Additional Playback Setting	7-9		
■ Additional Music/Video Operations	7-9		

Media Player Basics

Download media files from Mobile Internet sites via Music Player directly and save them on handset or Memory Card. Transfer PC music files and save them on Memory Card.



Features & File Support:



For My Music and My Videos details, see **P.7-10** "Using Playlists."

Obtaining Music/Video

Obtain music/video from the Internet or PCs.

Downloading Media Files

Read information (price, expiry date, etc.) on the source site.

Main Menu ▶ Media Player

- 1 Select *Music* or *Videos* and press**
- 2 Select *Download Music* or *Download Videos* and press**

Handset connects to the Internet.

- Follow the links to download music/video.

Music Search

- In Step 1 above, select *Music* ▶ Press ▶ Select *Music Search* ▶ Press

- Fill in fields or follow links to search for/download music.

Saving Music Files from PCs

Save PC music files to Memory Card via Mass Storage (P.11-8).

- Insert 814SH/815SH-formatted Memory Card first (P.11-2 - 11-3).
- After Step 3 on P.11-8, save music to the following folders on Memory Card.
 - PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Music
Music is saved to Data Folder (Music).
 - PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Sounds&Ringtones
Music is saved to Data Folder (Ring Songs-Tones).

Supported File Formats

Handset supports AAC files (extension: .m4a, etc.) and Secure AAC files compliant with the SD-Audio standard.

■ Handling AAC Files

- Use software such as iTunes to convert music to AAC format.
- iTunes is an example only. SoftBank does not guarantee compatibility with any software.
- For software usage and specifications, see the provider's website, etc.

iTunes is a trademark of Apple Inc. registered in the United States and other countries.

Supported Bit Rates & Sampling Frequencies

Bit Rate (kbps)	16 ^{*1} , 24, 32, 48, 64, 96 ^{*2} , 128 ^{*2}
Sampling Frequency (Hz)	16000, 22050, 24000, 32000, 44100, 48000

*1 Monaural only.

*2 Stereo only.

Note ▶ Titles and artist names for AAC files created using iTunes, etc. do not appear on handset.

Music File Precautions

Respect copyrights.

- Comply with copyright and other intellectual property laws when using music saved on Memory Cards.
- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only.

Compatibility

Obtained files cannot be used as ringtones or System Sounds.

Playback Preparation

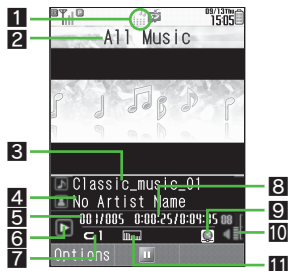
Precautions

- Music/Video Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Files may not play depending on the Memory Card status.
- When battery is low, Music/Video Player will not play. If battery runs low during playback, Music/Video Player shuts off.
- Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in Speaker sound.
- Playback stops for incoming calls.

- Tip** ▶
- To activate/cancel Manner mode during playback, see **P.2-18**.
 - In Manner mode, sound is audible from Headphones.
 - Titles and artist names appear on External Display during playback when handset is closed.
 - Use LCD Remote/Mic with Headphones (optional accessory) to remote control Music Player activated via Music menu.

Playback Window Indicators

Music Player



1 Playback in Progress

2 Playlist Name

3 Title

4 Artist Name

5 Track Number

6 Status

▶: Playing

⏸: Paused

⏩: Fast Forwarding

⏮: Fast Rewinding

7 Playback Pattern* (P.7-8)

↺: Repeat

↺: Repeat All

⤵: Random

↺⤵: Random Repeat

8 Elapsed Time

9 Information Link

10 Volume

11 Sound Effects* (P.7-8)

🔊 : Bass

⏮⏭ : Surround

⏮⏭ : Surround Bass

🔊 : Loud-Wide

Karaoke : Karaoke

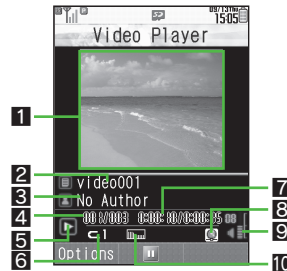
Rock : Rock

Hall : Hall

HipHop : Hiphop

*Indicator does not appear for **Normal**.

Video Player



1 Video Image/Subtitles

2 Title

3 Artist Name

4 Clip Number

5 Status

▶: Playing

⏸: Paused

⏩: Advancing Frame

⏩: Fast Forwarding

⏮: Fast Rewinding

6 Playback Pattern* (P.7-8)

- See indicator descriptions for Music Player (left).

7 Elapsed Time

8 Information Link

9 Volume

10 Sound Effects* (P.7-9)

- Indicators are the same as those for Music Player (left).

*Indicator does not appear for **Normal**.

Playing Music/Video

Playing Music

Main Menu ▶ Media Player ▶ Music

1 Select *My Music* or *SD AUDIO* and press

For *My Music*, use to select *Music Folder* or *Ring Songs-Tones*.

To play the last played file from where it stopped, select *Last Played Music* ▶ Press

2 Select *All Music* and press

File list appears.

Starting Playback from a Playlist: P.7-10

3 Select a file and press

Playback window opens and playback starts.



File List
(All Music)

Note ▶ Playback pauses for Alarm, then resumes automatically.

Playing Video

Main Menu ▶ Media Player ▶ Videos

1 Select *My Videos* or *SD VIDEO* and press

For *SD VIDEO*, skip ahead to Step 4.

To play the last played file from where it stopped, select *Last Played Video* ▶ Press

2 Select *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* and press

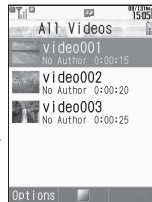
3 Select *All Videos* and press

File list appears.

Starting Playback from a Playlist: P.7-10

4 Select a file and press

Playback window opens and playback starts.



File List
(All Videos)

Video with Linked Information

After playing video, Internet connection confirmation appears.
To access linked information, choose *Yes* ▶ Press

















Note ▶ Playback stops for Alarm.


Tip ▶ Video recorded on other devices may appear rotated.

Playback Operations

Basic Operations


Some operations may not be available depending on playback method/status.

Replay	Press  Press repeatedly to play previous files. ¹
Skip Forward	Press 
Fast Forward	Press and hold  Release for playback.
Fast Rewind	Press and hold  Release for playback.
Pause	Press  Press again to resume playback. • To advance frames, press  for 1+ seconds while paused.
Volume Control²	Press  /  (up) or  /  (down)
Mute	Press  (Long Press) Press  to play sound.
Switch Sound Output (P.7-9)	Press  (Long Press)
Toggle Display Size	Press  or  (P.7-8)
Open Help	Press 

¹In Random or Random Repeat Play or when there is no other file,  only replays the current file.

²Volume level remains as set until changed.

Options Menu

In Playback window, press  **Options** to use these features. Some may not be available depending on playback method/status.




Sound Effects	P.7-8, P.7-9	Settings	P.7-8
Playback Pattern	P.7-8	Access WEB Link	Below
Edit	P.7-11	Details	P.7-9
Time Search	Below	Help	-

Time Search

- Specify start point while playing or paused.

Press  **Options** → **Select Time Search** → Press 
→ **Enter time** → Press 

Accessing Linked Information

- While playing or paused, press  **Options** → **Select Access WEB Link** → Press  → **Choose Yes** → Press 
 - Accessing linked information activates Internet connection and may incur transmission fees.

Music Playback Settings

Sound Effects

Play back files in surround sound; increase bass or dynamic range

Default Normal

Main Menu ► Media Player ► Music ► Settings

Select **Sound Effects** ► Press ► Select an effect
► Press

Normal	No sound effects
Bass	Boosts bass frequencies
Surround	Adds surround effect
Surround Bass	Adds surround effect with enhanced bass
Loud-Wide	Boosts all frequencies, adding a broadening effect
Karaoke	Adds softening effect ideal for vocals
Rock	Adds low to high frequencies, enhancing balance
Hall	Boosts high frequencies, enhancing reverberation
Hiphop	Boosts bass to midrange, enhancing resonance

Note ► Changing Sound Effect from **Normal** may lower volume.

Playback Pattern

Play all or Playlist files repeatedly or randomly

Default Normal

Main Menu ► Media Player ► Music ► Settings

Select **Playback Pattern** ► Press ► Select a pattern
► Press

Video Playback Settings

Available for My Videos files only.

Playback Pattern

Play all or Playlist files repeatedly or randomly

Default Normal

Main Menu ► Media Player ► Videos ► Settings

Select **Playback Pattern** ► Press ► Select a pattern
► Press

Backlight

Select a Backlight status for playback

Default Always On

Main Menu ► Media Player ► Videos ► Settings

Select **Backlight** ► Press ► Select a pattern
► Press

Always On	Backlight remains on during playback
Always Off	Backlight remains off during playback
Normal Settings	Applies Display Backlight setting (P.9-12)





Display Size

Change playback size

Default Normal

Main Menu ► Media Player ► Videos ► Settings

Select **Display Size** ► Press ► Select **Normal**,
Enlarge or **Full Screen** ► Press

- Some Display sizes may not be selectable.
- Alternatively, press  or  during playback to toggle Display Size.
 - Press  or  in paused Full Screen, Wide Screen or Cinema Screen view to show or hide indicators.

Sound Effects

Play back files in surround sound; increase bass or dynamic range

Default Normal

Main Menu ▶ Media Player ▶ Videos ▶ Settings

Select **Sound Effects** ▶ Press ▶ Select an effect
▶ Press

- For descriptions of each effect, see P.7-8.

Web Link Setting

Select whether to show linked information

Default On

Main Menu ▶ Media Player ▶ Videos ▶ Settings

Select **Web Link Setting** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **On** or **Off** ▶ Press

Additional Playback Setting

Sound Output

Select audio output device

- Pair with Bluetooth® wireless Headphones beforehand (P.10-8).
Default Phone/Earphone

Main Menu ▶ Media Player ▶ Setting

Select **Sound Output** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Phone/Earphone** or **Bluetooth Device** ▶ Press

Note ▶ Even if **Bluetooth Device** is selected, streaming sound is heard from Speaker or Headphones.

Additional Music/Video Operations

- Open file list (P.7-6) and follow these steps.
- Some operations may not be available depending on the file/list.

Search	Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ▶ Select Search ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Enter search text ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• When no matching text is found, text entry window returns. Change text and try again.
Sort	Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ▶ Select Sort ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a sort option ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Sort is available for All Music/All Videos files.
Download Content Keys	Select a file ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.• Select a file with <input type="checkbox"/>.
Open Properties	Select a file ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ▶ Select Details ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Edit SD AUDIO Files	Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ▶ Select Edit ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Title or Artist ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Enter title or name ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Delete SD AUDIO/SD VIDEO Files	Select a file ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ▶ Select Delete Track or Delete ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Source files will be deleted.• Delete other files from Data Folder (P.8-6).

Using Playlists

Playlists store only playback orders. Add favorite music/videos to Playlists; start playback by selecting a Playlist. The following Playlists are saved by default.

All Music/All Videos	All files are saved
Playlist 1 (or 7* Playlist 1)	No files are saved; add favorite files
Playlist 2 (or 7* Playlist 2)	
Playlist 3 (or 7* Playlist 3)	

Accessing Playlists

Music Playlists

Main Menu ▶ Media Player ▶ Music

- 1 Select **My Music** or **SD AUDIO** and press

Playlists appear.

- For **My Music**, use to select **Music Folder** or **Ring Songs:Tones**.



My Music

Video Playlists

Main Menu ▶ Media Player ▶ Videos

- 1 Select **My Videos** and press
- 2 Select **Phone Memory** or **Memory Card** and press Playlists appear.

Starting Playback from a Playlist

Access Playlists and follow these steps.

- 1 Select a Playlist and press
- 2 Select a file and press Playback starts.

Editing Playlists

- Access Playlists (P.7-10) and follow these steps.
- Some operations may not be available depending on Playlist.

Add Files	Select <i>All Music</i> or <i>All Videos</i> ➔ Press [F2] ➔ Select a file ➔ Press [F4] Options ➔ Select <i>Add to Playlist</i> ➔ Press [F2] ➔ Select a Playlist ➔ Press [F2]
Change File Order	Select a Playlist ➔ Press [F2] ➔ Select a file ➔ Press [F4] Options ➔ Select <i>Change Order</i> ➔ Press [F2] ➔ Use [↑] to move file ➔ Press [F2]
Delete Files	Select a Playlist ➔ Press [F2] ➔ Select a file ➔ Press [F4] Options ➔ Select <i>Delete</i> ➔ Press [F2] ➔ Choose <i>Yes</i> ➔ Press [F2]
Add New Playlists	Press [F4] Options ➔ Select <i>Add New Playlist</i> ➔ Press [F2] ➔ Enter name ➔ Press [F2]
Rename Playlists	Select a Playlist ➔ Press [F4] Options ➔ Select <i>Edit List Title</i> ➔ Press [F2] ➔ Enter new name ➔ Press [F2]
Delete Playlists	Select a Playlist ➔ Press [F4] Options ➔ Select <i>Delete Playlist</i> ➔ Press [F2] ➔ Choose <i>Yes</i> ➔ Press [F2]
Delete All SD AUDIO Files	Select <i>All Music</i> ➔ Press [F4] Options ➔ Select <i>Del. All Tracks</i> ➔ Press [F2] ➔ Choose <i>Yes</i> ➔ Press [F2] ➔ Choose <i>Yes</i> ➔ Press [F2] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Source files will be deleted. • Delete other files from Data Folder (P.8-6).

Editing Video

HQVGA (W 240 x H 176 dots) or larger video cannot be edited.

Crop	Select Two Points	Save portion between two points as a new file
	Delete Before	Save portion after selected point as a new file
	Delete After	Save portion before selected point as a new file
Edit Subtitle		Add subtitle text to video

- Note** ➤
- Some files may not be edited.
 - Edited video may not play properly if Memory Card is not formatted for 814SH or 815SH.
 - To save to Memory Card, a maximum of 1.2 MB of free memory is required in addition to the file size.

Cropping & Editing Video Clips

Follow these steps after Step 4 on P.7-6.

- 1 While playing or paused, press **[F4]** **Options****
- 2 Select *Edit* and press **[F2]****
- 3 Choose *Yes* and press **[F2]****
 - Incoming transmissions are blocked during editing.
- 4 Select *Crop* and press **[F2]****

5 Clipping Portions between Two Points

1 Select **Select Two Points** and press

Video plays.

- Press  to pause/start video.

2 Press **Start** at the start point

The start point is specified and playback resumes.


3 Press **End** at the end point



The portion is saved and playback starts.

Cropping Video Clips

1 Select **Delete Before or Delete After** and press

Video plays.

- To adjust start point, press  to start/pause video.
- The portion before or after the selected point will be deleted.

 To cancel, press .

2 Press **Cut** at approximate start point

The remaining portion is saved and playback starts.

Note ▶ Portions over 30 minutes may not be saved.

Adding Subtitles

Set subtitles to appear while playing video. Select timing, add effects, etc.

Entering Text

After entry, set timing and time period for subtitles.

- Save up to ten subtitles (48 single-byte alphanumerics each).
- Follow these steps after Step 4 on P.7-6.

1 While playing or paused, press **Options**

2 Select **Edit** and press


3 Choose **Yes** and press

- Incoming transmissions are blocked during editing.

4 Select **Edit Subtitle** and press

5 Select **<empty>** and press


6 Enter text and press







- Press  to pause/play video.

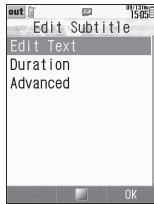
7 Press **Start** at the start point

8 Press **End** at the end point

Edit Subtitle menu opens.

- If video has ended before pressing , start over from Step 7.

 To edit text, select **Edit Text**  Press   Edit text  Press 













Edit Subtitle Menu



9 Change display settings (right) and add effects (P.7-14)

- To complete without changing display settings or adding effects, proceed to Step 10.

10 After completing all the settings, press **OK**

- To add more, repeat Steps 5 - 10.

 To edit saved subtitles, select one  Press   Select **Edit Text**  Press   Edit  Press   Perform from Step 9

 To delete saved subtitles, select one  Press  **Options**  Select **Delete**  Press   Choose **Yes**  Press 






































11 Press **Save**

12 Select **Overwrite** or **Create New** and press

- Playback starts. (Subtitles appear only in Normal size.)
- Overwritten files are deleted from Playlists except All Videos.

Display Settings

Follow these steps in Step 9 on the left. When finished, perform from Step 10 to complete.

Duration	Set timing and time period for subtitles Select Duration  Press   Press  Start at the start point  Press  End at the end point
Display Position	Set position for subtitles to appear Select Advanced  Press   Select Display Position  Press   Use  to select a position  Press   When finished, press  .
Font Size Default Large (20 x 20)	Change font size of subtitles Select Advanced  Press   Select Font Size  Press   Select Large(20x20) or Small(12x12)  Press   When finished, press  .
Background Colour Default Black	Select from seven background colors Select Advanced  Press   Select Background Colour  Press   Select a color  Press   When finished, press  .

	Select a direction and visual effect for subtitle scroll
	Scroll Direction Select Advanced → Press [] → Select Scrolling → Press [] → Select Direction → Press [] → Select Stop, Left to Right or Right to Left → Press [] ■ When finished, press [CLEAR/BACK] → Press [CLEAR/BACK]
	Scroll Effects Select Advanced → Press [] → Select Scrolling → Press [] → Select Effect → Press [] → Select an effect → Press []
Scrolling Default: Direction: Stop Effect: Frame In	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Effects: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Frame In Subtitle comes in from an end, then disappears in the center ■ Frame Out Subtitle appears in the center and scrolls out ■ Rolling Subtitle scrolls from end to end ■ When finished, press [CLEAR/BACK] → Press [CLEAR/BACK]
	On-Screen Time Select Advanced → Press [] → Select Scrolling → Press [] → Select On-Screen Time → Press [] → Enter time → Press [] ■ When finished, press [CLEAR/BACK] → Press [CLEAR/BACK]

Adding Text Effects

- Up to two effects can be applied per entry.
- Follow these steps in Step 9 on P.7-13. When finished, perform from Step 10 to complete.

	Change font colors Changing Color of Entire Text Select Advanced → Press [] → Select Font Colour → Press [] → Select All → Press [] → Select a color → Press [] ■ When finished, press [CLEAR/BACK]
Font Colour Default: White	Changing Color of Portion Select Advanced → Press [] → Select Font Colour → Press [] → Select Select Text → Press [] → Use [] to select the first character of text → Press [] → Use [] to select the end point → Press [] → Select a color → Press [] ■ When finished, press [CLEAR/BACK]
Highlight Default: White	Highlight subtitles Select Advanced → Press [] → Select Highlight → Press [] → Use [] to select the first character of text → Press [] → Use [] to select the end point → Press [] → Select a color → Press [] ■ When finished, press [CLEAR/BACK]
Blink	Set subtitles to flash Select Advanced → Press [] → Select Blink → Press [] → Use [] to select the first character of text → Press [] → Use [] to select the end point → Press [] ■ When finished, press [CLEAR/BACK]
Reset	Reset Advanced subtitle settings Select Advanced → Press [] → Press [] Reset → Choose Yes → Press [] • Reset does not affect Duration setting.

8

Managing Files (Data Folder)

Data Folder	8-2	Editing Still Images	8-9
■ Opening Data Folder	8-2	■ Picture Editor/Composite Options.....	8-9
Opening Files	8-3	■ Opening Picture Editor/Composite Window.....	8-10
Managing Files & Folders	8-5	■ Changing Image Size.....	8-10
■ Sorting Files	8-5	■ Visual Effects (Retouch)	8-11
■ Adding Folders	8-5	■ Adding Text & Stamps.....	8-11
■ Changing File/Folder Name.....	8-6	■ Face Arrange	8-12
■ Deleting Files & Folders	8-6	■ Other Picture Effects.....	8-13
■ Copying/Moving Files	8-7	■ Panorama Images.....	8-13
Using Files	8-7	■ Split Picture.....	8-14
■ Wallpaper	8-7		
■ Saving to Phone Book.....	8-8		
■ Ringvideo & Ringtone.....	8-8		
■ SI Mail Attachments	8-8		
■ Printing Images	8-9		

Data Folder

Handset files are organized in folders by file format.

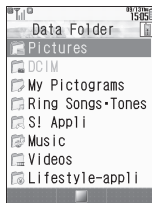
Opening Data Folder

1 Press .

2 Select **Data Folder** and press .

Data Folder opens.

- To open file list (P.8-3), select a folder and press .



Data Folder

Memory Status

- To check memory usage status, open Data Folder and follow these steps.

Select Memory Status → Press → **Select Phone Memory or Memory Card** → Press

- Delete messages/files when memory is low. Handset performance may be affected when memory is full.

■ Preset Folders

Pictures*	Still images
DCIM	Large still images on Memory Card (images captured with save location set to SD(DCIM))
My Pictograms*	Downloaded Pictograms
Ring Songs+Tones*	Downloaded melodies and other sound files
S! Appli*	S! Applications (P.16-3)
Music*	Downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® files
Videos*	Video images
Lifestyle-appli*	Downloaded Lifestyle-Appli
Books*	Downloaded e-Books, etc.
Custom Screens*	Custom Screens (P.9-9)
Flash®	Downloaded Flash® (animation) files
Flash®Ringtones	Downloaded Flash® ringtones
Other Documents	Other files (Dictionary files, etc.)

*Access the corresponding Yahoo! Keitai Menu directly.

Switching File List View

- Not available for S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli folder.



Inline



Grid



Preview

- Preview is available for Pictures and DCIM folders.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

1 Select a folder and press

2 Press

Each press switches the view.

Opening Files

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

1 Select a folder and press

File list appears.

To switch between handset and Memory Card, press **Options** ➔ Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to MemoryCard** ➔ Press

To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it ➔ Press

To open properties, select a file ➔ Press **Options** ➔ Select **Details** ➔ Press

To activate mobile camera, press **Options** ➔ Select **Take Picture** or **Record Video** ➔ Press

- Available for Pictures, DCIM and Videos folders.

2 Select a file and press

The content plays or appears.

To switch view, press ➔ Select **Switch Display** ➔ Press

Select an option ➔ Press

To change image quality, press ➔ Select **Image Quality** ➔ Press ➔ Select quality ➔ Press

To select whether to scroll images automatically, press ➔ Select **Switch Autoscroll** ➔ Press ➔ Choose **On** or **Off** ➔ Press

3 Press to return to file list

- From file list, press to return to Data Folder.

Note ▶ Remote control on LCD Remote/Mic (optional accessory) is disabled for Music Player activated via Data Folder.



File List
(Pictures)

■ SVG Files

Handset supports Scalable Vector Graphics-Tiny (SVG-T); open files from Other Documents folder to view graphics such as tables or maps.

Key Assignments (may differ by file):

Line Scroll	
Page Scroll	(Up), (Left)
	(Right), (Down)
Zoom	(Zoom Out), (Zoom In)
Rotate	(Counterclockwise), (Clockwise)
Key Action Mode	
Set Default	

- Tip ▶
- To create SVG files via PC, use PC Document Conversion Utility on Utility Software CD-ROM.
 - For more information on SVG-T, visit http://j.sst.ne.jp/svg/index_pdc.html from handset (Japanese).

■ Selecting Multiple Files

Select multiple files in a folder to move, copy or delete them all at the same time.

- Not available for S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli folder.
- Follow these steps after Step 1 in "Opening Files" on P.8-3.

1 Select a file and press **Check**

appears.

To uncheck, select a file with ▶ Press **Uncheck**

2 Repeat Step 1 to select more

■ Slide Show

All images in Pictures or DCIM folder appear sequentially.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

1 Select **Pictures** or **DCIM** and press

- ▶ To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
▶ Press

2 Select a file and press **Options**

3 Select **Slide Show** and press

Slide Show starts.

- When Speed is set to **Manual**, press or to advance or reverse frames.

4 Press to stop

Setting Interval

- Follow these steps after Step 3.

Press **Set** ▶ **Select Speed** ▶ Press ▶
Select Fast, Normal, Slow or Manual ▶ Press

- Speed is **Normal** by default.

Repeat Slide Show

- Follow these steps after Step 3.

Press **Set** ▶ **Select Repeat** ▶ Press ▶
Choose On or Off ▶ Press

- For **Off**, all images in the folder appear then file list returns.
- Repeat is **On** by default.

Managing Files & Folders


Sorting Files

Sort files by name, date, size, etc.

Not available for S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli folder.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

1 Select a folder and press

To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
▶ Press 

2 Press Options

3 Select *Manage Items* and press

4 Select *Sort* and press

5 Select a method and press

Tip ▶ To reverse the order, sort by the same method again.

Adding Folders

- Assign different names to folders within a layer.
- Not available for DCIM, S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli folder.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

1 Select a folder and press

2 Press Options

3 Select *Manage Items* and press

4 Select *Create Folder* and press




5 Enter name and press

Hide Folders

■ After Step 1 above, select a folder ▶ Press  Options ▶
Select *Set Secret* ▶ Press  ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶
Press 

• Not available when Multi Job is active.



• Only handset folders can be hidden.

■ For temporary access to Secret folders, press  Options
▶ Select *Unlock Temporarily* ▶ Press  ▶ Enter
Handset Code ▶ Press 

Cancel Secret

■ Activate Show Secret Data (P.9-23) and follow these steps.

After Step 1 above, select a folder ▶ Press 

Options ▶ Select *Unset Secret* ▶ Press  ▶ Enter
Handset Code ▶ Press 

Changing File/Folder Name

- File extensions do not change.
- Assign different names to files/folders within a layer.
 - Single-byte Symbols ¥, /, :, ;, ,, <, >, |, ?, # and " are not supported.
- Make sure there is enough free memory.
- Renaming files (or the folders) used for ringtone, ringvideo, etc. cancels corresponding setting.
- Not available for DCIM, S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli folder.

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder and press
- 2 Select a file or folder and press Options
- 3 Select *Manage Items* and press
- 4 Select *Rename* and press
- 5 Edit name and press

Deleting Files & Folders

- Delete files and created folders in Data Folder.
- Deleting files (or the folders) used for ringtone, ringvideo, etc. cancels corresponding setting.
 - Not available for S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli folder.
 - To delete S! Applications, see P.16-5 "Delete."

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder and press
- 2 *Deleting Folders*
 - 1 Select a folder and press Options

Deleting Single Files

 - 1 Select a file and press Options

■ Selecting Multiple Files: P.8-4

Deleting All Created Folders & Files

 - 1 Select a file and press Options
 - 2 Select *Manage Items* and press
- 3 Select *Delete* or *Delete All* and press

■ For deleting folders or *Delete All*, enter Handset Code ►
Press
- 4 Choose *Yes* and press


Copying/Moving Files

Copy or move files to the corresponding folder on Memory Card or to created sub folders within the folder (handset or Memory Card).

- Copy or move files in DCIM folder to Pictures folder (handset or Memory Card).
- Some files may not be copied or moved.
- Moving files used for ringtone, ringvideo, etc. cancels corresponding setting.
- Not available for S! Appli or Lifestyle-appli folder.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

1 Select a folder and press



To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
▶ Press 

2 Select a file and press Options

Selecting Multiple Files: P.8-4

3 Select *Copy* or *Move* and press

4 Select *Phone* or *Memory Card* and press

If the file is used for Wallpaper, etc., choose **Yes** ▶ Press 
To copy/move to created sub folders, select a folder ▶ Press 

5 Select *Copy here* or *Move here* and press

- Note** ▶
- If a copy protected file is included in the selected files, only the remaining files are copied.
 - Files copied or moved to Memory Card may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.
 - Name of copied or moved file may change when the same name already exists in the folder.

Using Files

Use Data Folder files as Wallpaper, Phone Book Picture, ringtone and ringvideo, send them via S! Mail or print on a compatible printer.


- Corresponding menu items appear only for compatible files.
- Some files may not be used depending on the size.

Note ▶ Some copy protected files (≡ or ≡) may not be used.

Wallpaper




Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

1 Select *Pictures*, *DCIM*, *Flash*[®] or *Other Documents* and press

To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
▶ Press 

2 Select a file and press Options

3 Select *Set as Wallpaper* and press

For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option ▶ Press 
For Display size or centered images, use  to zoom in/out or press  to rotate.

4 Press

Wallpaper is set.

Saving to Phone Book

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 Select **Pictures, Ring Songs-Tones, Music, Videos or Flash® Ringtones** and press
- 2 Select a file and press **Options**
 - For more, perform from Step 3 in "Saving from Other Functions" on P.4-7.

- Note** ►
- Setting is canceled when source file usage period expires. (Warning does not appear when saving files with limited usage period to Phone Book.)
 - Renaming, deleting or moving files (or the folder) used for ringtone, ringvideo, etc. cancels corresponding setting.

Ringvideo & Ringtone

Assign video or sound file as ringvideo or ringtone for Voice Calls.

Ringvideo

Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Videos

- 1 Select a file and press **Options**
- 2 Select **Set as Ring Video** and press

Ringtone

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 Select **Ring Songs-Tones, Music or Flash® Ringtones** and press
- 2 Select a file and press **Options**
- 3 Select **Set as Ringtone** and press

S! Mail Attachments

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder and press
- 2 Select a file and press **Options**
- 3 Select **Send** and press
- 4 Select **As Message** and press
 - For large JPEG images, select attachment size ► Press
- 5 Complete other fields and send **S! Mail** (perform from Step 3 on P.14-4)

Printing Images

Connect handset to a printer via Bluetooth® and print JPEG/PNG images.

- Use a Bluetooth®-compatible printer.
- Activate Bluetooth® on the printer.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

1 Select *Pictures*, *DCIM* or *Other Documents* and press

■ To open a created sub folder or a sub folder in DCIM, select it
▶ Press

2 Select a still image and press **Options**

3 Select *Print* and press

4 Select *Via Bluetooth* and press

Device search starts.

5 Select a device and press

■ When requested, enter passkey ▶ Press

■ When **Current connection must be disconnected first**,
OK? appears, choose **Yes** ▶ Press

6 Choose *Yes* and press

Offline Mode is set and printing starts.

- When printing completes, printer stops automatically.

■ To cancel, press **Cancel**.

- Note** ▶
- Some images sent to Basic Imaging Profile-compatible printers may not be printed due to printer limitations.
 - Transmission may fail depending on data size.

Editing Still Images

Picture Editor/Composite Options

Picture Editor

Resize	Select from preset sizes or crop image for size
Retouch	Dress up images with preloaded visual effects
Paste	Add text to images
Stamp	Add stamps to images
Face Arrange	Make smiley, angry or sad faces
Frame	Add Frame to images
Correction	Correct images
Rotate	Rotate images
File Format	Convert file format and change file size

Composite

Merge Panorama	Combine two still images into one
Split Picture 480 x 640	Combine up to four reduced images into a W 480 x H 640 or W 240 x H 320 dot image
Split Picture 240 x 320	

Opening Picture Editor/Composite Window

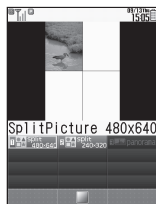
Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Pictures ▶ Select a file ▶ Options (Ⓜ) ▶ Edit

1 Select **Picture Editor** or **Composite** and press

- Select an option for further operations.
- **Picture Editor** and **Composite** appear only for compatible files.
- Edited image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.



Picture Editor Window



Composite Window

Canceling Effects

- Before saving/adding an effect, select **Undo** ▶ Press
 - To restore effect immediately after canceling, select **Redo** ▶ Press

Saving Edited Images

- Press **Save** ▶ Select **Save as New** ▶ Press ▶ Enter name ▶ Press ▶ Select a location ▶ Press
 - To overwrite, select **Overwrite** instead of **Save as New** ▶ Press

Changing Image Size

Resize to Preset Size

Open Picture Editor window (left) and follow these steps.

- 1 Select **Resize** and press
- 2 Select a size and press

A rectangle appears on the image (except for **Wallpaper** and **Power On/Off**).

Wallpaper	W 480 x H 640 dots
Power On/Off	W 480 x H 640 dots
Incoming Call	W 360 x H 240 dots
Alarm	W 480 x H 208 dots



Incoming Call

3 Use to specify display area












- Display area may be unspecifiable depending on image size.
 - To zoom in/out, press **Resize** ▶ Press (zoom in) or (zoom out)
 - To start over from size selection, press .

4 Press

- Saving Edited Images: above

Cropping Images

Open Picture Editor window (P.8-10) and follow these steps.

- 1 Select **Resize** and press 
- 2 Select **Cut** and press 
- 3 Use  to move + to the upper left corner of the portion to crop and press 
- 4 Use  to move + to the lower right corner of the portion to crop and press 
 - Use  to specify display area.
 - Display area may be unspecifiable depending on image size.
 - To zoom in/out, press  **Resize** → Press  (zoom in) or  (zoom out)
- 5 Press 
 - Saving Edited Images: P.8-10

Visual Effects (Retouch)

- Apply to W 52 x H 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images including Continuous Shoot images.
- Open Picture Editor window (P.8-10) and follow these steps.









- 1 Select **Retouch** and press 
- 2 Select an effect and press 
 - To start over, press .
- 3 Press 
 - Saving Edited Images: P.8-10

Note ► Edited images may be too large to save or send via S! Mail.

Adding Text & Stamps

Open Picture Editor window (P.8-10) and follow these steps.

1 Adding Text

- 1 Select **Paste** and press 
 - To specify colors, press  **Colour** → Select text color → Press  → Select outline color or no outline → Press  → Press  **Done**
- 2 Select **Free Text** and press 
 - To enter the date, select **Date** → Press  → Skip ahead to Step 2
- 3 Enter text and press 
 - Enter up to 16 characters.

Adding Stamps




- 1 Select **Stamp** and press 
 - 2 Select a stamp and press 
 - To change the stamp, press .
- 2 Use  to move text or stamp to target location and press 
 - Saving Edited Images: P.8-10

Face Arrange

- Apply to JPEG and PNG images.
- Face Arrange may not fit all images. Adjust position and size as required (below).
- Open Picture Editor window (P.8-10) and follow these steps.

1 Select Face Arrange and press 

2 Select a type and press 

- To check current positions of targets, press  **Parts**.
- Press  to return.
- To start over, press .

3 Press 

- Saving Edited Images: P.8-10

Note ► When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.

Adjusting Face Arrange Position

Change the default positions and sizes of targets to fit the image. Changes apply to the current image only.


1 In Step 2 above, press  **Parts**

2 Press  **Modify**


A rectangle appears with + in the upper left corner.

3 Set the face line



Use  to move + to the upper left corner



Use  to move + to the lower right corner



Face line is set

- To start over, press .

4 Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way




Set eye
(right of image)



Set eye
(left of image)



Set Mouth

- When finished, all the targets appear.
- To readjust targets, start over from Step 2.
- To restore the original positions, press . (Not available after setting mouth position.)

5 Press

6 Choose **Yes** and press

7 Select a location and press

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted, and Face Arrange menu returns.

- Complete Face Arrange. Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.

Other Picture Effects

Open Picture Editor window (**P.8-10**) and follow these steps.

Frame	Add Frame to JPEG and PNG images Select <i>Frame</i> → Press → Select a frame → Press → Press To change the frame, press before assigning it. Saving Edited Images: P.8-10
Correction	Correct brightness, etc. for W 52 x H 52 dots or larger JPEG and PNG images Select <i>Correction</i> → Press → Select a Correction type → Press → Press To change Correction type, press before assigning it. Saving Edited Images: P.8-10
Rotate	Rotate images Select <i>Rotate</i> → Press → Select a type → Press → Press To start over from type selection, press before second press of . Saving Edited Images: P.8-10
File Format	Convert file format and change file size Select <i>File Format</i> → Press → Select <i>File Format</i> or <i>File Size</i> → Press → Select a format/size → Press → Press Saving Edited Images: P.8-10 • Changing file format/size may affect file size/image quality.

Panorama Images

- Panorama Image Effects:

Standard	Applicable to all kinds of shots
Near View	Best suited for close-up shots
Document	Use for images with text

- Use JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 and W 120 x H 160 dots/ W 160 x H 120 dots.
- Some portions may be cropped to adjust two images to the same size.
- The result may not be satisfactory if color tones are different between two images.
- Open Composite window (**P.8-10**) and follow these steps.

1 Select **Merge Panorama** and press

Left image is set.

- **Merge Panorama** is selectable only for compatible files.

2 Select and press

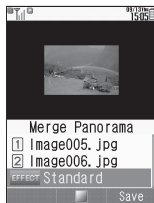
3 Select another image and press

Two images are set.

4 Select **EFFECT** and press

5 Select an effect and press

- To check images, select either \rightarrow Press
 - Press to return.
- To change images, select one \rightarrow Press
 - \rightarrow Press **Change** \rightarrow Select an image \rightarrow Press
- To switch the positions, press **Flip**.



Merge Panorama Window

6 Press **Save****7 Press** **8 Enter name and press** **9 Select a location and press**

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

Split Picture

- Apply to JPEG and PNG images.
- Make sure there is enough free memory.
- Images are placed in the upper left, upper right, lower left and lower right in numerical order.
- Open Composite window (P.8-10) and follow these steps.

1 Select *SplitPicture 480x640* or *SplitPicture 240x320* and press

Upper left image is set.

2 Select **and press** **3 Select an image and press** 

Split Image

4 Repeat Steps 2 - 3

- In Step 2, select or .

- To preview Split Picture, press **Options**
 - \rightarrow Select **View Composite** \rightarrow Press
 - Press to return.
- To change images, select one \rightarrow Press
 - \rightarrow Press **Change** \rightarrow Select an image \rightarrow Press
- To delete images, select one \rightarrow Press **Options**
 - \rightarrow Select **Remove** \rightarrow Press
 - \rightarrow Choose **Yes** \rightarrow Press



Split Picture Preview

5 Press **Save****6 Enter name and press** **7 Select a location and press**

Image is saved to Data Folder as a new entry.

9

Additional Settings

Customizing Handset Responses	9-2	Date & Time	9-16
■ Activating a Mode	9-2	Handset Security	9-17
■ Customizing Normal Mode	9-2	■ Changing Handset Code.....	9-17
■ Customizing Handset Modes	9-4	■ Handset Locks	9-17
Display Settings	9-4	■ Face Recognition	9-19
■ Wallpaper	9-4	■ PIN	9-23
■ System Graphics	9-5	■ Opening Secret Entries.....	9-23
■ Font Settings	9-5	Reset	9-24
■ Clock/Calendar	9-6	Call Settings	9-24
■ Standby Window (Japanese).....	9-6	■ Limit Call Costs	9-24
■ Custom Screens	9-9	■ Data Counter.....	9-25
■ Familiar Usability	9-11	■ Auto Answer	9-25
■ Language Setting	9-11	■ International Call.....	9-26
■ Light Settings.....	9-12	■ Additional Call Settings	9-26
■ External Display Settings	9-12		
■ Viewing Images on External Devices	9-13		
■ Additional Display Settings	9-14		
Sound Settings	9-15		
■ Customizing System Sounds	9-15		
■ Additional Sound Settings	9-16		

Customizing Handset Responses

Activate Normal, Manner, Drive or Original mode to change multiple handset settings at one time; each mode offers a basket of defaults tailored to a particular usage pattern.

Activating a Mode

Normal is set by default.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (☰) ► Mode Settings

1 Select a mode and press

Resetting Mode Settings

- Select a mode ► Press **Reset** ► Enter Handset Code
 ► Press ► Choose Yes ► Press

Customizing Normal Mode

Ringtone Volume

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (☰) ► Sounds & Alerts

- 1 Select **Volume** and press
- 2 Select an item and press
- 3 Use to adjust level and press

Ringtone/Ringvideo

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (☰) ► Sounds & Alerts

- 1 Select **Ringtone/videos** and press
- 2 **Voice Call/Video Call/Circle Talk Request**
 - 1 Select **For Voice Call, For Video Call or Circle Talk** and press
 - Other Incoming Transmissions**
 - 1 Select an item and press
 - To set duration, select **Duration** ► Press ► Enter time (01 - 99 seconds) ► Press
 - 2 Select **Assign Tone** and press
 - 3 Select a folder and press
 - To use Custom Screen ringtone/ringvideo, select **Custom Screen** ► Press (Omit the next step.)
 - To play tones/files, select one ► Press **Play** or **Play**
 - Press **Stop** or **SLIM BACK** to stop.
 - For files with limited usage period, choose **Yes** ► Press
 - 4 Select a tone/file and press

- Tip ►
- Some files may not be usable.
 - Default ringtone/ringvideo may sound/play in the following cases:
 - Downloading files
 - Streaming
 - Editing still images
 - Removing Memory Card with files set as ringtones/ringvideos
 - When an S! Application is set as Screensaver, ringtone/ringvideo may not play correctly.

Vibration

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (☰) ► Sounds & Alerts

- 1 Select **Vibration** and press
- 2 Select an item and press
- 3 **Activating/Deactivating**
 - 1 Select **Switch On/Off** and press
 - 2 Select **On, Link to Sound** or **Off** and press

Vibration Pattern

- 1 Select **Vibration Pattern** and press
 - To check vibration patterns, select one ► Press **Check**
 - Press **Stop** to stop.
- 2 Select a pattern and press

Link to Sound

- Select **Link to Sound** to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration/Small Light illumination. If only vibration pattern is embedded, vibration remains off and Small Light flashes to the main melody.

Precaution

- Disable vibration when charging.

Small Light Illumination

Set for incoming transmissions (Event Light) or missed transmissions (Status Light; see P.2-7 "Information").

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (☰) ► Sounds & Alerts

- 1 Select **Event Light** or **Status Light** and press
- 2 Select an item and press
- 3 **Activating/Deactivating**
 - 1 Select **Switch On/Off** and press
 - 2 Choose **On** or **Off** and press
 - For **Event Light**, select **On**, **Off** or **Link to Sound**.

Selecting Light Color

- 1 Select **Light Colour** and press
- 2 Select a color and press

Any Key Answer

Activate or cancel Any Key Answer (P.2-6).








Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (☰) ► Sounds & Alerts

- 1 Select **Any Key Answer** and press
- 2 Choose **On** or **Off** and press

Customizing Handset Modes

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Mode Settings

Volume¹	Set volume level for incoming transmissions Select a mode ▶ Press  Edit ▶ Perform from Step 1 in "Ringtone Volume" on P.9-2
Vibration²	Handset vibrates for incoming transmissions Select a mode ▶ Press  Edit ▶ Perform from Step 1 in "Vibration" on P.9-3
Event Light/ Status Light	Set Small Light illumination for incoming transmissions Select a mode ▶ Press  Edit ▶ Perform from Step 1 in "Small Light Illumination" on P.9-3
Any Key Answer	Activate or cancel Any Key Answer Select a mode ▶ Press  Edit ▶ Perform from Step 1 in "Any Key Answer" on P.9-3
Answer Phone²	Activate or cancel Answer Phone Select a mode ▶ Press  Edit ▶ Select Answer Phone ▶ Press  ▶ Choose On or Off ▶ Press 

¹ Available for Original mode.

² Available for Manner and Original modes.

Display Settings

Wallpaper

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶ Wallpaper



1 Preset Pictures

1 Select **Preset Pictures** and press 



2 Select an image and press 



Data Folder Images

1 Select **Pictures, DCIM, Flash[®], Other Documents or Custom Screen** and press 

 For **DCIM**, select a folder ▶ Press 

2 Select an image and press 

 For images with limited usage period, choose **Yes** ▶ Press 

 For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option ▶ Press 

3 Press 

Canceling

1 Select **Blank** and press 

- Note** ▶
- Some files may not be usable.
 - When an S! Application is set as Screensaver, Wallpaper may not appear correctly.

Tip ▶ For Display size or centered images, use  to zoom in/ out or press  to rotate.

System Graphics

Use images for Power On/Off, incoming calls and Alarm windows.
Preset Animation and **Pattern 1** are set by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶ System Graphics

1 Select an item and press

2 **Preset Animation/Patterns**

1 Select **Preset Animation** and press

■ For incoming calls/Alarm, select from **Pattern 1** to **Pattern 3** ▶ Press

Data Folder Images

1 Select **Pictures, DCIM, Flash[®], Other Documents or Custom Screen** and press

■ For **DCIM**, select a folder ▶ Press

2 Select an image and press

■ If a rectangle appears, use to specify display area
▶ Press

3 Press

Note ▶ System Graphics may not appear correctly depending on ringtone/ringvideo settings.

Font Settings

Change font size/weight for menus, text entry, mail messages and the Internet.

Font size is **Standard** and weight is **Normal** by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Display ▶ Font Settings

1 Select **Font Size or Font Weight** and press

■ For **Font Size**, select an item ▶ Press

2 Select a size or weight and press

Tip ▶

- Font weight may not change when font size is **Tiny**, and some windows may not support Font Settings.
- Activating Large Font Menu (P.1-24) cancels Font Settings.

Clock/Calendar

Clock (M) is set by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☎) ▶ Display ▶ Standby Display ▶ Clock/Calendar

1 Select a type and press

Calendar Contents

- Current date is highlighted and holidays appear in red.
- Scheduled dates are underlined.

Note ▶ Preset holidays are based on Japanese calendar as of June 2007. (Spring Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day are gazetted on February 1 of the previous year, and thus may differ from dates scheduled on handset.)

Tip ▶ When an S! Application is set as Screensaver, Clock or Calendar may not appear correctly.

Standby Window (Japanese)

Open Standby Window in Shortcut, Headline, Communication or Calendar mode to access shortcut icons, view Live Monitor news, and more.

Subscription and member or content registration required to use Live Monitor (P.15-14) or Hot Status (P.19-3).

1 Press

- Standby Window opens in Shortcut mode by default.

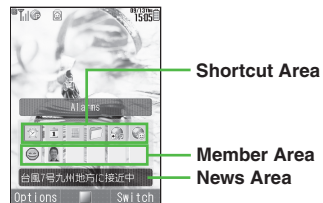
2 To toggle modes, press Switch

3 Use to select an item and press

Tip ▶ For more about icons/indicators and information, see P.15-14 "Live Monitor Basics" or P.19-3 "Hot Status."

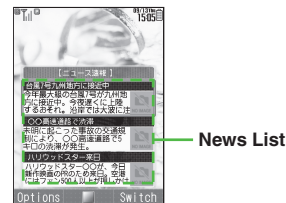
Window Description

Shortcut Mode (Shortcut Panel)

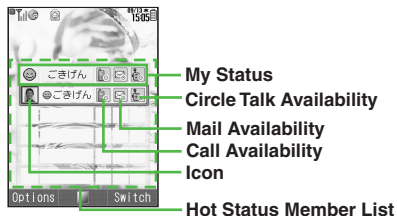


Above is an example in **Template 1** view. (**Template 7** is set by default.)

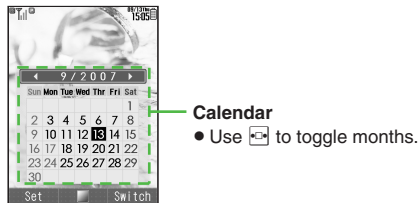
Headline Mode (News Panel)



Communication Mode (Member Panel)



Calendar Mode (Calendar Panel)



Display Options

Switch by Key is set by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☎) ▶ Display ▶ Standby Display ▶ Standby Window ▶ Display Window

1 Select an option and press

Mode Selection

Panels for all modes are set to appear by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☎) ▶ Display ▶ Standby Display ▶ Standby Window ▶ Display Panel

1 Select a panel to hide and press **Uncheck**
 To show hidden panels, select one and press **Check**.

2 Press




































Customizing Standby Window




Shortcut Mode

• Follow these steps after opening Standby Window in Shortcut mode (P.9-6).

Change Templates	Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ▶ Select Change Templates ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a template ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Add News Content	Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ▶ Select Add News Content ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a list ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select an item ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> • Follow onscreen instructions.
News Speed	Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ▶ Select News Display ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select News Speed ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select speed ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Target News	Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ▶ Select News Display ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Target News ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select an option ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>



• The following options are available in **Template 1** view, etc.

Assign Shortcut	Select an icon → Press  Options → Select Assign Shortcut → Press  → Use  to select a menu item → Press  → Select a function, folder or menu → Press  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Shortcuts are overwritten if already assigned. • Press  Assign to assign some menu items.
Assign Bookmark	Select an icon → Press  Options → Select Assign Bookmark → Press  → Use  to select a Bookmark → Press  → Select an icon → Press  → Choose Yes → Press 
Move Shortcuts/Bookmarks	Select an icon → Press  Options → Select Move → Press  → Select an icon → Press  Up or  Down → Press 
Delete Shortcuts/Bookmarks	Select an icon → Press  Options → Select Delete → Press  → Choose Yes → Press 
Assign Member	Select an icon or a blank entry → Press  Options → Select Assign Member → Press  → Select Status Member List or Phone Book → Press  → Select a member or an entry → Press  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Save members to Hot Status member list or save Phone Book entries beforehand.
Delete Member Icons	Select an icon → Press  Options → Select Delete → Press  → Choose Yes → Press 
My Status Settings	Select an icon → Press  Options → Select My Status Settings → Press  → Choose On (show) or Off → Press 
Move Members	Select an icon → Press  Options → Select Move → Press  → Select a member to move → Press  Up or  Down → Press 

Change Member Icons	Select an icon → Press  Options → Select Change Icon → Press  → Select an icon → Press 
---------------------	--



















■ **Headline Mode**

Follow these steps after opening Standby Window in Headline mode (**P.9-6**).

Add News Content	Press  Options → Select Add News Content → Press  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Follow onscreen instructions.
------------------	---

■ **Communication Mode**

Follow these steps after opening Standby Window in Communication mode (**P.9-7**).

Assign Member	Select a row → Press  Options → Select Assign Member → Press  → Select Status Member List or Phone Book → Press  → Select a member or an entry → Press  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Save members to Hot Status member list or save Phone Book entries beforehand.
Delete Members	Select a member → Press  Options → Select Delete → Press  → Choose Yes → Press 
My Status Settings	Select an icon → Press  Options → Select My Status Settings → Press  → Choose On (show) or Off → Press 
Move Members	Select a member → Press  Options → Select Move → Press  → Select a member → Press  Up or  Down → Press 
Change Member Icons	Select a member → Press  Options → Select Change Icon → Press  → Select an icon → Press 

Custom Screens

Download and install applications that load single-themed handset Wallpaper, menu windows, indicators, ringtones and more, all at the same time.

In addition to preloaded Custom Screens, use Custom Screens downloaded via the Internet.

Downloading Custom Screens

- Custom Screens can also be downloaded via **カスタモ** (<http://www.custamo.com/>) using a PC.
- Read information (Custom Screen Key price, expiry date, etc.) on Custom Screen download page.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Custom Screens

1 Select Download Custom Screens and press

Handset connects to the Internet and **カスタモ** appears.

- To read introduction to **カスタモ** first, select **カスタモご紹介**
 - ▶ Press  ▶ Press  ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press 

2 Download a Custom Screen

- On PCs, download Custom Screens to the following Memory Card directory. Do not change file name, extension, etc.
 - PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/My Items/Custom Screens

Purchasing Custom Screen Keys




To use fee-based Custom Screens, download Custom Screen Keys (Content Keys) to handset.

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder



1 Select Custom Screens and press

- Fee-based Custom Screen Indicators:


Key Found	⇌	Key Not Found	✕
-----------	---	---------------	---

-  appears for the current Custom Screen.
- To switch between handset and Memory Card, press  **Options**
 - ▶ Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to MemoryCard** ▶ Press 

2 Select a Custom Screen for which to download the Key and press **Options**

- Select one with .
- To access Custom Screen source sites, select **Web Access**
 - ▶ Press 

3 Select Activate and press


- Handset connects to the Internet and download page appears.
- When 100 Custom Screen Keys are already downloaded, delete Keys before downloading new ones.
 - To cancel, press  **Cancel**.

4 Read through terms of service and download Custom Screen Key following onscreen instructions

5 After download, choose **Yes** and press

Data Folder (Custom Screens) returns.

Custom Screen Setup

- Pressing  does not cancel setup.
- Custom Screen setup may take some time.

Preset Custom Screens

Custom Screen is unset by default.







Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings  ► Custom Screens ► Preset Screens

1 Select **Pattern 1** or **Pattern 2** and press

Custom Screens in Data Folder

Main Menu ► Data Folder

1 Select **Custom Screens** and press

- Fee-based Custom Screen Indicators: P.9-9
- To switch between handset and Memory Card, press 
 - Options ► Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to MemoryCard** ► Press 
 - To delete Custom Screens, select one ► Press  Options ► Select **Delete** ► Press  ► Choose **Yes** ► Press 
 - When the corresponding Custom Screen Key has been downloaded, choose **Yes** or **No** ► Press 

2 Select a Custom Screen and press

- Custom Screens with  cannot be set.

3 Press

4 Press

Data Folder (Custom Screens) returns.

- Note** ►
- Some Custom Screens may not contain files for Wallpaper, System Graphics, ringtones or ringvideos; default settings apply for these functions.
 - Custom Screen setup may fail when battery is low or depending on content.

- Tip** ► Once installed, Custom Screen remains active even after Memory Card is removed or replaced with another.

Familiar Usability

Download and install applications that load user interface themes based on your previous handsets.

Familiar Usability does not completely remake handset.

Downloading Familiar Usability

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Custom Screens

1 Select **Download Familiar Usability** and press

Handset connects to the Internet and Familiar Usability download site appears.

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Familiar Usability Setup

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Custom Screens

1 Select a Familiar Usability application and press

2 Press

Canceling Familiar Usability

- Press ▶ Press (メニュー) ▶ Select おなじみ操作解除 ▶ Press ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press

Canceling Familiar Usability Temporarily

- Press ▶ Press (メニュー) ▶ Select 通常メニュー ▶ Press

- Note** ▶
- Activating Familiar Usability cancels Custom Screen and restores default Wallpaper, System Graphics, tones, etc. (Simple Menu needs to be canceled to activate Familiar Usability.)
 - Familiar Usability does not support Font Settings (P.9-5) or Language Setting (below).

Language Setting

Switch handset interface between Japanese and English.

- For **Automatic**, interface language switches according to language information on USIM Card.
- **Automatic** is set by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☎) ▶ 言語選択

1 Select **Automatic, English** or **日本語** and press

Light Settings

Backlight

Select Display and Keypad Backlight illumination time or Display Brightness

Default Time Out: 15 seconds, Brightness: Level 2

Main Menu

▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings* (☰) ▶ *Display* ▶ *Backlight*

Backlight Illumination Time

Select **Time Out** ▶ Press ▶ Select time ▶ Press

■ To disable Backlight, choose **Off** in Time Out list ▶ Press

Display Brightness

Select **Brightness** ▶ Press ▶ Use  to adjust level ▶ Press

Note ▶ Reduce Time Out time/Brightness level to extend Battery Time.

Tip ▶ Keypad light Brightness is fixed.

Display Saving

Select a period of inactivity after which Display turns off

Default 2 minutes

Main Menu

▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings* (☰) ▶ *Display* ▶ *Display Saving*

Select a period ▶ Press

Note ▶ Shorten period of inactivity to extend Battery Time.

Tip ▶ Even when Display Saving is set to **Always On**, Display turns off automatically after five minutes of Call Time.

External Display Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu

▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings* (☰) ▶ *Display* ▶ *External Display*

Duration

Default 5 seconds

Select active time for External Display

Select **Duration** ▶ Press ▶ Select time ▶ Press

■ To disable External Display, choose **Off** ▶ Press

• Shorten active time to extend Battery Time.

Messages

Default Display

Select whether to open new received messages on External Display

Select **Messages** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Display or Not Display** ▶ Press


• Set Caller Display (below) to **On** beforehand.

Display Date & Time

Default Large Clock

Change External Display Clock view

Select **Display Date&Time** ▶ Press ▶ Select a type ▶ Press

• With handset closed, press  to toggle Clock view.

Clock Type

Default Pattern 1

Change External Display font

Select **Clock Type** ▶ Press ▶ Select a pattern ▶ Press

Caller Display

Default On

Show or hide caller's number or name on External Display

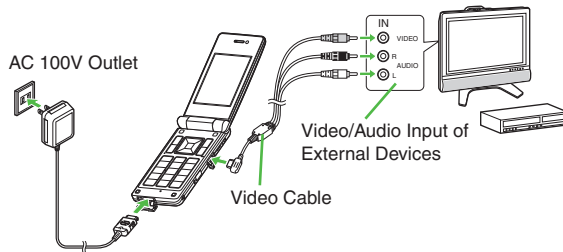
Select **Caller Display** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **On or Off** ▶ Press

Viewing Images on External Devices

Connect handset to a TV, VCR, etc. to view handset images. Exportable sources are S! Applications, images/video in Data Folder and Video Call. Some images and sounds will not play on external devices.

Connecting to External Devices

Use optional Video Cable to connect handset to external devices. Turn off the device before connecting Video Cable.





- Note** ▶
- Connect Video Cable only to the video/audio inputs of the device and AV OUT Port of handset. Video Cable is designed exclusively for 814SH and 815SH.
 - Plug in firmly. To disconnect, grasp the plug and pull gently.
 - Do not pull, twist or bend Video Cable to avoid damaging the cable and handset AV OUT Port.

Activating Video Output

- While Video Output is in use, control the volume on the connected device (except for Video Calls).
- When handset is closed, only Video Calls via handsfree devices are exportable.
- Files saved on Memory Card are also supported.
- Video Output is **Off** by default.

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☎) ▶ Display ▶
Video Output ▶ Switch On/Off

- 1 Choose *On* and press** 
 - To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ Press 
- 2 Open exportable images, video, etc.**
 - When exporting S! Application, video or Video Call images, press  to toggle display between device and handset.
- 3 To exit Video Output, press** 

- Note** ▶
- When Video Player, S! Applications or Video Call images are viewed on external devices, images do not appear on handset Display.
 - Turn down the volume on the connected device before disconnecting handset.
 - Images may be noisy or distorted depending on the device.
 - Video Call images may not appear on the device while menus and other windows are open.

Output Image Settings

Activate Video Output and follow these steps.

Display Size <small>Default: Standard</small>	Switch display size Select Display Size ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select Standard or Large ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> • For Large , images may be cropped vertically.
Rotation Setting <small>Default: No Rotation</small>	Rotate images Select Rotation Setting ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select from No Rotation to 180° ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> • Pictures folder images, S! Applications and Video Call images cannot be rotated.
TV System <small>Default: NTSC</small>	Select a TV system Select TV System ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select NTSC or PAL ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> • Use NTSC in Japan. Outside Japan, select either according to available TV system.

Additional Display Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ➔ <i>Settings</i> ➔ <i>Phone Settings</i> (☰) ➔ <i>Display</i>	
Show Indicators <small>Default: Status Area: On Softkey Area: Off</small>	Show or hide indicators/Softkeys in Standby Select Standby Display ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select Show Indicators ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select Status Area or Softkey Area ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Choose On or Off ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Show Operator Name <small>Default: Off</small>	Show or hide the name of your service provider in Standby Select Standby Display ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select Show Operator Name ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Choose On or Off ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Vivid Mode <small>Default: Standard</small>	Select an image enhancement option for Standby and video playback Select Vivid Mode ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select an option ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Greeting Message <small>Default: Off</small>	Create a short text message to appear on Display each time handset power is activated Select Greeting Message ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select Edit Message ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Enter a message ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select Switch On/Off ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Choose On ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ■ To cancel, select Greeting Message ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select Switch On/Off ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Choose Off ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Dial Number <small>Default: Pattern 1</small>	Change font of numbers entered in Standby Select Dial Number ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select a pattern ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>

Sound Settings

To change ringtone volumes, ringtone/ringvideo or vibration patterns, see P.9-2 "Customizing Handset Responses."

Customizing System Sounds

Default Settings:

	Tone/Sound	Duration
Keypad Tones	Touch Tone	-
Circle Talk	Xylophone	-
Warning Tone	Sound Effect 11	0.5 seconds
Power On Sound	Off	5 seconds
Power Off Sound	Off	5 seconds
Handset Open	Sound Effect 14	2 seconds
Handset Close	Sound Effect 15	2 seconds
Charge Full	Off	2 seconds

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Sounds & Alerts ▶ System Sounds

1 Keypad Tones

1 Select **Keypad Tones** and press

To disable tone, choose **Off** ▶ Press

Circle Talk Tone

1 Select **Circle Talk** and press

Other System Sounds

1 Select an item and press

To set duration, select **Duration** ▶ Press ▶ Select/enter time ▶ Press

Tone/sound does not play longer than the source regardless of Duration setting. (Tone/sound does not play repeatedly.)

2 Select **Tone or Sound** and press

To disable tone, choose **Off** ▶ Press

3 Select **Preset Sounds or Ring Songs/Tones** and press

To play tones/files, select one ▶ Press **Play** or **Play**

Press **Stop** or to stop.

2 Select a tone/file and press

For files with limited usage period, choose **Yes** ▶ Press

Volume

Set System Sound volume level

Default Level 3

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Sounds & Alerts ▶ Volume ▶ General Volume

Use to adjust level ▶ Press

• For Circle Talk tone, setting in "Ringtone Volume" on P.9-2 applies.

Additional Sound Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (☰)

Surround Default: Link to Sound	Activate or deactivate Speaker surround Select Sounds & Alerts ► Press [■] ► Select Surround ► Press [■] ► Select On, Link to Sound or Off ► Press [■] • Canceling Link to Sound may reduce volume.
Ringer Output Default: Earphone/ Speaker	Set ringer source when using Headphones, etc. Select Ringer Output ► Press [■] ► Select Earphone or Earphone/Speaker ► Press [■]

Date & Time

See indicated pages for these items.

World Clock	P.12-13	Alarm	P.12-10
--------------------	---------	--------------	---------

Set Date/Time

Set the date and time; the day of the week is set automatically

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (☰) ► Date & Time ► Set Date/Time

Enter the year ► **Enter the month** ► **Enter the day** ► **Enter the time** ► Press [■]

- When Time Format is **12 Hour**, enter the time then use [⏸] to select am or pm ► Press [■]

Note ►

- Entry order varies by Date Format (below). Use the letters below the entry fields as a guide.
- When removing the battery for replacement, etc., Clock settings remain. However, should the handset go without power for an extended period of time (approximately one hour), Clock will need to be reset.

Tip ►

- To correct numbers, use [←] to move cursor and re-enter digits.
- Choose a Clock type or use Calendar for Standby (P.9-6).

Format

Change date, time or Calendar format

Default: Time Format: 24 Hour

Date Format: Y/M/D

Calendar Format: Sunday-Saturday

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings (☰) ► Date & Time

Select Time Format, Date Format or Calendar Format ► Press [■] ► **Select an option** ► Press [■]

Time Correction

Correct Clock instantly or select when to correct automatically

Default: On

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Date & Time ▶ Time Correction

Correcting Instantly

Select **Manual** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

Activating/Canceling Auto Correction

Select **Auto Corr. Setting** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **On** or **Off** ▶ Press

Selecting Auto Correction Timing

Select **Auto Corr. Setting** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **On** ▶ Press **Details** ▶ Select an item ▶ Press to check or uncheck ▶ Press **Save**

Note ▶ Clock may be a few seconds ahead or behind even after correction.

Set Time Zone/Daylight Saving

Change Time Zone or activate Daylight Saving

Default: Time Zone: Tokyo, Daylight Saving: Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Date & Time

Time Zone

Select **Set Time Zone** ▶ Press ▶ Use to select a Time Zone ▶ Press

- ▶ If your zone is not preset, press **Custom** ▶ Enter city name (up to 16 characters) ▶ Press ▶ Use to select + or - ▶ Press ▶ Enter time difference ▶ Press

Daylight Saving

Select **Daylight Saving** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **On** ▶ Press

- ▶ To cancel, select **Daylight Saving** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Off** ▶ Press

- Activate Daylight Saving to advance handset local time by one hour.

Handset Security

Changing Handset Code

9999 is set by default.

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Locks ▶ Chng Handset Code

- 1 Enter current Handset Code and press
- 2 Enter new Handset Code and press
- 3 Re-enter new Handset Code and press

Handset Locks

Password Lock

Restrict access to handset functions

Default: Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Locks ▶ Password Lock

Activating Lock when Handset is Closed

Select **Auto** ▶ Press ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press

One Time Lock

Select **Once** ▶ Press ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press

- Password Lock is canceled once handset is unlocked.

Activating Lock when Handset is Turned On

Select **At Power On** ▶ Press ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press

Canceling


















Choose **Off** ▶ Press ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press

Unlocking Handset

Enter Handset Code ➔ Press

- Password Lock remains active even if handset power is deactivated, then reactivated.

When Password Lock is Active

- In Standby, press  for 2+ seconds to deactivate handset power,  -  to enter Handset Code or  to edit Handset Code entry.
- During a call, press  to end the call, press  to show Options,  to toggle Loudspeaker on/off or switch Video Call images,  to mute/unmute Microphone,  to switch between callers in Call Waiting,  -  to enter Handset Code or  to edit Handset Code entry.
- When a call arrives, press  to show Options. Answer calls by pressing ,  or keys for Any Key Answer (P.2-6), or place callers on hold by pressing . Press  to forward incoming calls (when **No Answer** is set for Diverts).

Note ➔ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when Password Lock is active. See P.2-20.

IP Service Setting

Enable or disable Hot Status and Circle Talk

Default: On

Main Menu

➔ Settings ➔ Phone Settings  ➔ Locks ➔ IP Service Setting

Choose **On (enable)** or **Off** ➔ Press  ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press 

Phone Book Lock

Restrict access to Phone Book information

Default: Off

Main Menu

➔ Settings ➔ Phone Settings  ➔ Locks ➔ Phone Book Lock

Choose **On** ➔ Press  ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press 

- To cancel, choose **Off** ➔ Press  ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press 
- For temporary access to Phone Book, press  in Standby ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press 

Note ➔ When Phone Book Lock is active, the following Phone Book operations are disabled:

- Searching, saving, editing and dialing, including Speed Dial (P.4-14).

History Lock

Restrict access to Call Log and sent/received mail records



Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Locks ▶
History Lock

Select a record type ▶ Press  to check or uncheck

▶ Press  ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press 

■ For temporary access to Call Log, press  or  in Standby
▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press 

■ For temporary access to sent/received mail records, after
Step 3 on P.14-4, select **All History** ▶ Press  ▶ Enter
Handset Code ▶ Press 

Face Recognition

Activate to automatically lock handset when it is turned on, opened in Standby, or whenever Display is refreshed after Display Saving time, etc. Match live face image with saved one to unlock.

Precautions

When capturing/scanning face, remember these points:

- **Make sure your face is clearly visible; facial features may be obscured by hair, colored glasses, masks, etc.**
- **Face should be lit evenly and brightly (avoid backlight and strong light).**













- Note** ▶
- Identification accuracy is not guaranteed. SoftBank cannot be held liable for misuse or any damages associated with the use of Face Recognition.
 - Handset Code is required to activate/cancel Face Recognition. Changing the code (P.9-17) helps enhance security.
 - Si FeliCa is available even when Face Recognition is active.

Saving User Information

Save a name and portrait as well as a question and an answer to the question. In case recognition fails, enter the answer to unlock handset.








- Save up to five users (with up to five portraits each).
- If no question or answer is saved, enter Handset Code to unlock handset.


Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Locks ▶ Face Recognition ▶ User Registration

- 1 Enter Handset Code and press 
- 2 Select from *User 1 to User 5* and press 
 - To edit user information, select a user ▶ Press 
 - To delete users, select one ▶ Press  **Delete** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press 
- 3 Select *User Name:* and press 
- 4 Enter name and press 
- 5 Select *Register Riddle:* and press 
- 6 Enter a question and press 
- 7 Select *Register Answer:* and press 
- 8 Enter the answer and press 
- 9 Capture and save portrait (right)
- 10 Press  **Save** to save



Saving Portraits

Save up to five portraits per user. Change location, face angle, accessory, brightness, etc. for each shot. Follow these steps after Step 8 on the left.

- 1 Select *Face Image:* and press 
- 2 Select from *Image 1 to Image 5* and press  **Capture**
 - To overwrite saved portrait, choose **Yes** ▶ Press 
 - To delete portraits, select one ▶ Press  **Delete** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press 
 - Deleting all portraits cancels Face Recognition.
- 3 Frame your face on Display and press 
 - Stay still until shooting is completed.
 - If **Cannot Register. Please change the shooting condition.** appears, start over from Step 2.
- 4 Press  **Yes**

Portrait is saved.
- 5 Choose **Yes** and press 

Face Recognition is activated.

 - To save more, repeat Steps 2 - 4.
 - To save user information, press  then  **Save**.

Precautions for Portrait Capture

- Look straight into lens and frame whole face with no expression; adjust face size (may not be saved if too small). Stay still until shooting is completed.
- Do not wear a mask when capturing portraits, even for use with **Low(Mask)** (P.9-22 "Security Level").

- Tip** ▶
- Saving multiple portraits increases recognition accuracy. However, security will be compromised.
 - A person's portraits can be saved to multiple users; this may increase recognition accuracy.

Activating & Canceling

- Save a user beforehand.
- Face Recognition is **Off** by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☰) ▶ Locks ▶ Face Recognition ▶ Switch On/Off

- 1 Choose On or Off and press** []
- 2 Enter Handset Code and press** []

Scanning Face

Clean dust/smudges from lens cover of Internal Camera with a soft cloth before use.

1 Face the Display

- To show operational tips, select **Panda** in Conductor Setting (P.9-22).
- Handset is unlocked when your face matches saved portrait.
- When Face Recognition fails, **Under Pwd Key Lock** appears activating Password Lock.

Unlocking Handset after Face Recognition Fails

- **When saved question appears, press** [] ➔ **Enter the answer** ➔ **Press** []
 - To retry to answer, press [] ➔ Enter the answer ➔ Press []
 - To use Handset Code instead of retrying to answer, press [] ➔ Press [] ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press []
- **If no question or answer is saved, press** [] ➔ **Enter Handset Code** ➔ **Press** []
 - To retry Face Recognition, press [] **Recog**.

Opening Contact Information

- Press [] while handset is locked to open saved contact information (P.9-22 "Report").

Face Recognition Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu	▶ <i>Settings</i> ▶ <i>Phone Settings</i> (☰) ▶ <i>Locks</i> ▶ <i>Face Recognition</i>
<p>Security Level <small>Default</small> Normal</p>	<p>Select accuracy level</p> <p>Select <i>Security Level</i> ▶ Press [] ▶ Select a level ▶ Press []</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Levels: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ High Unsaved faces are least likely recognized by mistake; your face may be hard to recognize ■ Normal Standard recognition accuracy ■ Low Your face is most recognizable; unsaved faces are most likely recognized by mistake ■ Low(Mask) Accuracy is equal to that of Low; however, handset recognizes faces with masks

<p>Conductor Setting <small>Default</small> Off</p>	<p>Show or hide operational tips during recognition</p> <p>Select <i>Conductor Setting</i> ▶ Press [] ▶ Select an option ▶ Press []</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Off <i>Under Face Recognition. Please wait...</i> appears ■ Preview Internal Camera Viewfinder appears as a guide ■ Panda Panda graphic appears with operational tips ■ Custom Screen Custom Screen (P.9-9) graphic-based guidance appears
<p>Report <small>Default</small> Unregistered</p>	<p>Save contact information to open when Face Recognition fails</p> <p>Select <i>Report</i> ▶ Press [] ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press [] ▶ Enter contact information ▶ Press []</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter up to 128 characters.

PIN

For more information on PIN, see **P.1-3** "USIM PINs."

PIN Entry

Select whether to require PIN every time handset is turned on (with USIM Card inserted)

Default Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☎) ▶ Locks ▶ PIN Entry ▶ Switch On/Off

Choose On or Off ▶ Press [] ▶ Enter PIN1 ▶ Press []

- Activate PIN Entry to require PIN1 entry each time handset (USIM Card inserted) is turned on.

Tip ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are not possible when PIN Entry is active. See **P.2-20**.

Change PIN

Change PIN1 or PIN2

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☎) ▶ Locks

PIN1

Select **PIN Entry ▶ Press [] ▶ Select Change PIN ▶ Press [] ▶ Enter current PIN1 ▶ Press [] ▶ Enter new PIN1 ▶ Press [] ▶ Re-enter new PIN1 ▶ Press []**

PIN2

Select **Change PIN2 ▶ Press [] ▶ Enter current PIN2 ▶ Press [] ▶ Enter new PIN2 ▶ Press [] ▶ Re-enter new PIN2 ▶ Press []**

Tip ▶ Activate PIN Entry first.

Opening Secret Entries

Show Secret Data

Activate Show Secret Data to open Secret entries

Default Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☎) ▶ Locks ▶ Show Secret Data

Choose On ▶ Press [] ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press []

To cancel, choose Off ▶ Press []

Note ▶ Do not save confidential information in Phone Book/schedule entries. Handset Code and thus Secret entries may be compromised.

When Show Secret Data is Off

- Phone Book Names/Picture images do not appear for calls/mail from numbers/addresses in Secret entries. Personal ringtones/ringvideos are disabled. Names for numbers in Secret entries do not appear in Call Log or list of received messages.

Reset

A confirmation appears before entering Handset Code when an S! Application is paused, etc. End the function to proceed.

Reset Settings

Cancel custom settings and return handset functions to their default settings

Main Menu

▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings* (☎) ▶ *Master Reset*
▶ *Reset Settings*

Enter Handset Code ▶ **Press** ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶
Press ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ **Press**

- Phone Book entries, etc. are unaffected.

Note ▶ Some default settings may not be restored.

Reset All

Clear all Phone Book entries, Data Folder files, etc.

Main Menu

▶ *Settings* ▶ *Phone Settings* (☎) ▶ *Master Reset*
▶ *Reset All*

Enter Handset Code ▶ **Press** ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶
Press ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ **Press**

- Note** ▶
- Files and records deleted by Reset All cannot be restored. Handset Code returns to the default setting. Reset All deletes downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Appli.
 - **カスタモゴ紹介** in Data Folder (Custom Screens) and S! Applications are restored.
 - Reset All is disabled if IC Card (P.17-2) data remains. Delete IC Card data beforehand.

Call Settings

See indicated pages for these items.

Call Time & Cost	P.2-13, P.2-14	Show My Number	P.13-8
Answer Phone	P.2-8, P.2-9	Missed Call Notification	P.13-5
VoiceMail/Divert	P.13-4, P.13-3	Call Barring	P.13-6
Call Waiting	P.13-5		

Limit Call Costs

Max Cost

Set a limit of total call charges
When the limit is reached, outgoing calls are blocked

Main Menu

▶ *Settings* ▶ *Call/Video Call* (☎) ▶ *Call Time & Cost* ▶ *Call Costs*

Select Max Cost ▶ **Press** ▶ **Press** **Set** ▶
Select Set ▶ **Press** ▶ **Enter PIN2** ▶ **Press** ▶
Enter the amount ▶ **Press**

- To cancel Max Cost, select **Max Cost** ▶ **Press** ▶ **Press** **Set** ▶ **Select Unset** ▶ **Press** ▶ **Enter PIN2** ▶ **Press**
- To change Max Cost, select **Max Cost** ▶ **Press** ▶ **Press** **Edit** ▶ **Enter PIN2** ▶ **Press** ▶ **Enter the amount** ▶ **Press**
- To check the remaining amount, select **Residual Credit** ▶ **Press**

Note ▶ Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when the limit is reached. See P.2-20.

Data Counter

Check estimated volume of the most recent or all packet transmissions (sent, received and total). Charges do not appear.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Time & Cost ▶ Data Counter

1 Select **Last Data** or **All Data** and press

2 Press to return

Clear Counter Reset Data Counter

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Time & Cost ▶ Data Counter

Select **Clear Counter** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

Auto Answer

Select whether to set handset to answer Voice Calls automatically when using Headphones or handsfree devices. Auto Answer is inactive by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Auto Answer

1 Enter Handset Code and press

To adjust ring time, select **Answer Time** ▶ Press ▶ Enter time ▶ Press

2 Select **Switch On/Off** and press

3 Choose **On (answer automatically)** or **Off** and press

Tip ▶

- When Auto Answer is active, Auto Answer tone sounds after ringtone (even in Manner mode).
- Handsfree device Auto Answer tone varies by device.
- To avoid unintentional activation, cancel Auto Answer after use.

International Call

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Int'l Calling

Int'l Prefix Default: 0046010	Save frequently used international prefix Select <i>Int'l Prefix</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Enter a prefix ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Change Country Codes	Change Country Codes Select <i>Country Codes</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a country ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <i>Change</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Enter country name ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Enter country code ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Add Country Codes	Add Country Codes Select <i>Country Codes</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <empty> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Enter country name ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Enter country code ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Delete Country Codes	Delete Country Codes Select <i>Country Codes</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a country ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <i>Delete</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <i>Yes</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Auto Add Code Default: Off Country Code: 81 (Japan)	Add a preset country code automatically when placing calls Activating/Deactivating Select <i>Switch On/Off</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <i>On or Off</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Set Country Code Select <i>Country Code</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a country ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To enter a country code, select Enter Code in Country Code list ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Enter country code ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> When Auto Add Code is active, preset country code is added to all phone numbers (except emergency call numbers) unless + is included.

Additional Call Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ Settings

Earpiece Volume Default: Level 3	Setting applies when placing/answering calls In <i>Phone Settings</i> , select <i>Earpiece Volume</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Use <input type="checkbox"/> to adjust level ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Minute Minder Default: Off	Handset beeps once each minute during calls Use <input type="checkbox"/> to select <i>Call/Video Call</i> ▶ Select <i>Minute Minder</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <i>On (handset beeps)</i> or <i>Off</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Display Call Cost Default: Off	Show or hide Call Cost after each call Use <input type="checkbox"/> to select <i>Call/Video Call</i> ▶ Select <i>Disp. Time/Call</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <i>Display Call Cost</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Call Time Counter Default: On	Show or hide elapsed Call Time during a call Use <input type="checkbox"/> to select <i>Call/Video Call</i> ▶ Select <i>Disp. Time/Call</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <i>Call Time Counter</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>

10

Connectivity

Infrared	10-2
■ Getting Started.....	10-2
■ Sending Files via Infrared.....	10-4
■ Receiving Files via Infrared.....	10-5
Bluetooth®	10-6
■ Getting Started.....	10-6
■ Activating Bluetooth®.....	10-8
■ Connecting to Bluetooth® Devices.....	10-8
■ Transferring Files via Bluetooth®.....	10-10
■ Bluetooth® Settings.....	10-10
Network Settings	10-11
Location Info	10-12
USB Charge (Japanese)	10-12
■ Enabling & Disabling.....	10-12

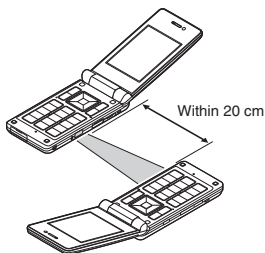
Infrared

Getting Started


Wirelessly transfer files between handset and compatible devices (PCs, mobiles, etc.). "Files" includes Bookmarks, Tasks, Notepad, Phone Book and Calendar entries, and Messaging and Data Folder files. 814SH and 815SH comply with IrMC 1.1, however, some files may not be transferable.

Precautions

- Align Infrared Ports within 20 centimeters with no obstructions between handsets.
- Keep Infrared Ports aligned during transfer.
- Dust/oil may impair file transfers; clean Infrared Ports with a soft cloth beforehand.
- Transfers are disabled while using the Internet or Media Player, while editing mail or files, etc.
- Transfers in direct sunlight, under fluorescent lighting or near infrared equipment may fail.



When Transfer Fails

- Device not found. Reconnect?** appears. Take the precautions on the left then choose **Yes** and press  to try again.

Transfer Options

One File Transfer	Transfer files one at a time. (Received files are saved to corresponding functions.)
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function
Receive Folder	Receive a folder and its contents. (Handset does not support sending folders.)
IrSS Transfer	Transfer JPEG files one at a time at high speed. Received files are saved to Data Folder (Pictures).

Authorisation Code

- Authorisation Codes (four digits) are specific for infrared transfers. All File Transfers are possible when Authorisation Codes of both devices match.

- Note** ▶
- Some files may not be saved in whole or part.
 - Only compatible devices receive files transferred via IrSS transfer.

- Tip** ▶
- Transfer most Memory Card Data Folder files one at a time. Received JPEG images in DCIM folder are saved in Pictures folder.

Transferable Files

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Phone Book	Available	Available	One File Transfer truncates Category, Tone/Video, Light, Vibration & Secret. If Delete All & Save is set then All File Transfer overwrites My Details except handset phone number. Picture may be lost; transfer image then reset it as Picture.
Calendar	Available	Available ¹	One File Transfer resets Alarm Tone/Video to Alert 1 and omits Secret setting. Received entries with unsettable start date/time (0:00 AM on January 1, 2031 or later) cannot be saved.
Tasks	Available	Available ¹	One File Transfer resets Alarm Tone/Video to Alert 1 and omits Secret setting. Received entries with unsettable due date/time (0:00 AM on January 1, 2031 or later) are saved as No limit .
Notepad	Available	Available	
Bookmarks	Available	Available	Streaming Bookmarks are saved in Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

Function	One File	All Files	Notes
Received Msg.	N/A ²	Available ³	
Sent Messages	N/A ²	Available	
Drafts	N/A ²	Available ⁴	
Templates	Available	Available ⁵	Copy protected files are not transferable.
Data Folder	Available	Available ⁵	Copy protected files are not transferable. Received JPEG images in DCIM folder are saved to Pictures folder.

¹In All File Transfers, Calendar and Tasks are sent together from **Appointments/Tasks**.

²Received files are saved to Other Documents folder as unknown files and cannot be used as messages.

³All File Transfers may save Spam Folder messages to the incoming message folder on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 814SH and 815SH) when spam filter is not active/available or when sender is saved in the phone book; S! Mail Notices are saved as normal messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.

⁴In All File Transfers, SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved on recipient SoftBank handsets (except 814SH and 815SH), or only the first entered recipient remains.

⁵Receive folders one at a time into handset Data Folder.

- Note** ▶
- Handset holds up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining entries will not be received.
 - Messages may not be received depending on the size.
 - Large Bookmarks may not be received correctly.
 - Handset holds up to 500 messages between Drafts, Unsent Messages and Sent Messages. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining messages will not be received.
 - Sky Mail may be received as S! Mail on handset depending on the sender SoftBank handset.
 - Overwriting Messaging folders deletes auto sort keys.

Sending Files via Infrared

One File Transfer

Send one file from Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks, Notepad, Bookmarks, Templates or Data Folder (P.10-3 "Transferable Files").

- 1 Select a file and press** [Options]
- 2 Select *Send* and press** []
 - To send Phone Book entries, select ***Send Entry*** ▶ Press []
 - To send My Details, select ***Send My Card*** ▶ Press []
- 3 Select *Via Infrared* and press** []
- 4 Choose *Yes* and press** []

Offline Mode is set and transfer starts. When finished, file list returns.

Transferring JPEG Images at High Speed

Follow these steps to use IrSS transfer (P.10-2).

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder

- 1 Select *Pictures* or *DCIM* and press** []
 - For *DCIM*, select a folder ▶ Press []
 - 2 Select a file and press** [Y] **for 1+ seconds**

Send via IrSS window opens and ***Set other device to waiting status.*** appears.
 - 3 Choose *Yes* or *No* and press** []

Offline Mode is set and transfer starts. When finished, file list returns.

 - Choose ***No*** to disable confirmation.
- Tip** ▶ Transfers are one-way; start regardless of recipient device status and end even if files are not received.

All File Transfer

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Connectivity [] ▶ Infrared ▶ Send All

- 1 Choose *Yes* and press** []

Offline Mode is set.
- 2 Enter Handset Code and press** []
- 3 Select an item and press** []

4 Enter Authorisation Code (P.10-2) and press

Transfer starts. When finished, Send All menu returns.

 For Phone Book, choose **Yes** or **No**  Press 

Receiving Files via Infrared

Basic Operation

Handset must be in Standby to receive files; this function is disabled even in Standby if Password Lock/Keypad Lock is active or firmware update is in progress.

Main Menu  Settings  Connectivity  Infrared  Switch On/Off





1 Choose **On(3 min.)** and press

Infrared is activated and handset returns to Standby.

- When connection is requested, **Calling not available during operation, OK?** appears.
- IrSS transfers activate Offline Mode.

2 Choose **Yes** and press

Offline Mode is set.










- For more, see "Subsequent Operations" on the right.
-  Press  **Cancel** to cancel.
-  Press  to end.

Subsequent Operations

One File Transfer

Transfer starts automatically and confirmation appears.

1 Choose **Yes** and press

-  To cancel transfer, choose **No**  Press   Choose **Yes**  Press 
-  When confirmation for save location appears, select a location  Press 

All File Transfer

Enter same No., or Authorisation code, as target device. appears.

1 Enter the same Authorisation Code (P.10-2) as sender's and press

2 Adding Files

1 Select **As New Items** and press

When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.

Overwriting Existing Files

1 Select **Delete All & Save** and press

2 Choose **Yes** and press

3 Enter Handset Code and press

When transfer completes, handset returns to Standby.

- When Phone Book is overwritten, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

■ Receiving Folders

Transfer starts automatically and confirmation appears.

- Handset receives folders when it can newly create a folder, or the same folder name exists in the same layer as that of sender's.
- If the same folder name exists, received files are saved there. (Another folder will not be created.)

1 Choose Yes and press

To cancel transfer, choose **No** ➔ Press

■ IrSS Transfer

Transfer starts automatically; when completed, Receive via IrSS window opens and confirmation appears.

IrSS transfer supports JPEG images only. Send up to 2 MB per transfer to 814SH or 815SH.

1 Choose Yes and press

To cancel transfer, choose **No** ➔ Press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press

Bluetooth®

Getting Started

Wirelessly transfer files between 814SH/815SH within ten meters and compatible devices (PCs, mobiles, handsfree devices, etc.). "Files" includes Bookmarks, Tasks, Notepad, Phone Book and Calendar entries, and Messaging and Data Folder files.

Handset Bluetooth® Specifications:

Communication System	Bluetooth® specification Ver 2.0
Bluetooth® Profiles Supported	Headset Profile Hands-Free Profile Dial-up Networking Profile Object Push Profile File Transfer Profile Basic Imaging Profile Service Discovery Application Profile Advanced Audio Distribution Profile Audio/Video Remote Control Profile
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class 2

■ Major Bluetooth® Devices

PC/Mobile Phone	Transfer Phone Book entries, tasks etc.
Handsfree Device	Talk on the phone without holding handset
Wireless Headphones	Enjoy music and audio wirelessly

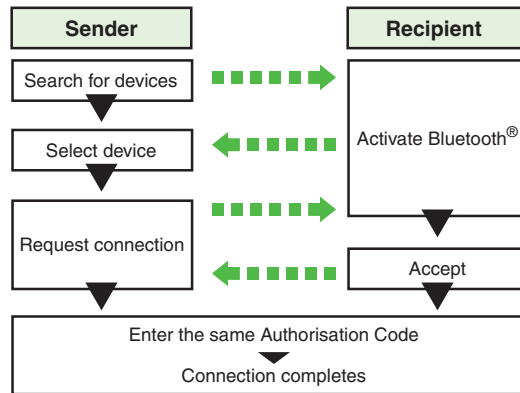
Note ► **Bluetooth® connection may not be possible with some Bluetooth® devices.**

- Handset shall be connected to certified Bluetooth® devices that meet the specification standards developed by Bluetooth SIG.
- Depending on characteristics or specifications of the certified Bluetooth® devices, connection or data transfers may fail, or operational procedures, display content and actual operations may differ from those described in this manual.
- Noise may interfere with wireless or handsfree conversations depending on the status of connected devices or signal conditions.
- For details about headset/handsfree devices, see the device manuals.

Precautions

- Bluetooth® transfers are disabled during calls, while receiving calls, using the Internet or Media Player, editing mail, etc.
- Bring handsets to within ten meters. Bluetooth® connection/transfer rate is affected by distance between handsets, obstructions, signal conditions, handset status, etc.
- Bluetooth® operates in the 2.4 GHz unlicensed frequency band. Depending on the status of other devices used in the spectrum, Bluetooth® connection may slow down/terminate, or the range may decrease.

Bluetooth® Connection



Authorisation Code

- Authorisation Codes (4 to 16 digits) are specific for Bluetooth® connection. Pairing is possible when Authorisation Codes of both devices match.

Activating Bluetooth®

Activate Bluetooth® to use Bluetooth® functions. Bluetooth® is inactive by default.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Connectivity (📶) ► Bluetooth

1 Select **Switch On/Off** and press

To open Bluetooth®-related handset properties, select **My Device Details** ► Press

2 Choose **On** and press

ⓘ appears.

To cancel, choose **Off** ► Press

- When **Current connection must be disconnected first, OK?** appears, choose **Yes** ► Press

Note ► Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests from other devices or to receive files; these functions are disabled even in Standby if Password Lock/Keypad Lock is active or firmware update is in progress.

Connecting to Bluetooth® Devices

Device Search & Pairing

Search for Bluetooth® devices for pairing.

- Authorisation Codes are not necessary for paired devices.
- Search for up to 16 devices at a time.
- Device search is disabled if 32 devices are already registered.
- Activate Bluetooth® on devices to be paired with.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Connectivity (📶) ► Bluetooth

1 Select **Search for Devices** and press

Found devices are listed after search. (The previous search result appears, if any.)

- Device names appear with corresponding indicators (📶, etc.).

Press **Cancel** to cancel.

2 Select a device and press **Pairing**

When **Current connection must be disconnected first, OK?** appears, choose **Yes** ► Press

3 Enter the same **Authorisation Code (P.10-7)** for handset and the other device and press

When pairing is complete, **Pairing is successful.** appears.

- For handsfree devices, enter specified Authorisation Code.
- Complete code entry within 30 seconds.

4 Press

Connecting to Paired Devices

Main Menu ► Settings ► Connectivity (☰) ► Bluetooth

1 Select Paired Devices and press

List of all paired devices appears.

- Use to open list of handsfree or audio devices only.
- To rename paired devices, select one ► Press Options ► Select **Change Name** ► Press ► Enter name (up to 16 characters) ► Press
- To delete paired devices, select one ► Press Options ► Select **Delete** ► Press ► Choose **Yes** ► Press
 - When **Current connection must be disconnected first, OK?** appears, choose **Yes** ► Press
- To use Bluetooth® for handsfree conversations or audio playback only, select a handsfree or audio device ► Press Options ► Select **Handsfree Connection** or **Audio Connection** ► Press

2 Select a device and press

The device is connected and (checked) appears.

- When **Current connection must be disconnected first, OK?** appears, choose **Yes** ► Press
- To disconnect, select a device ► Press

Auto Wireless Connection for Media Player

- When Media Player audio output is set to wireless Headphones and multiple sets of wireless Headphones are available, follow these steps to connect handset to wireless Headphones automatically.

After Step 1 above, use to select **Audio** ► Select a device ► Press Options ► Select **Set to Prior Connect** ► Press

- Tip ►
- Devices marked with reconnect to handset when placing or receiving calls.
 - indicates that the device is not selected.

Accepting Connection Requests

Follow these steps to accept connection requests from unpaired devices.

1 When connection is requested, confirmation appears

2 Choose Yes and press

3 Enter the same Authorisation Code (P.10-7) as sender's and press

Avoiding Connection Requests

Set Visibility to **Hide My Phone** to cloak handset.

Visibility is set to **Show My Phone** by default.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Connectivity (☰) ► Bluetooth ► My Device Settings ► Visibility

1 Select Hide My Phone and press

- To make handset visible, select **Show My Phone** ► Press

When Using Handsfree Devices

- Handle call operations on the device in use.
- Place calls from handsfree devices while handset is in Standby.

Switching Sound Output















- While talking on the phone, press Options ► Select **Transfer Audio** ► Press ► Select **To Phone** or **To Bluetooth** ► Press

Transferring Files via Bluetooth®







Follow the steps below to exchange files with paired devices.

- Enter Authorisation Code when required.
- For more information, see descriptions for Infrared (P.10-2 - 10-6).

Sending


One File Transfer	<p>Open file list and select a file → Press </p> <p>Options → Select <i>Send</i>, <i>Send Entry</i> or <i>Send My Card</i> → Press  → Select <i>Via Bluetooth</i> → Press  → Select a device → Press  → Choose <i>Yes</i> → Press </p>
All File Transfer	<p>Press  → Select <i>Settings</i> → Press  → Use  to select <i>Connectivity</i> → Select <i>Bluetooth</i> → Press  → Select <i>Send All</i> → Press  → Select a device → Press  → Choose <i>Yes</i> → Press  → Enter Handset Code → Press  → Select an item → Press </p>











Receiving

Basic Operation	<p>Press  → Select <i>Settings</i> → Press  → Use  to select <i>Connectivity</i> → Select <i>Bluetooth</i> → Press  → Select <i>Switch On/Off</i> → Press  → Choose <i>On</i> → Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For more, see P.10-5 "Subsequent Operations."
-----------------	--

Bluetooth® Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ *Settings* ▶ *Connectivity* () ▶ *Bluetooth* ▶ *My Device Settings*

Device Name <small>Default</small> 814SH or 815SH	<p>Specify a Bluetooth® name for handset</p> <p>Select <i>Device Name</i> → Press  → Enter name → Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter up to 16 characters. (Pictograms are not available.)
Bluetooth Timeout <small>Default</small> No Timeout	<p>Set idle time after which Bluetooth® is canceled</p> <p>Select <i>Bluetooth Timeout</i> → Press  → Select time → Press </p> <p> To cancel, select <i>No Timeout</i> → Press </p>
🔊 Sound Output <small>Default</small> Phone/ Earphone	<p>Select whether to redirect audio output to wireless Headphones</p> <p>Select 🔊 <i>Sound Output</i> → Press  → Select <i>Phone/Earphone or Bluetooth Device</i> → Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Bluetooth Device</i> is set automatically when connection is made from wireless Headphones.
Handsfree Setting <small>Default</small> Handsfree Mode	<p>Select whether to talk handsfree when placing calls from handset while connected to a handsfree device</p> <p>Select <i>Handsfree Setting</i> → Press  → Select <i>Handsfree Mode or Private Mode</i> → Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When placing calls from handsfree devices, only handsfree conversation is available regardless of setting.

Network Settings

- Follow these steps first.
- See P.2-15 for information on Select Service.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Network Settings (☰)

<p>Select Network Default Automatic</p>	<p>Select a Network to connect</p> <p>Select Select Network ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Manual ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a Network ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> To change Network automatically, select Automatic ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use default setting unless connecting to a specific Network.
<p>Set Preferred</p>	<p>Set priority of Networks to be selected when Automatic is set for Select Network</p> <p>Inserting Network</p> <p>Select Select Network ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Set Preferred ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a place to insert ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Insert ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a Network ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Network is inserted above the selected entry. <p>Adding Network to the End</p> <p>Select Select Network ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Set Preferred ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Add to End ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a Network ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Deleting Network</p> <p>Select Select Network ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Set Preferred ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a Network ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Delete ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p>

<p>Add, Edit & Delete</p>	<p>Add, edit or delete Networks</p> <p>Adding Network</p> <p>Select Select Network ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Add New Network ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Add ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Enter country code ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Enter a Network code ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Enter name ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Select NW Type ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a Network type ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Add up to five Networks. • After selecting Add New Network and pressing <input type="checkbox"/>, Network list appears if Network has already been added. In this case, press <input type="checkbox"/> again and perform above steps. • Use up to three digits for country code and Network code, and up to 25 single-byte alphanumerics for name. <p>Editing Network</p> <p>Select Select Network ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Add New Network ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a Network ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Change ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Edit settings</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Edit in the same manner as in "Adding Network" above. <p>Deleting Network</p> <p>Select Select Network ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Add New Network ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a Network ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Delete ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p>
<p>Network Info</p>	<p>Check Network Information</p> <p>Select Network Info ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p>
<p>Retrieve NW Info</p>	<p>Retrieve Network Information manually</p> <p>Select Retrieve NW Info ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p>

Location Info

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Network Settings* (☰) ► *Location Info*

URL Setting	Set URL of map information provider
	Select <i>URL Setting</i> ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select URL ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ■ To view complete URLs, select one ► Press ☑ Options ► Select <i>Display</i> ► Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Datum On/Off <small>Default: On</small>	Select whether to send Location Information automatically upon request
	Select <i>Datum On/Off</i> ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Choose <i>On (send) or Off</i> ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Enter Handset Code ► Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Location Property <small>Default: Always Confirm</small>	Set Location Information confirmation parameters
	Select <i>Location Property</i> ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select <i>Always Confirm, Send or Do not Send</i> ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Enter Handset Code ► Press <input type="checkbox"/>

USB Charge (Japanese)

Connect handset to PC via USB Cable to charge battery.

- Install Utility Software CD-ROM (Japanese) beforehand.
- Both PC and handset power must be on for USB charging.

Enabling & Disabling

USB Charge is enabled by default.

Main Menu ► *Settings* ► *Connectivity* (☰) ► *USB Charge*

1 Select ***Enable (charge) or Disable*** and press

Note ►

- Charging may slow or stall due to connection.
- USB Charge is slower/less efficient than AC Charger.

11

Memory Card

About Memory Card	11-2
■ Inserting & Removing	11-2
■ Format Card.....	11-3
■ Using SD Local Contents.....	11-3
■ Backup & Restore	11-4
Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)	11-6
■ Selecting Images & Prints.....	11-7
■ Print Settings	11-7
Mass Storage	11-8

About Memory Card

814SH and 815SH are compatible with microSD™ Memory Card.

- Format a new Memory Card for use with handset (**P.11-3**).
- To learn how to save a particular file to Memory Card, refer to that section of the manual.
- To reduce malfunction risk use recommended Memory Cards only. See Memory Card compatibility information:
 - **From Handset (Japanese)**
Sharp Space Town Mobile Internet site <http://j.sst.ne.jp/>
 - **From PC (Japanese)**
http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd_support.html

Note ▶

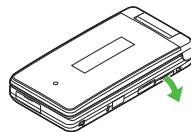
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- microSD™ Memory Card has no write protect switch. Files may be accidentally erased or overwritten.

Tip ▶ To check Memory Card memory status, open Data Folder and select **Memory Card** in Memory Status (**P.8-2**).

Inserting & Removing

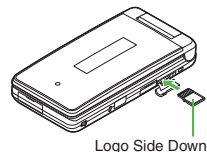
Turn handset power off.

1 Open cover



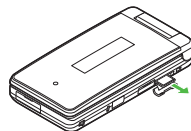
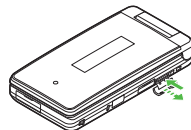
2 Inserting

- 1 With logo side down, insert card until it clicks

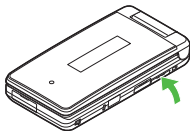



Removing

- 1 Gently push in card
 - With a light push, card pops out.
- 2 Remove card
 - Gently, pull card straight out.



3 Close cover



- Note** ▶
- Do not force Memory Card into or out of handset; damage may result.
 - When  appears, Memory Card may not be connected properly; reinsert the card.
 - Do not insert other objects into Memory Card slot; may damage handset/card.
 - Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed. Damage to handset/card may result and files/data may be damaged/lost.

Tip ▶ Insert a Memory Card and turn handset power on. Memory Card load times vary by card size and the amount of information saved.

Format Card

When using a new microSD™ Memory Card, format it on handset for use with handset before trying to save files, etc.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Connectivity  ▶ Memory Card ▶ Format Card

1 Choose Yes and press

Offline Mode is set.

2 Enter Handset Code and press

3 Choose Yes and press

 To cancel, choose **No** ▶ Press 

- Note** ▶
- Before formatting a Memory Card, make sure there is no important information saved on the card. Format Card deletes all files from Memory Card.
 - Never remove Memory Card or battery while formatting.
 - An improperly formatted Memory Card may not function as it should with 814SH or 815SH.

Using SD Local Contents

Open HTML files on Memory Card to access Internet sites. Available only when HTML files are saved on Memory Card.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Connectivity  ▶ Memory Card ▶ SD Local Contents

1 Select a title and press

Tip ▶ HTML files for SD Local Contents are saved in PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/Local Contents folder when viewed on PCs.

Backup & Restore

Back up information to Memory Card, and restore to handset in case of accidental loss/alteration of data.

- The following folders/entries can be transferred at once:
 - Received Msg.
 - Drafts
 - Templates
 - Sent Messages
 - Phone Book
 - Mail Groups
 - Calendar
 - Tasks
 - Notepad
 - Bookmarks
 - User Dictionary
 - My Pictograms
 - Content Keys
- All contents are copied to Memory Card as a single file. (File name is the date of transfer.)
 - Templates and My Pictograms are not copied as a single file.
- Select an item to back up or transfer all at once.

Tip ► Copy handset entries as backups, share information between microSD™ Memory Card-compatible handsets, or transfer entries to a newly purchased handset.

Precautions

Backup & Restore

- Not available if battery is low or handset is in use.
- Transmissions are blocked during Backup or Restore.

Backup

- Some items may not be transferable. Some backup files may not be usable on other SoftBank handsets or PCs, etc.
- When handset or Memory Card memory is low, entries may not transfer correctly.
- To access backed up content (excluding Templates and My Pictograms) restore it to handset.

Restore

Delete corresponding data on handset first.

Folders/Entries

Phone Book

- Phone Book entry Picture settings may be lost depending on image; copy images to Memory Card separately and copy them to handset after Phone Book is restored.

Messaging folders

- S! Mail Notices are restored as normal messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
- Restoring Messaging folders deletes auto sort keys.

• Calendar/Tasks

- Handset holds up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks. If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining entries will not be received.

• Bookmarks

- Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks are backed up. When restored, Streaming Bookmarks are saved in Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

• Content Keys

- Moving Keys to Memory Card creates a special file. Performing Backup again on the same Memory Card overwrites that file. Perform Restore beforehand.
- While Keys are on Memory Card, files are inaccessible.

■ Compatibility with Other SoftBank Handsets

• Importing data backed up on other SoftBank handsets

- Messages may not transfer depending on the size.
- Handset holds up to 500 messages between Drafts, Unsent Messages and Sent Messages. (Unsent Messages are not transferable.) If the limit is reached during a transfer, the remaining messages will not be received.
- Sky Mail may transfer as S! Mail depending on the SoftBank handset used for backup.

• Moving backed up data to other SoftBank handsets

- If spam filter is available on recipient handset, Spam Folder messages are saved in spam folder regardless of the setting. (If unavailable, they are saved as normal received messages.)
- SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved or only the first entered recipient remains if transferred from Drafts.

Handset to Memory Card

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Connectivity (☰) ▶ Memory Card ▶ Backup/Restore ▶ Backup

1 Enter Handset Code and press

2 Choose Yes and press

Offline Mode is set.

3 Select an item and press

For **Select All**, **Phone Book** or **Content Keys** confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** or **No** ▶ Press

To cancel, press **Cancel**.

Encode

Select whether to encode data to be backed up

■ Available for Phone Book, Messaging folders, Calendar and Tasks.
Default Off

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Connectivity (☰) ▶ Memory Card ▶ Backup/Restore ▶ Encode

Select **Phone Book**, **Messages** or **Calendar/Tasks** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **On** or **Off** ▶ Press

Memory Card to Handset

Restoring backed up content to handset overwrites current handset content (with the exception of Content Keys).

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Connectivity (☰) ▶ Memory Card ▶ Backup/Restore ▶ Restore

1 Enter Handset Code and press

2 Choose Yes and press

Offline Mode is set.

3 Select an item and press

- Some items may not be selected.

4 Select a file and press

- If there is more than one file, check the date of transfer to select.

Example: 070913XX indicates the file was transferred on September 13, 2007. (XX: 00 - 99 or aa - zz)

- For **Select All**, repeat Step 4 for each item. (To skip an item, press ,.)

To delete files on Memory Card, select one ▶ Press **Delete**
▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

5 Choose Yes and press

To cancel, press **Cancel**.

For **Select All**, confirmation appears. Choose **Yes** or **No** ▶ Press

Tip ▶ For Tasks, due dates that cannot be set on handset are overwritten as **No limit**.

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) is a standard specification for requesting prints from digital cameras. Select images from Memory Card and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services.

- DPOF does not support images obtained via the Internet, S! Mail, etc. (These images cannot be saved to DCIM folder.)
- If Memory Card capacity becomes insufficient while in use, a warning message appears. Delete files beforehand.
- For printing procedures, see the printer manual.

Note ▶

- DPOF settings made on other devices are unusable; delete existing settings to create new ones on handset.
- Some settings may not be supported depending on the printer or printing services.
- Process may take a while if print settings are made for many images.
- If image files are deleted or renamed on PCs or other devices, print settings change. Perform Reset Settings (P.11-7) and start over with settings.

Selecting Images & Prints

Main Menu

▶ Settings ➤ Connectivity (📶) ➤ Memory Card ➤
DPOF ➤ Number of Copies ➤ For Each Picture

1 Select a folder and press

Thumbnails appear.

2 Use to select an image and press **Count**

To open images, select one ➤ Press 

▪ Press  to return.

3 Enter a number of copies to print (00 - 99) and press

To return, press  ➤ Press 

To cancel, enter **00** ➤ Press 

4 Repeat Steps 2 - 3 for other images













5 Press **Done**

Print Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu

▶ Settings ➤ Connectivity (📶) ➤ Memory Card ➤
DPOF

For All Pictures Default: 1 Copy each	Apply a number to all DCF images to print the same number of copies Select Number of Copies ➤ Press  ➤ Select For All Pictures ➤ Press  ➤ Enter a number (01 - 99) ➤ Press 
Add Date Default: Off	Add dates to prints Select Settings ➤ Press  ➤ Select Add Date ➤ Press  ➤ Choose On or Off ➤ Press 
Index Print Default: Off	Create Index Print (a print with thumbnails) Select Settings ➤ Press  ➤ Select Index Print ➤ Press  ➤ Choose On (require) or Off ➤ Press 
Check Settings	View current print settings Select Check Settings ➤ Press 
Reset Settings	Reset DPOF settings Select Reset Settings ➤ Press  ➤ Choose Yes ➤ Press 

Mass Storage

Activate Mass Storage and connect handset to a PC via USB Cable to access Memory Card from the PC without removing the card from handset.

- Activating Mass Storage activates Offline Mode.
- Mass Storage is not available when battery is low, when an S! Application is paused or while Music Player is active.
- If handset is connected to a PC via USB Cable, disconnect it first.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Connectivity (☰)

1 Select **Mass Storage** and press

Calling not available during operation, OK? appears.

2 Choose **Yes** and press

3 Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable

4 To exit, press **Cancel**

5 Choose **Yes** and press

- Safely remove handset (recognized as removable hardware device) on the PC, then disconnect USB Cable.

12

Tools

Calendar	12-2	Countdown Timer	12-17
■ Opening Calendar	12-2	Expenses Memo	12-18
■ Saving Entries	12-4	■ Entering Expenses	12-18
■ Opening Entries	12-6	■ Checking Entries	12-18
■ Editing/Deleting Entries	12-7	■ Editing/Deleting Entries	12-18
Tasks	12-8	Scan Barcode	12-19
■ Saving Entries	12-8	■ Scanning Printed Barcodes	12-19
■ Opening Entries	12-9	■ Scanning during Text Entry	12-20
■ Editing/Deleting Entries	12-9	■ Using Scan Results	12-20
Alarm	12-10	Create QR Code	12-22
■ Setting Alarm	12-10	■ Creating QR Codes	12-22
■ Canceling & Reactivating Alarm	12-12	Text Scanner	12-23
■ Deleting Alarm	12-12	■ Scanning Text	12-23
World Clock	12-13	■ Scanning during Text Entry	12-24
Calculator	12-13	Phone Help	12-25
Voice Recorder	12-14		
■ Precautions	12-14		
■ Recording	12-15		
■ Playback	12-15		
■ Recording Setting	12-15		
Document Viewer	12-16		
Stopwatch	12-17		

Calendar

Opening Calendar

- Open Calendar in Month View, 2Month View, 6Month View or Week View.
- Calendar appears in Month View by default.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 1 (☰)

1 Select **Calendar** and press

Calendar of the current month opens.

- Press **Switch** to toggle view.
- Press to open Help (Key Assignments).
 - Press to return.



Calendar Window
(Month View)

Key Assignments

Key	Month - 6Month View	Week View
<input type="checkbox"/> (←)	Open the previous month*	Open the previous week
<input type="checkbox"/> (→)	Open the next month*	Open the next week
<input type="checkbox"/> (C)	Set Colour (By Date)	
<input type="checkbox"/> (T)	Go to (Today)	
<input type="checkbox"/> (S)	Find (By Subject)	
<input type="checkbox"/> (D)	Go to (Enter Date)	
<input type="checkbox"/> (G)	Find (By Category)	
<input type="checkbox"/> (←)	Select the previous/next week	Select the previous/next time block
<input type="checkbox"/> (→)	Select date	

*In 2Month View or 6Month View, view changes by two or six months, respectively.

Default View

- To select initial view, open Calendar and follow these steps.
 - Press **Options** ► **Select Calendar Settings** ►
 - Press ► **Select Default View** ► Press ►
 - **Select a type** ► Press

Customizing Calendar

Set Colour

Set Calendar date color

Default Sunday (and holiday): Red, Saturday: Blue, Others: Black

Main Menu

Tools → Tools 1 (☰) → Calendar

By Days of the Week

Press **Options** → Select **Calendar Settings** → Press → Select **Set Colour** → Press → Select **By Week** → Press → Select a day → Press → Select a color → Press

By Date

Select a day → Press **Options** → Select **Calendar Settings** → Press → Select **Set Colour** → Press → Select **By Date** → Press → Select a color → Press

- To use the color set for the day of the week, select **No Setting** → Press
- To reset, press **Options** → Select **Calendar Settings** → Press → Select **Set Colour** → Press → Select **Reset Colour** → Press → Select an option → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

Set Holiday

Remove/restore preset holidays or save additional holidays

Main Menu

Tools → Tools 1 (☰) → Calendar → Options (☰)
→ Calendar Settings → Set Holiday

Removing/Restoring Holidays

Use to select **Set My Holidays** or **Set Public Holidays** → Select a holiday → Press to check or uncheck

- To check or uncheck all, press **All** / **All**.
- Alternatively, press **Options** to select **Check All** or **Uncheck All**.

Saving Additional Holidays

Use to select **Set My Holidays** → Select **<empty>** → Press → Enter name → Press → Enter date → Press → Select frequency → Press → Press **Save**

Editing Additional Holidays

Use to select **Set My Holidays** → Select a holiday → Press **Options** → Select **Edit** → Press → Select **Name:** → Press → Enter name → Press → Select **Date:** → Press → Enter date → Press → Select frequency → Press → Press **Save**

Tip ▶

- Preset holidays cannot be deleted or edited.
- Save up to ten additional holidays.

Stamp

Create new entry quickly by entering a stamp

■ Available in Month View.

Main Menu

Tools → Tools 1 (☰) → Calendar

Select a date → Press → Select a stamp → Press

Saving Entries

Organize daily, weekly, monthly and yearly schedule.
Save up to 300 entries between Calendar and Tasks (P.12-8).

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (☰) ▶ Calendar

1 Enter subject

- 1 Select a day and press
- 2 Select <Add New Entry> and press
- 3 Enter subject and press

- Enter up to 32 characters. Subject is mandatory.

2 Enter start/end date/time

- 1 Enter start date/time and press
 - For all-day entries, press Check Press ▶
Skip ahead to Step 4
 - Alarm is not available for all-day entries.

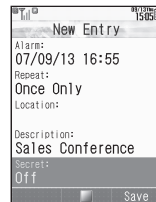
- 2 Select *End:* and press
- 3 Enter end date/time and press

3 Set Alarm

- 1 Select *Alarm:* and press
- 2 Select *Alarm Time:* and press
- 3 Select from *At Start Time* to *1 hour before* and press
 - For custom Alarm Time, select *Other* ▶ Press ▶
Enter date/time ▶ Press
 - To set tone/video and duration, see P.12-5.
- 4 Press OK

4 Enter details

- 1 Select *Description:* and press
- 2 Enter task details (up to 128 characters) and press
 - For other items, see "Other Schedule Entry Items" below and "Calendar Options" on P.12-5.



New Entry Window

5 Press Save

■ Other Schedule Entry Items

Category	Select <i>Category:</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a Category ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Location	Select <i>Location:</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Enter location (up to 16 characters) ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>

Tip ▶ (Alarm set) or (Alarm unset) appears on scheduled day. (Indicator disappears after scheduled time.)

Calendar Options

Follow these steps after Step 4 on **P.12-4**. After each setting, New Entry window returns. Complete other settings.

<p>Secret Default: Off</p>	<p>Restrict access to entries</p> <p>Select Secret: ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Choose On ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To cancel, select Secret: ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Choose Off ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Activate Show Secret Data (P.9-23) to open/edit Secret entries.
<p>Assign Tone/Video Default: Alert 1</p>	<p>Set a tone/video to sound/play at Alarm Time</p> <p>Preset Sounds</p> <p>Select Alarm: ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select Assign Tone/Video: ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select Preset Sounds ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select a tone ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> OK</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To play tones, select one and press <input type="checkbox"/> Play. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press <input type="checkbox"/> Stop to stop. <p>Data Folder Files</p> <p>Select Alarm: ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select Assign Tone/Video: ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select Ring Songs-Tones, Music, Videos or Flash® Ringtones ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select a file ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> OK</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To play files, select one and press <input type="checkbox"/> Play. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press <input type="checkbox"/> to stop.
<p>Duration Default: 10 seconds</p>	<p>Set how long Alarm operates</p> <p>Select Alarm: ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select Duration: ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select time ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> OK</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For custom Duration, select Other ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Enter time ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> OK

<p>Repeat Default: Once Only</p>	<p>Assign schedule type (once only, daily, weekly, monthly or yearly) for each event</p> <p>Once Only Schedule</p> <p>Select Repeat: ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select Once Only ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Repetitive Schedule</p> <p>Select Repeat: ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select from Day to Every Year ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Enter repeat time (00 - 99 times) ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Start date and time are reflected in the items. For Month, if the day is 29, 30 or 31, entries are saved for the valid months only.
---	--

At Alarm Time

Alarm is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

- Alarm may not activate as set depending on other handset settings.
- While Alarm is activated, press to open the entry.

<p style="text-align: center;">Stopping Alarm</p>	
<p style="text-align: center;">Press <input type="checkbox"/> Stop, <input type="checkbox"/>, <input type="checkbox"/>, <input type="checkbox"/>, <input type="checkbox"/>, <input type="checkbox"/> or <input type="checkbox"/>.</p>	

- Tip** ➔
- Alarm Time will not be announced during a call or while recording video. End the call or exit mobile camera to reactivate Alarm.
 - Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after the call ends.

Alarm Volume, Vibration & Manner

Alarm Settings

Select Alarm Volume, Vibration and Manner settings

Default Alarm Volume: Level 3, Vibration: Off, For Manner Mode: Do not Ring

Main Menu

Tools → Tools 1 (☰) → Calendar → Options (☰)
→ Alarm Settings

Alarm Volume

Select **Alarm Volume**: → Press → Use to adjust level → Press

Vibration

Select **Vibration**: → Press → Select **On, Link to Sound or Off** → Press

For Manner Mode

Select **For Manner Mode**: → Press → Select **Ring or Do not Ring** → Press

For **Ring**, choose **Yes** → Press

Opening Entries

Main Menu → Tools → Tools 1 (☰) → Calendar

1 Select a date and press

- To search entries by subject, press **Options** → Select **Find** → Press → Select **By Subject** → Press → Enter search text → Press
- To search entries by Category, press **Options** → Select **Find** → Press → Select **By Category** → Press → Select a Category → Press
- To specify date, press **Options** → Select **Go to** → Press → Select **Enter Date** → Press → Enter date → Press
- To open current date, press **Options** → Select **Go to** → Press → Select **Today** → Press

2 Select an entry and press

3 Press to return

Memory Status

■ After Step 1 above, press **Options** → Select **Memory Status** → Press

Unlock Temporarily

■ For temporary access to Secret entries, open Calendar and follow these steps.
Press **Options** → Select **Unlock Temporarily** → Press → Enter Handset Code → Press

Editing/Deleting Entries

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (☰) ▶ Calendar

Edit	<p>Edit entries</p> <p>Select a date ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ▶ Select <i>Edit</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select an item ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ (Edit in the same manner as saving entries) ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Save</p>
This Appointment/ All This Day	<p>Delete one entry or all entries of the day</p> <p>One Entry</p> <p>Select a date ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ▶ Select <i>Delete</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <i>This Appointment</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <i>Yes</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>All Entries of the Day</p> <p>Select a date ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ▶ Select <i>Delete</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <i>All This Day</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <i>Yes</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p>
All This Week/ Up to Last Week	<p>In Week View, delete all entries in the week or up to the end of the previous week</p> <p>Week</p> <p>Select a week ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ▶ Select <i>Delete</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <i>All This Week</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <i>Yes</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Up to the End of Previous Week</p> <p>Select a week ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ▶ Select <i>Delete</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <i>Up to Last Week</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <i>Yes</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p>

All This Month/ Up to Last Month	<p>In Month View, delete all entries in the month or up to the end of the previous month</p> <p>Month</p> <p>Select a month ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ▶ Select <i>Delete</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <i>All This Month</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <i>Yes</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Up to the End of Previous Month</p> <p>Select a month ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ▶ Select <i>Delete</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <i>Up to Last Month</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <i>Yes</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p>
All This 2Months/ All This 6Months	<p>Delete all entries in two or six months on Display</p> <p>Select a month ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ▶ Select <i>Delete</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <i>All This 2Months</i> or <i>All This 6Months</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <i>Yes</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p>
All Appointments	<p>Delete all entries</p> <p>Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ▶ Select <i>Delete</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <i>All Appointments</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <i>Yes</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p>

Deleting Repetitive Entries

■ A confirmation appears except for *All Appointments*. To delete, follow these steps.

Choose Yes ▶ Press

- To retain repetitive entries, choose *No* ▶ Press

Tasks

Save event with deadlines.

- Check completed tasks (P.12-9).
- Save up to 300 entries between Tasks and Calendar (P.12-4).

Saving Entries

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 1 (☰) ► Tasks

1 Enter subject

1 Select <Add New Entry> and press

2 Enter subject and press

- Enter up to 32 characters. Subject is mandatory.

2 Enter due date/time and press

- To set no limit, press Check ► Press ► Skip ahead to Step 4

3 Set Alarm

1 Select *Alarm:* and press

2 Select *Alarm Time:* and press

3 Select from *At Due Time to 1 hour before* and press

- For custom Alarm Time, select *Other* ► Press ► Enter date/time ► Press

4 Press OK

4 Set priority

1 Select *Priority:* and press

2 Select *Normal, High or Low* and press

5 Enter details

1 Select *Description:* and press

2 Enter task details (up to 128 characters) and press

- For other items, see "Task Options" below.



New Entry Window

6 Press Save

Task Options

Set these options after Step 5 above. For procedures, see P.12-5.

Assign Tone/Video	Set a tone/video to sound/play at Alarm Time
Duration	Set how long Alarm operates
Secret	Restrict access to entries

At Alarm Time

Alarm is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

- For details, see P.12-5.
- To set Alarm Settings, follow these steps then perform corresponding steps in "Alarm Settings" on P.12-6.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 1 (☰) ► Tasks ► Options (☰) ► Alarm Settings

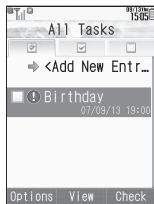
Opening Entries

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 1 (☰)

1 Select Tasks and press **☐**

- Use **☐** to open completed or uncompleted task list.

- To search entries by subject, press **☐**
Options ► Select **Find** ► Press **☐** ►
Select **By Subject** ► Press **☐** ► Enter
search text ► Press **☐**
- To search by due date, press **☐** Options
► Select **Find** ► Press **☐** ► Select **By
Due Date** ► Press **☐** ► Enter due date
► Press **☐**



2 Select an entry and press **☐**

3 Press **☐** to return

Marking Completed Tasks

- After Step 1 above, select an unchecked entry (☐) ►
Press **☐** **Check**
- To cancel checks, select a checked entry (☑) ►
Press **☐** **Uncheck**

Unlock Temporarily

- For temporary access to Secret entries, follow these steps.
After Step 1 above, press **☐** Options ► Select **Unlock
Temporarily** ► Press **☐** ► Enter Handset Code ►
Press **☐**

Memory Status

- After Step 1 above, press **☐** Options ► Select **Memory
Status** ► Press **☐**

Editing/Deleting Entries

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 1 (☰) ► Tasks

Edit	Edit entries Select an entry ► Press ☐ Options ► Select Edit ► Press ☐ ► Select an item ► Press ☐ ► (Edit in the same manner as saving entries) ► Press ☐ Save
Delete	Delete one entry Select an entry ► Press ☐ Options ► Select Delete ► Press ☐ ► Select This Task ► Press ☐ ► Choose Yes ► Press ☐
All Comp. Tasks	Delete all completed tasks Press ☐ Options ► Select Delete ► Press ☐ ► Select All Comp. Tasks ► Press ☐ ► Choose Yes ► Press ☐
All Tasks	Delete all tasks Press ☐ Options ► Select Delete ► Press ☐ ► Select All Tasks ► Press ☐ ► Enter Handset Code ► Press ☐ ► Choose Yes ► Press ☐

Alarm

Setting Alarm

Set Alarm to sound at a specific time each day or on specific days of the week. Save up to 5 Alarm settings.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (☰) ▶ Alarms

1 Select **-- : --** and press **■**

2 Enter time and press **■**

- Alarm Options: right

3 Select **Repeat:** and press **■**

4 **Daily**

1 Select **Every Day (All)** and press **■**

Specified Day of the Week

1 Select **Selected Days** and press **■**

- To select all, press **☑** **Options** ▶ Select **Check All** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Skip ahead to Step **4**

2 Select a day of the week and press **■**

The day is set and **☑** appears.

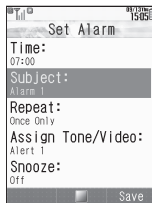
- To cancel, highlight the selected day and press **■**.

3 Repeat Step **2** to select more

4 Press **☑** **OK** when finished

One Time Alarm

1 Select **Once Only** and press **■**



Alarm Settings

5 Press **☑** **Save**

Alarm is set.

- For more settings, start over from Step 1.

6 Press **☰** to exit

Handset returns to Standby and **☰** appears.

Alarm Options

Follow these steps after Step 2 on the left. After each setting, Alarm settings window returns. Complete other settings.

Subject Default Alarm 1 - Alarm 5	Save entry name Select Subject: ▶ Press ■ ▶ Enter name (up to nine characters) ▶ Press ■ • Delete default names (Alarm 1 - Alarm 5) first.
Assign Tone/Video Default Alert 1	Set a tone/video to sound/play at Alarm Time Preset Sounds Select Assign Tone/Video: ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select Preset Sounds ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select a tone ▶ Press ■ ■ To play tones, select one and press ☑ Play . ■ Press ☑ Stop to stop. Data Folder Files Select Assign Tone/Video: ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select Ring Songs-Tones, Music, Videos or Flash® Ringtones ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select a file ▶ Press ■ ■ To play files, select one and press ☑ Play . ■ Press ☑ to stop.

Custom Screen	Set Custom Screen tone/video to sound/play at Alarm Time Select <i>Assign Tone/Video</i>: ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select <i>Custom Screen</i> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> To play files, select Custom Screen and press <input type="checkbox"/> Play . <input type="checkbox"/> Press <input type="checkbox"/> Stop to stop. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Custom Screen is selectable when a downloaded Custom Screen containing music files is active.
Snooze Default Off	Set Alarm to activate at set intervals after initial Alarm Time Select <i>Snooze</i>: ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select an interval ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> For custom intervals, select Other ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Enter interval ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Alarm Volume Default Level 5	Set volume from seven levels Select <i>Alarm Volume</i>: ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Use <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ to adjust level ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Vibration Default Off	Set handset to vibrate at Alarm Time Select <i>Vibration</i>: ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select <i>On, Link to Sound</i> or <i>Off</i> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Link to Sound: P.9-3
Duration Default 10 seconds	Set how long Alarm operates Select <i>Duration</i>: ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select duration ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> For custom Duration, select Other ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Enter time ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>

Alarm Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (📱) ➔ Alarms

For Manner Mode Default Do not Ring	Select Manner mode ringer setting Select <i>Settings</i> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select <i>For Manner Mode</i> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select <i>Ring</i> or <i>Do not Ring</i> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> For Ring , choose Yes ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Link To World Clk Default Off	Set to activate Alarm based on World Clock (P.12-13) time Select <i>Settings</i> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select <i>Link To World Clk</i> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Choose <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>

At Alarm Time

Alarm is activated, sounding/vibrating, etc. according to related settings.

Image appears if System Graphics (P.9-5) is set. However, video and SMAF file images take priority over System Graphics.





Stopping Alarm

Press **Stop**, , , , ,  or .

- Alarm activates only when handset is on at Alarm Time.

Snooze

- When Snooze is set, Alarm repeats at the set interval.
 - Accept incoming calls. End the call to reactivate Snooze.
 - If other Alarm Time arrives while Snoozing, the other Alarm is activated only after Snooze is canceled.
- To cancel Snooze, follow these steps while Alarm is activated or Snoozing.

Press **Stop**, ,  or  **Choose Yes** **Press** .

 - Snooze is canceled automatically 60 minutes after initial Alarm Time.

Tip ▶ Alarm Time will not be announced during a call or while recording video. End the call or exit mobile camera to reactivate Alarm.

Canceling & Reactivating Alarm

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (☰) ▶ Alarms

1 Select an entry and press  **Options**

2 *Canceling*



1 Select **Switch Off** and press 

 disappears.

- Reactivate Alarm to use the same settings.

Reactivating

1 Select **Switch On** and press 








 To change settings, select an entry ▶ Press  ▶ Edit settings

- For details, see procedure for saving entries.

Deleting Alarm

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (☰) ▶ Alarms

Reset Alarm	Delete Alarm settings one by one Select an entry ▶ Press  Options ▶ Select Reset Alarm ▶ Press  ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press 
	Delete all Alarm settings Select an entry ▶ Press  Options ▶ Select Clear All ▶ Press  ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press  ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press 

World Clock

Display local date/time (P.9-16) and the date/time of another area in the world.

- To set World Clock to appear in Standby, see P.9-6 "Clock/Calendar."
- Time Zone is set to **Tokyo** by default.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (☰)

1 Select **World Clock** and press [Enter]

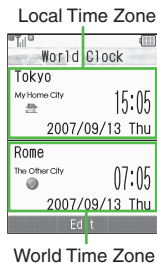
World Clock appears.

2 Press [Enter]

3 Select **Set Time Zone** and press [Enter]

4 Use [Left] to specify an area and press [Enter]

- ▶ To add Time Zone, press [Envelope] **Custom** ▶
- ▶ Enter city name (up to 16 characters)
- ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Use [Up/Down] to select + or -
- ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ Enter time difference
- ▶ Press [Enter]



5 Press [Exit] to exit

Daylight Saving

- ▶ Activate Daylight Saving to advance the selected area's time by one hour. Follow these steps after Step 2.
- ▶ **Select Daylight Saving** ▶ Press [Enter] ▶ **Choose On or Off** ▶ Press [Enter]

Calculator

Use Calculator for basic arithmetic (up to 12 digits) and percentage calculation, or currency conversion (Money Converter).

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 1 (☰)

1 Select **Calculator** and press [Enter]

Calculator opens.

- Alternatively, enter digits in Standby and press [Calculator] to open Calculator.
- Use Keypad to enter digits, and the keys in the table below for calculation.

- ▶ To copy the result, press [Envelope] **Options** ▶ Select **Copy** ▶ Press [Enter]

+ (Add)	[+]	CM (Clear Memory)	[CM]
- (Subtract)	[-]	RM (Recall Memory)	[RM]
x (Multiply)	[x]	M+ (Add Memory)	[M+]
÷ (Divide)	[÷]	. (Decimal)	[.]
= (Equal)	[=]	+/- (Switch)	[+/-]
C.CE (Clear)	[C.CE]	% (Percent)	[%]

¹While **0** appears, press to return to Tools 1 menu.

²Press [Envelope] **Options** and select %.

2 Press [Exit] to exit

Money Converter

■ To change exchange rate, open Calculator and follow these steps.

Press **Options** → **Select Money Converter** → Press

→ **Select Exchange Rate** → Press → **Select Domestic or Foreign** → Press → **Enter rate** → Press

- Exchange rate is 1 for both conversions by default.

■ To convert foreign currencies, follow these steps.

Enter amount of money and press **Options** →

Select Money Converter → Press → **Select To Domestic or To Foreign** → Press

- Conversion is based on the preset exchange rate.

- Tip** ►
- Entered numbers, results and numbers saved in Memory are not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.
 - Clear Memory before starting Memory calculations.
 - Numbers saved in Memory remain even if Calculator is closed, but are cleared when handset power is turned off.

Voice Recorder

Use Microphone to record short voice memos and save files on handset or Memory Card; record and save longer recordings on Memory Card.

- Modes:

	Recording Time	Storage Media
For Message	Up to approx. three minutes (attachable to S! Mail)	Handset or Memory Card ¹
Extended Voice	Up to 99 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds	Memory Card ²

¹Specify storage media before recording, or set handset to ask each time; when set to ask, always record with Memory Card inserted.

²Insert Memory Card to record in Extended Voice mode.

- **For Message** is set by default.




Precautions

- When battery is low, Voice Recorder does not activate. If battery runs low while recording in Extended Voice mode, **Battery low. Please connect to charger!** appears and Voice Recorder shuts off.
- Conversations during calls cannot be recorded.
- If incompatible microphone is connected, recording may fail.
- Avoid shocks to handset; may cause noise or skipping.
- Recording window may take longer to open as more Voice files are saved on Memory Card.

Recording

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 2 (T2)

1 Select **Voice Recorder** and press







- To switch mode, press  **Options** ▶ Select **Record Time** ▶ Press  ▶ Select **For Message** or **Extended Voice** ▶ Press 
- To switch storage media, see right.

2 Press


Recording starts.

3 **For Message**

1 Press to stop

- Recording stops automatically when maximum recording time is reached.
- To play the recording, select **Playback** ▶ Press 
 - Press  to pause.
 - Press  to return.
- To start over without saving, press  ▶ Repeat from Step 2
- To send via S! Mail, select **Save and Send** ▶ Press 
 - Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-4.)
 - When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ▶ Press 

2 Select **Save** and press

- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location ▶ Press 

Extended Voice

1 Press to stop

Tip ▶ Alarm is disabled while recording, and starts after Voice Recorder stops/closes.



Playback

Play sounds from Speaker, or use Headphones.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 2 (T2) ▶ Voice Recorder



1 Press **Options**

2 Select **Ring Songs/Tones** and press

- To switch between handset and Memory Card, press  **Options** ▶ Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to MemoryCard** ▶ Press 
- To delete files, see P.8-6.

3 Select a file and press

Playback starts.

- Press  (up) or  (down) to adjust volume.

Tip ▶




- Playback stops for incoming calls or Alarm.
- A notification appears for incoming mail without interrupting playback.

Recording Setting

Save Recording To Select storage media for **For Message**

Default Phone Memory

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 2 (T2) ▶ Voice Recorder

Press  **Options** ▶ Select **Save Recording To** ▶ Press  ▶ Select **Phone Memory, Memory Card or Ask Each Time** ▶ Press 

- Set to **Ask Each Time** to select media after every recording.

Document Viewer

Open PC documents on handset.






















- Supported File Formats:
 - PDF (.pdf)
 - Microsoft Excel® (.xls)
 - Microsoft® Word (.doc)
 - Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)
- Open documents of up to 10 MB each. (Some documents may not open depending on content.)
- Some files may take time to open or may not appear correctly.
- While viewing documents on an external device, toggle display between device and handset (Step 2 on **P.9-13**).
- On PCs, save documents to this Memory Card directory:
 - PRIVATE/MYFOLDER/MY Items/Other Documents

Main Menu ► Tools ► **Tools 2** (F2) ► Document Viewer

1 Select a file and press

Tip ► Download files of up to 300 KB via Yahoo! Keitai or up to 500 KB via PC Site Browser.

Key Assignments

	Zoom to view the whole page
	Rotate page 90 degrees counterclockwise (press again to return)
	Scroll up/down
	Scroll left/right
	View upper left portion of page
	View document in full screen
	View upper right portion of page
	Zoom out
	View page center
	Zoom in
	View lower left portion of page
	Jump to specified page (Enter page number ► Press )
	View lower right portion of page
	View a summary of key assignments
	Open the next page
	Open the previous page
	Zoom to fit width
 (Long Press)	Magnify portions of document with Loupe <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To zoom in/out with Loupe, press  Options ► Select Zoom In or Zoom Out ► Press 

Stopwatch

Record elapsed time for up to 24 hours (23 hours 59 minutes 59.9 seconds) in 0.1-second increments.

- Save times (including the last four lap times) to handset Notepad (P.3-10).
- Stopwatch is disabled when battery is low. Stopwatch ends when battery runs low.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 2 (T) ► Stopwatch

1 Press [Enter]

Stopwatch starts.

To record Lap times, press [Enter] LAP.

2 Press [Enter] to stop

Press [Enter] to resume.

To save the records to Notepad, press [Enter] Options ► Select **Save to Notepad** ► Press [Enter]

To clear the records, press [Enter] Options ► Select **Reset** ► Press [Enter]

3 To exit, press [CLEAR/BACK] then choose Yes and press [Enter]

- Tip ►
- Records are deleted when Stopwatch is canceled. Save records to Notepad.
 - Stopwatch setting is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.
 - Alarm is disabled while Stopwatch window is open, but is reactivated automatically when handset returns to Standby.

Countdown Timer

Set Countdown Timer up to 60 minutes in 1-second increments. Tone sounds when set time elapses.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 2 (T) ► Countdown Timer

1 Enter time (00:01 - 60:00) and press [Enter]

To change time, press [Enter] Edit ► Enter time ► Press [Enter]

2 Press [Enter]

Countdown starts.

3 Press [Enter] to stop countdown

Press [Enter] to resume.

To reset, stop countdown and press [Enter] Reset.

4 To exit, press [CLEAR/BACK] then choose Yes and press [Enter]

Countdown Timer End

- Tone volume depends on the setting in "Ringtone Volume" on P.9-2 (**General Volume** in Step 2).
 - Tone stops automatically after 60 seconds. Press [Enter] Stop to stop manually.
 - In Manner mode, Manner settings take priority.
 - When the set timer time has elapsed during a call, tone sounds after [Enter] is pressed to end the call.

- Tip ►
- Countdown is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.
 - Alarm is disabled while Countdown Timer window is open, but is reactivated automatically when handset returns to Standby.

Expenses Memo

Use Expenses Memo to add expenses, such as travel expenses. Enter up to 30 entries (up to 29,999,999.70 yen in total, 999,999.99 yen per entry).

Entering Expenses

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 3* (☰) ▶ *Expenses Memo* ▶ *Add New Expense*

1 Enter amount and press **■**

2 Select a Category and press **■**

- To enter custom Category name, select **Other** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Enter name ▶ Press **■**

In Standby

■ Enter amount ▶ Press **□** ▶ Press **■** ▶ Select a Category ▶ Press **■**

Edit Category Rename Categories

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 3* (☰) ▶ *Expenses Memo* ▶ *Edit Category*

Select a Category ▶ Press **■** ▶ **Edit** ▶ Press **■**

- Enter up to 14 characters.

Checking Entries

Main Menu ▶ *Tools* ▶ *Tools 3* (☰) ▶ *Expenses Memo*

1 Select **Totals** and press **■**

Entry list appears.

- Use **□** to scroll entries.

2 Press **⏪** to return

Totals	
1/07/09/13 12:30	
Dining	1980
2/07/09/13 15:05	
Miscell...	5040
Total	7020
Options	Change

Editing/Deleting Entries


Follow these steps after Step 1 above.

Change Category	Select an entry ▶ Press ■ ▶ Select a Category ▶ Press ■
Change Amount	Select an entry ▶ Press ⓧ Options ▶ Select Change Amount ▶ Press ■ ▶ Edit ▶ Press ■
Delete Item	Select an entry ▶ Press ⓧ Options ▶ Select Delete Item ▶ Press ■ ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press ■
Delete All	Press ⓧ Options ▶ Select Delete All ▶ Press ■ ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ■ ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press ■

Scan Barcode


Scan printed barcodes (UPC/JAN or QR Codes) with mobile camera or read barcode images saved in Data Folder.

- In Continuous mode, scan up to 50 UPC (JAN) or 16 QR Codes at one time. In some cases, continuous scans may be disrupted depending on the codes.
- Zoom is not available.


- Note** ▶
- Scan may fail if:
 - The barcode is dirty or unclear
 - The barcode is scanned under inadequate light
 - Multiple barcodes are captured at one time
 - Barcode menu will not open if music is playing; when **Stop music?** appears, choose **Yes** and press  to proceed.

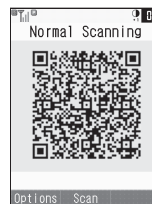
- Tip** ▶
- A UPC (Universal Product Code) or JAN (Japanese Article Number) is a series of varying width vertical lines (bars) and spaces. Bars and spaces together are elements, combinations of which represent different numbers. Handset cannot read other one-dimensional barcodes (ITF Code, Code39, Codabar/NW-7, etc.).
 - A QR (Quick Response) Code is a matrix symbology consisting of an array of nominally square cells, which allows omni-directional reading of up to 4,296 alphanumerics and byte data, as well as kanji and kana.

Scanning Printed Barcodes

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 3** () ▶ **Barcode** ▶ **Scan Barcode**

1 Frame barcode in the center of Display



- Slide Portrait/Macro Selector to Macro ().
- Hold handset approximately 10 cm away from barcode.







2 Press

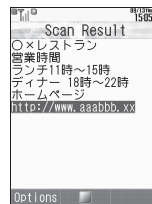
Mobile camera scans the barcode.

- If recognition takes time, move handset slowly and adjust the distance from barcode.





 Press  **Cancel** to stop scan ▶ Start over from Step 1

3 Barcode recognition tone sounds and scan results appear

-  Using Scan Results: **P.12-20**
-  To start over, press  ▶ Choose **Yes**
 - ▶ Press  ▶ Repeat from Step 1




Scan Operations

Mobile Light	Press  to toggle On/Off
Exposure	Use  to adjust brightness
Help	Press  (Press  to return.)

Continuous Mode

- After scanning, **Scan completed. Scan new?** appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).

Split Data

- After scanning, **Split data. Scan next QR code?** appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).
 - Scan results do not appear until all split data is scanned.
 - The scanning status appears on the first line of Display. For example,  indicates that 1 of 4 codes has been scanned.

Scanning during Text Entry

Scan Code


















Scan barcodes during text entry and insert scan results into current cursor position

In a text entry window, press  **Options** → **Select Scan** → Press  → **Select Scan Code** → Press  → **Frame barcode in the center of Display** → Press  → Press 

- To use a part of text, press  **Cut** → Select the first character of text → Press  → Select the end point → Press 

Note → Scanning during text entry is not available during calls or when an S! Application is active.

Using Scan Results

Place Calls¹	Select a number starting with TEL:² → Press  → The number appears → Press 
Send Mail³	Select a mail address including @ → Press  → Complete and send message (Perform from Step 6 on P.14-4.)
Quote & Send Mail	Press  Options → Select Send Message → Press  → Press  → Select S! Mail or SMS⁴ → Press  → Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-4 or on P.14-11.)
Save to Phone Book^{1, 3}	Select a number starting with TEL:² or mail address including @ → Press  Options → Select Save to Ph.Book → Press  → Perform Step 4 on P.4-7
Access Internet Sites⁵	Select a URL starting with http:// or rtsp:// → Press 
Save to Data Folder (Images & Melodies)	Select an image or melody file → Press  Options → Select To Data Folder → Press 
Saving	Press  Options → Select Save → Press  <ul style="list-style-type: none">Save up to 10 items. To open saved items, see P.12-21 "Scanned Results."
Use for System Graphics	Select an image → Press  Options → Select As System → Press  → Select an item → Press 

Copy Text	Text	Press Options → Select Copy → Press → Select the first character of text → Press → Select the end point → Press
	URL ⁵	Select a URL starting with http:// or rtsp:// → Press Options → Select Copy URL → Press
	Mail Address ³	Select a mail address including @ → Press Options → Select Copy Address → Press
	Phone Number ¹	Select a number starting with TEL . ² → Press Options → Select Copy Telephone → Press
Wallpaper	Select an image → Press Options → Perform from Step 3 in "Wallpaper" on P.8-7	
Open Images or Play Melodies	Select an image or melody file → Press	
Open Properties	Select an image or melody file → Press Options → Select Details → Press	

¹Available when text is in **TEL:*** format.

²Text strings of 10 to 32 digits starting with 0 are recognized as phone numbers.

³Available when text is in ***@*** format.

⁴S! Mail Composition window opens automatically if text exceeds the SMS character limit.

⁵Available when text is in **http://*** or **rtsp://*** format.

***** represents one or more alphanumerics.

MEMORY: or MAILTO:

- When **MEMORY:** or **MAILTO:** appears in scan results, press to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Phone Book Details or SMS/S! Mail messages. However, text after an invalid character is not underlined and is not copied.

Open Barcode Read saved barcode images in Data Folder

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 3** () ▶ **Barcode** ▶ **Open Barcode**

Select a barcode image → Press

■ Split Data: **P.12-20**

- When scanning fails, press → Select next barcode image manually → Press

Note ▶ Some barcodes may be invalid.

Scanned Results Open files saved in Scanned Results

Main Menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tools 3** () ▶ **Barcode** ▶ **Scanned Results**

Select a file → Press

■ To open properties, select a file → Press **Options** → Select **Details** → Press

■ Press to return.

■ To rename files, select one → Press **Options** → Select **Rename** → Press → Enter name → Press

■ To delete files, select one → Press **Options** → Select **Delete** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

- Opened results cannot be re-saved.
- Some files may not open.

Create QR Code

Create QR Codes from entered text, Phone Book, Pictures, Ring Songs-Tones, Notepad or Other Documents.

- Save up to the equivalent of 513 digits, 311 alphanumerics or 131 kanji per QR Code.
- Large items are divided into maximum of 16 QR Codes.
- Created QR Codes are saved to Data Folder (Pictures). To open them, see **P.8-3**.

Creating QR Codes

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 3 (☰) ▶ Barcode ▶ Create QR Code

- 1 Select *Phone Book, Text Input or Data Folder* and press**
- 2 Select an entry, enter text or select a file and press**
Created QR Code appears.
- 3 Press**
QR Code is saved.

Switching Storage Media

- While created QR Code appears, press **Options** ▶
Select Save To ▶ Press ▶ **Select Phone or Memory Card** ▶ Press

Attaching to S! Mail

- While created QR Code appears, press **Options** ▶ **Select Send As** ▶ Press ▶ **Perform from Step 3 on P.14-4**

Tip ▶ QR Code creation is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

Text Scanner

Scan text (URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers or roman letters) with mobile camera.

- Scan up to 256 characters continuously.
- Scan up to 60 single-byte characters within 3 lines. Scanning over 35 characters at one time may yield poor results.
- Some symbols may not be read.
- Zoom is not available.

Note ► • Barcode menu to Text Scanner will not open if music is playing; when **Stop music?** appears, choose **Yes** and press **■** to proceed.
• Text Scanner will not activate if an S! Application is active.

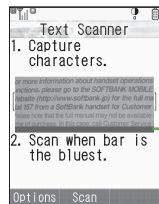
Tip ► Text mode is set to **Auto** each time Text Scanner is activated. Change the mode if text is distorted in **Auto** (such as white text in black background).

Scanning Text

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tools 3 (☰) ► Barcode ► Scan Text

1 Frame text on Display

- Adjust to frame text in []. Letters at the ends may be distorted.
- Slide Portrait/Macro Selector according to text size.
- Hold handset approximately 10 cm away from text.
- Use Focus Adjustment Bar as a guide (better focus in darker blue).



Focus Adjustment Bar

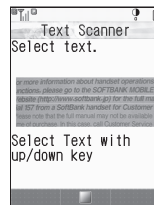
2 Press **■**

Text Scanner reads the text.

Press **BACK** to stop scan ► Start over from Step 1

3 Use **↑** to select a line and press **■**

• Text Scanner reads one line per scan.



Scan Operations

Mobile Light	Press #*/# to toggle On/Off
Exposure	Use [] to adjust brightness
Reversed Text	Press [] Options → Select Reversed Text → Press [] → Select Auto, Normal or Reversed → Press []
Help	Press 0-% (Press [] to return.)

4 Scan results appear

Handset automatically detects text type; if incorrect, change mode.

- If text exceeds limit, results appear with overage truncated.
 - To change mode, press **[] Options** → Select **Change Mode** → Press **[]** → Select a type → Press **[]** (Scan results and alternatives list change accordingly.)
 - To edit, press **[] Options** → Select **Select/Edit** → Press **[]** → Use **[]** to select the character to edit → Use **[]** to select an alternative from the list or enter the correction directly from Keypad
 - To start over, press **[]** → Choose **Yes** → Press **[]** → Repeat from Step 1

5 Press **[]**

- Using Scan Results: **P.12-20**

Scanning More Text

■ After Step 5, press **[] Options** → **Select Continue Part or Scan More** → Press **[]**

- Select **Continue Part** to enter additional text; select **Scan More** to enter text after a line break.
- **Continue Part** and **Scan More** are disabled once 256 characters have been scanned.

Scanning during Text Entry

Text Scanner

Scan text during text entry and insert scan results into current cursor position

In a text entry window, press **[] Options** → **Select Scan** → Press **[]** → **Select Text Scanner** → Press **[]** → **Frame text in the center of Display** → Press **[]** → **Select a line** → Press **[]** → Press **[]**

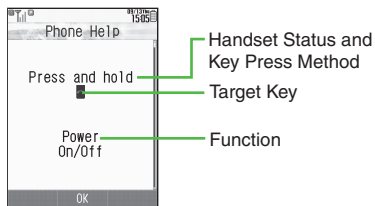
Phone Help

Learn when/how to use Keypad functions/shortcuts.
Most Phone Help functions are inaccessible from menu items.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tools 3 (☰)

1 Select **Phone Help** and press **☐**

Phone Help window opens.



2 Press **☐** to toggle guides

- Alternatively, press **#*#** or ***#*#**.

3 Press **☐** to return

13

Optional Services

Overview	13-2
■ Checking Service Status	13-2
Call Forwarding	13-3
Voicemail	13-4
■ Missed Call Notification	13-5
Call Waiting	13-5
Conference Call	13-6
Call Barring	13-6
■ Restricting Outgoing Calls	13-7
■ Restricting Incoming Calls	13-7
■ Changing Network Password	13-7
■ Rejecting a Call	13-8
Caller ID	13-8

Overview

- When **out** appears, access services from a touch-tone landline.
- For more about optional services, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Call Forwarding	When you know you won't be able to receive calls made to handset, automatically divert incoming calls to another phone number (P.13-3)
Voicemail	Set handset to forward all or all unanswered calls to Voicemail Center. Access caller messages from handset in service area or from a touch-tone phone anywhere (P.13-4). ■ Missed Call Notification Records of calls missed while handset is off/ out-of-range and Voicemail is active.
Call Waiting*	Call Waiting alerts you to incoming calls when the line is already engaged. After the tone, place the current call on hold and answer the second, or alternate between calls (P.13-5).
Conference Call*	Open a second line while the first is engaged. Switch back and forth between two lines or talk on both simultaneously. Add other parties to an existing conversation and talk on up to five lines simultaneously (P.13-6).
Call Barring	Restrict incoming/outgoing calls depending on conditions (P.13-6)
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when placing calls (P.13-8)

*An additional contract is required.

Checking Service Status

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎)

Call Forwarding	Select Voicemail/Divert ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Status ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Voicemail	Press <input type="checkbox"/> to return.
Call Waiting	Select Call Waiting ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Status ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Press <input type="checkbox"/> to return.
Call Barring	Select Call Barring ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Outgoing Calls or Incoming Calls ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select restriction ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Status ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Press <input type="checkbox"/> to return.
Caller ID	Select Show My Number ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Status ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Press <input type="checkbox"/> to return.

Call Forwarding

Voicemail and Call Forwarding can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.

Note ► **Phone Numbers Beginning with the Following Numbers Cannot be Saved:**

- **1** (Public Service Numbers: 110, 119, 118, etc.)
- **00** (International call numbers: 001, 0041, etc.)
- **0120** (Toll-free numbers)
- **0990** (Fee-based services: Dial Q2, etc.)

Tip ► Adjust ring time to set the response priority when using Call Forwarding together with Answer Phone (P.2-8).

Call Forwarding

Initiate Call Forwarding

Main Menu

► Settings ► Call/Video Call (☎) ► Voicemail/Divert ► Diverts

Direct Entry

Select a call type ► Press ► Select **Always or No Answer** ► Press ► Select **Enter Number** ► Press ► Enter a phone number ► Press

■ For **No Answer**, select ring time ► Press

- Include area code for landline numbers.

Phone Book

Select a call type ► Press ► Select **Always or No Answer** ► Press ► Select **Phone Book** ► Press ► Select an entry ► Press ► Press

■ For **No Answer**, select ring time ► Press

■ For entries with multiple numbers, select an entry ► Press ► Select a number ► Press ► Press

Call Forwarding Records

Select a call type ► Press ► Select **Always or No Answer** ► Press ► Select a record ► Press ► Press

■ For **No Answer**, select ring time ► Press

Cancel All

Cancel Call Forwarding

Main Menu

► Settings ► Call/Video Call (☎) ► Voicemail/Divert

Select **Cancel All** ► Press ► Choose **Yes** ► Press

- Cancel All also cancels Voicemail.

Voicemail

- Calls are diverted to Voicemail Center via Call Forwarding function; Voicemail and Call Forwarding can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.
- For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).
- Activate Missed Call Notification (P.13-5) for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range.

Tip ▶ Adjust ring time to set the response priority when using Voicemail together with Answer Phone (P.2-8).

Voicemail

Initiate Voicemail

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Voicemail/Divert
▶ Voicemail ▶ Activate

Select Always or No Answer ▶ Press

For **No Answer**, select ring time ▶ Press

Cancel All

Cancel Voicemail

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Voicemail/Divert

Select Cancel All ▶ Press ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ Press

- Cancel All also cancels Call Forwarding.


Call Voicemail

Check Voicemail messages

Main Menu ▶ Phone

Select Call Voicemail ▶ Press

- Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Tip ▶  appears when new messages are recorded, and disappears after they are checked from handset.

Missed Call Notification

Activate this function for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

Activate/
Cancel

Activate or cancel Missed Call Notification

Main Menu ► Settings ► Call/Video Call (☎)

Select **out Missed Calls** ► Press ► Press

- Follow the voice guidance for further operations after handset connects to the Network.

Retrieving Missed Call Notification Records

- Missed Call Notification records are stored at Voicemail Center. When handset is turned on or comes into range, Information window (P.2-7) appears with Missed Call records.
 - Information window may take some time to open.

Call Waiting

An additional contract is required.

Call Waiting
On/Off

Activate or cancel Call Waiting

Main Menu ► Settings ► Call/Video Call (☎) ► Call Waiting

Choose **On or Off** ► Press

Incoming Calls Place Line 1 on hold to answer Line 2

When a tone sounds during a call, press

- Press to switch between two lines.
- Handset does not ring or vibrate for incoming calls while a line is engaged. A tone sounds from Earpiece.

While Someone is on Hold

- Close handset to disconnect all lines.
- Press to end active line and re-engage the party on hold.
- When Line 1 ends while Line 2 is on hold, short beeps sound. To re-engage the party on hold:
Press Options ► Select **Retrieve** ► Press

When Voicemail or Call Forwarding is Active

- Unanswered calls are transferred to Voicemail Center or the forwarding number.
 - When active service is set to **Always** Call Waiting is disabled.

Conference Call

An additional contract is required.

Dial New Number

Open another line during a call

Enter a phone number during a call ➔ Press

- Line 1 is placed on hold.
- Press to select a number from Phone Book or press for 1+ seconds to select from Call Log.

Swap Calls

Switch between two open lines

During a call, press

- The line switches. The other line is placed on hold.
- While Someone is on Hold: **P.13-5**

Conference Call

Use up to five lines simultaneously

Press **Options** **while switching between two lines** ➔

Select Multi Party ➔ Press ➔ **Select Conference All** ➔ Press

- To switch to private conference during Conference Call, select a number/name ➔ Press ➔ Select **Private** ➔ Press
 - The other lines are placed on hold.
- To switch back to Conference Call during private conference or after opening a new line, press **Options** ➔ Select **Multi Party** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Conference All** ➔ Press

During Conference Call

- Press or close handset to disconnect all lines.
- When some lines end, other lines remain connected.

Call Barring

Outgoing Calls & Incoming Calls

Restrict incoming/outgoing calls or SMS messages.

Following restrictions are available:

Outgoing Calls	All Outgoing Calls	Restrict all non-emergency calls
	Bar Int'l Call ¹	Allow only domestic calls
	Local & Home Only ²	Restrict all international calls except to Japan
Incoming Calls	All Incoming Calls	Reject all calls
	Bar if Abroad	Reject calls when outside Japan

¹Example: While in the UK, place domestic calls only.

²Example: While in the UK, place calls domestically or to Japan.

Rejected Numbers

Restrict incoming calls by number/Caller ID availability.

Black List	Reject calls from designated numbers
Unknown	Reject calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book
Withheld	Reject calls without Caller ID
Payphone	Reject calls from public phones
Unavailable	Reject calls with undisplayable Caller ID

Restricting Outgoing Calls

Set/Cancel Restriction Set or cancel restriction of outgoing calls

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶
Outgoing Calls

Each Restriction

Select restriction ▶ Press **■** ▶ Choose *On (set) or Off*
▶ Press **■** ▶ Enter Network Password ▶ Press **■**

Canceling All Restrictions

Select *Cancel All* ▶ Press **■** ▶ Enter Network
Password ▶ Press **■**

Note ▶ If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times,
Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network
Password and Center Access Code must be changed.
For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General
Information (P.20-39).

Tip ▶

- Emergency calls (110, etc.) are possible even when outgoing calls are restricted. See **P.2-20**.
- If call is attempted when Call Barring is active, **Call barred** appears. It may take longer to appear in some areas; check Call Barring settings if calls cannot be placed.

Restricting Incoming Calls

Set/Cancel Restriction Set or cancel restriction of incoming calls

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶
Incoming Calls

Each Restriction

Select restriction ▶ Press **■** ▶ Choose *On (set) or Off*
▶ Press **■** ▶ Enter Network Password ▶ Press **■**

Canceling All Restrictions

Select *Cancel All* ▶ Press **■** ▶ Enter Network
Password ▶ Press **■**

Changing Network Password

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶
Change NW Password

- 1** Enter current Network Password and press **■**
- 2** Enter new Network Password and press **■**
- 3** Re-enter new Network Password and press **■**

Rejecting a Call

Restricting by Number

Designate numbers to reject then set Switch On/Off to **On**.

Set Reject Number

Designate phone numbers to reject

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶ Rejected Numbers ▶ Black List ▶ Set Reject Number

Adding Numbers

Select **<empty>** ▶ Press ▶ Enter a number ▶ Press

- To select from Phone Book, select **<empty>** ▶ Press Options
 - ▶ Select **Ph.Book List** ▶ Press ▶ Select an entry ▶ Press
 - For entries with multiple numbers, select one ▶ Press

- To select from Call Log, select **<empty>** ▶ Press Options
 - ▶ Select **From Call Log** ▶ Press ▶ Use to select a type ▶ Select a record ▶ Press

Editing Numbers

Select an entry ▶ Press ▶ Edit the number ▶ Press

Deleting Numbers

Select an entry ▶ Press Options ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

Switch On/Off

Reject calls from designated numbers

Default Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶ Rejected Numbers ▶ Black List ▶ Switch On/Off

Choose **On (reject) or Off** ▶ Press

Restricting by Caller ID Availability

Unknown

Reject calls from numbers not saved in Phone Book

Default Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶ Rejected Numbers ▶ Unknown

Choose **On (reject) or Off** ▶ Press

Rejected Numbers

Reject calls without Caller ID, calls from public phones or calls with undisplayable Caller ID

Default Off

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Call Barring ▶ Rejected Numbers

Select **Withheld, Payphone or Unavailable** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **On (reject) or Off** ▶ Press

Caller ID

Show or hide your own phone number when placing calls.

Show My Number

Send or block Caller ID

Default On

Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Call/Video Call (☎) ▶ Show My Number

Choose **On (send) or Off** ▶ Press

Basics	14-2		
■ Message Types	14-2	■ Forwarding Messages	14-24
■ Customizing Handset Address	14-2	■ Protecting Messages	14-24
Sending Text Messages	14-3	■ Deleting Messages	14-25
■ Character Entry Limits	14-3	■ Canceling Sent Messages	14-25
■ Mail Composition Overview	14-3	■ Sending from Drafts	14-26
■ Sending S! Mail	14-4	■ Sending from Sent/Unsent Messages	14-26
■ Sending SMS Mail	14-11	■ Linked Info	14-26
■ Messaging Settings	14-11	■ Saving Attachments to Data Folder	14-27
■ Setting Send Reservation	14-13	■ Using Attachments	14-28
■ Speed Mail	14-13	My Folders	14-28
■ Auto Resend	14-14	■ Adding/Deleting My Folders	14-28
■ Signature	14-14	■ Setting Auto Sort Keys	14-29
Incoming Text Messages	14-15	■ Moving Messages Manually	14-29
■ Opening New Messages	14-15	■ Secret Folder	14-30
■ Window Description	14-17	Chat Folder	14-30
■ Changing Message List View	14-18	■ Saving Members	14-30
■ Server Mail	14-18	■ Opening Chat Folders	14-31
Using Messages	14-20	Settings	14-32
■ Messaging Folders	14-20	■ General Settings	14-32
■ Checking Messages	14-21	■ S! Mail Settings	14-33
■ Replying to Messages	14-23	■ SMS Settings	14-34

Basics

Message Types

Use SMS and S! Mail for messaging.

SMS

Exchange short text messages of up to 160 alphanumeric characters with SoftBank handsets.

S! Mail

Exchange text messages of up to 30,000 characters with e-mail compatible SoftBank handsets, other mobiles and PCs, etc. Attach image/sound files.

Arrange Mail

- Select font color, font size, background color; insert images, background sound, and more (P.14-8).

Feeling Mail

- Set emotion to messages; recipient handset responds accordingly (P.14-10, P.14-16).

Available Entry Items

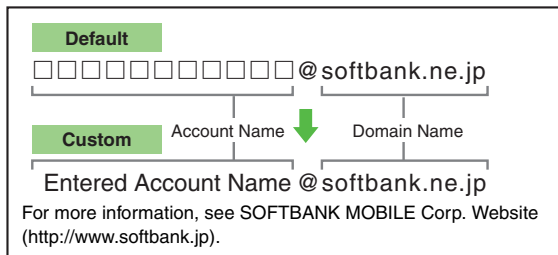
	Recipient	Subject	Message	Attachments
SMS	Available*	N/A	Available	N/A
S! Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available

*SoftBank handset numbers only.

- Tip** ▶
- An additional contract is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.
 - For more about messaging, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Customizing Handset Address

Change alphanumeric before @ of the default handset mail address.



- Handset must connect to the Internet to customize handset address.
- Customizing handset mail address helps reduce spam.

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging* ▶ *Settings*

1 Select Address Settings and press

2 Select English and press

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Tip ▶ Alternatively, customize handset address via Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu. (Click **設定・申込**, then **English**, then **Messaging Settings**.)

When Handset Address is Changed

- New handset address confirmation from SoftBank arrives. To update My Details automatically, follow these steps.
 - Select the message** ▶ **Press** ▶ **Choose Yes** ▶ **Press**
 - My Details cannot be updated when five mail addresses are already saved.

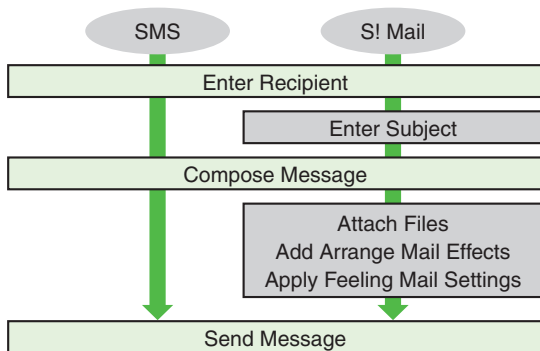
Sending Text Messages

Character Entry Limits

SMS	Message	160 single-byte alphanumerics
	Subject	512 single-byte alphanumerics
S! Mail	Message	Approximately 30,000 single-byte alphanumerics

- S! Mail message text character limit differs by attachment size.
- Approximate mail size appears in Mail Composition window.

Mail Composition Overview



Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

When Recipient Handset is Off or Out-of-Range

- Messages are stored in Server Mail Box, and delivered when recipient handset detects signal.

Delivery Failure

- Information window opens (ⓘ appears).

To send unsent messages, select *Sending failure* →

Press → Select a message → Press

- If failed again, Unsent Messages folder opens. To use unsent messages, see **P.14-26** "Sending from Sent/Unsent Messages."
- Activate Auto Resend (**P.14-14**) to reattempt to send unsent messages automatically up to two times.
- If messages are not sent after three attempts, follow the above steps to send manually.
- Auto Resend may send the same message twice.


Canceling Outgoing Message

- While ***Sending...*** appears, press **Cancel**.
- Message is sent even if handset is closed.


Sending S! Mail

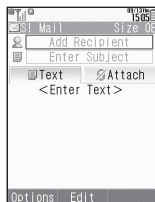
Follow these steps to send S! Mail to a number/address saved in Phone Book.

1 Press 

2 Select **Create Message** and press 

Mail Composition window opens.

- Shortcut: In Standby, press  for 1+ seconds



S! Mail Composition Window

3 Select recipient field and press 

4 Select **Phone Book** and press 

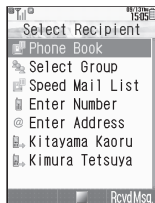
- For other recipient entry methods, see P.14-5.

5 Select a recipient and press 

6 Select subject field and press 



7 Enter subject and press 

8 Select  **Text** and press 





Select Recipient Window

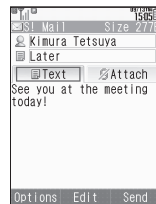
9 Enter a message

- To enter cross-carrier Pictograms, press  **Options** → Select **Pict Setting** → Press  → Select a carrier → Press  → Select a Pictogram → Press 



10 Press 

Mail Composition window returns.

- To edit the message, select  **Text** → Press  → Edit → Press 
- To delete the message, select  **Text** → Press  **Options** → Select **Remove Text** → Press 
- To preview 3D Pictogram (P.14-23), press  **Options** → Select **3D Pictogram** → Press 
- Mail Composition Options: P.14-6



11 Press  **Send**

- To save without sending, press  **Options** → Select **Save to Drafts** → Press 
- Recipient status (To/Cc/Bcc) or the order in which attachments appear may change.
- Sending from Drafts: P.14-26

Tip ▶ After entering My Pictogram in message text via My Pict History or My Pictograms list, Arrange Mail Composition window (P.14-8) opens automatically.

■ Entering/Editing Recipients

Follow these steps after Step 3 on P.14-4.

Phone Book	Select a recipient from Phone Book Select <i>Phone Book</i> → Press ■ → Select a recipient → Press ■
Select Group	Send to multiple recipients at one time by selecting a Mail Group (P.4-12) Select <i>Select Group</i> → Press ■ → Select a Group → Press ■
Speed Mail List	Select a recipient from Speed Mail List (P.14-13) Select <i>Speed Mail List</i> → Press ■ → Select a recipient → Press ■
Enter Number	Enter recipient's SoftBank handset number directly Select <i>Enter Number</i> → Press ■ → Enter a number → Press ■
Enter Address	Enter recipient's mail address directly Select <i>Enter Address</i> → Press ■ → Enter a mail address → Press ■
Sent/Received Mail History	Select a recipient from sent/received mail records Sent Mail History Select a sent mail record → Press ■ Received Mail History Press ☑ <i>Rcvd Mse</i> → Select a received mail record → Press ■ • Sent/received mail records are names, phone numbers or mail addresses with corresponding indicators. ■ When History Lock is active, cancel History Lock temporarily (P.9-19).

Adding Recipients

■ Follow these steps after Step 5 on P.14-4.

Add Recipient

Select recipient field → Press **■** → Select *Add Recipient* → Press **■** → Enter recipient (left) → Press **☑** *Confirm*

Switching Recipient Status (To, Cc and Bcc)

Select recipient field → Press **■** → Select a recipient → Press **☑** *Options* → Select *Change to To*, *Change to Cc* (carbon copy) or *Change to Bcc* (blind carbon copy) → Press **■** → Press **☑** *Confirm*

- Other recipients cannot see numbers/addresses set to Bcc.
- **☑** appears in recipient field when multiple recipients are entered.

Editing/Deleting Recipients

■ Follow these steps after Step 5 on P.14-4.

Edit

Select recipient field → Press **■** → Select a recipient → Press **■** → Edit → Press **■** → Press **☑** *Confirm*

Delete

Select recipient field → Press **■** → Select a recipient → Press **☑** *Options* → Select *Delete* → Press **■** → Press **☑** *Confirm*

Delete All

Select recipient field → Press **■** → Select a recipient → Press **☑** *Options* → Select *Delete All* → Press **■** → Choose *Yes* → Press **■** → Press **☑** *Confirm*

Note ▶ When a mail address is entered, do not use single-byte katakana in message text or subject. They may not appear properly on recipient devices.

Mail Composition Options

Attach	Attach images, sound files, etc. (right)
Arrange	Change font/background color, insert images/background sounds, etc. (P.14-8)
Feeling Settings	Set emotion to messages (P.14-10)
Messaging Settings*	Set priority, set to show a reply request, etc. (P.14-11)
Save as Template	Save and use Arrange Mail templates (P.14-10)
Send Reservation*	Set to send messages at the designated date/time (P.14-13)

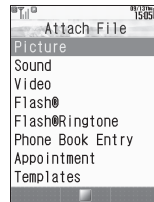
*Available for both S! Mail and SMS.

Attaching Files

Follow these steps to attach images to S! Mail.

- Attach up to 20 files or 300 KB including message text.
- Confirm compatibility with recipient handsets (file format, services, etc.) before sending files.
- Follow these steps after Step 10 on P.14-4; after Mail Composition window returns, complete and send message.

- 1 Select  Attach**
- 2 Select *Attach File* and press **
- 3 Select *Picture* and press **
- 4 Select a folder and press **
- 5 Select a file and press **
 When a size list appears, select attachment size ➔ Press 



■ Attaching Files

Follow these steps after Step 2 on P.14-6.

Image Files	Select <i>Picture</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select a folder → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select a file → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Sound Files	Select <i>Sound</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select a folder → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select a file → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Video Files	Select <i>Video</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select <i>Saved Videos</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select a file → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Flash®/Flash® Ringtone Files	Select <i>Flash® or Flash® Ringtone</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select a file → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Phone Book Entries	Select <i>Phone Book Entry</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select an entry → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Schedule Entries	Select <i>Appointment</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select a date with schedule → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select an entry → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Templates	Select <i>Templates</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select a file → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Books	Select <i>Books</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select a file → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Custom Screens	Select <i>Custom Screens</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select a file → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Other Files	Select <i>Other Documents</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select a file → Press <input type="checkbox"/>

Capture/Record & Attach

■ Follow these steps after Step 2 on P.14-6.

Still Images

Select *Picture* → Press → Select *Take Picture* → Press → Press to shoot → Press

■ When confirmation for save location appears, select a location → Press

Video

Select *Video* → Press → Select *Record Video* → Press → Press to start recording → Press to stop → Select *Accept* → Press → Select storage media → Press

Sounds

Select *Sound* → Press → Select *Record Voice* → Press → Press to start recording → Press to stop → Select *Accept* → Press → Select storage media → Press

Set Auto Play File

■ Show a comment and open/play an attached file automatically before message text is opened on recipient handsets.

Select an attached file → Press **Options** → Select *Set Auto Play File* → Press → Select *Switch On/Off* → Press → Choose *On* → Press → Select *Enter Message* → Press → Enter text → Press

■ To cancel, select an attached file → Press **Options** → Select *Set Auto Play File* → Press → Select *Switch On/Off* → Press → Choose *Off* → Press → Choose *Yes* → Press

- Apply to one file per message.
- Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers (not available for Arrange Mail).
- May not be available for some files.

Creating Arrange Mail

Select font color, font size, background color; insert images, background sound, and more.

- Insert one sound or Flash® file, and up to 40 types of My Pictograms per Arrange Mail.
- Follow these steps in Step 9 on P.14-4; after Mail Composition window returns, complete and send message.

1 Press **Options**

2 Select **Arrange** () and press

Arrange Mail Composition window opens.

- Shortcut: Press for 1+ seconds
- Press to return to text entry window. (Once Arrange is applied, press to toggle between text entry window and Arrange Mail Composition window.)

3 Apply Arrange, then press in text entry window



Applied Effects

Arrange Menu

- Use to select an item.

Arrange Mail
Composition Window

Tip ▶ Inserting multiple My Pictograms/images may inhibit file attachment.

Arrange Menu Items & Operations

Font Colour: Font Size:	<p>Change font color/size</p> <p>Select <i>Font Colour</i>: or <i>Font Size</i>: ➔ Press </p> <p>➔ Select a color or size ➔ Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Settings apply to newly entered text. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ To change color/size of all entered text, press ➔ Press ➔ Select <i>Font Colour</i>: or <i>Font Size</i>: ➔ Press ➔ Select a color or size ➔ Press ■ To change color/size of a part of entered text, press ➔ Select the start point ➔ Press ➔ Select the end point ➔ Press ➔ Select <i>Font Colour</i>: or <i>Font Size</i>: ➔ Press ➔ Select a color or size ➔ Press
Insert Picture	<p>Insert images saved in Data Folder (Pictures or DCIM) or capture and insert images</p> <p>Select <i>Insert Picture</i> ➔ Press ➔ Select a folder ➔ Press ➔ Select a file ➔ Press ➔ Use to select target location ➔ Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select target location when text/file is already entered. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ To capture and insert an image, select <i>Insert Picture</i> ➔ Press ➔ Select <i>Take Picture</i> ➔ Press ➔ Press to shoot ➔ Press ➔ Use to select target location ➔ Press
Insert My Pictogram	<p>Insert My Pictograms</p> <p>Select <i>Insert My Pictogram</i> ➔ Press ➔ Select a file ➔ Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Alternatively, in text entry window, press until History appears ➔ Press ➔ Select a file ➔ Press

Insert	Insert BGM Sound	Insert background sound
		<p>Select Insert → Press → Select Insert BGM Sound → Press → Select a folder → Press → Select a file → Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Some files may not be usable. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To record and insert sound, select Insert → Press → Select Insert BGM Sound → Press → Select Record Voice → Press → Press to start recording → Press to stop → Select Accept → Press → Select storage media → Press To delete inserted sound, select Insert → Press → Select Delete BGM Sound → Press → Choose Yes → Press
Insert	Insert Flash	Insert Flash [®] file
		<p>Select Insert → Press → Select Insert Flash → Press → Select a file → Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To preview inserted Flash[®], press Input → Press Options → Select Preview → Press To delete inserted file, press Input → Move cursor before the Flash[®] file icon → Press
Effect	Blink	Flash text
		<p>Select Effect → Press → Select Blink → Press → Select Blink On → Press </p> <p>Enter text</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To flash entered text, press Select Area → Select the start point → Press → Select the end point → Press → Select Effect → Press → Select Blink → Press → Select Blink On → Press To cancel, press Select Area → Select the start point → Press → Select the end point → Press → Select Effect → Press → Select Blink → Press → Select Blink Off → Press
Insert	Insert Line	Insert horizontal line
		<p>Select Insert → Press → Select Insert Line → Press </p>

Effect	Scrolling	Scroll text horizontally
		<p>Select Effect → Press → Select Scrolling → Press → Select scroll direction → Press → Enter text</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To scroll entered text, press Select Area → Select the start point → Press → Select the end point → Press → Select Effect → Press → Select Scrolling → Press → Select scroll direction → Press To cancel, press Select Area → Select the start point → Press → Select the end point → Press → Select Effect → Press → Select Scrolling → Press → Select Scroll Off → Press
Effect	Alignment	Align text left, right or center
		<p>Select Effect → Press → Select Alignment → Press → Select an option → Press </p> <p>Enter text</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To align entered text, press Select Area → Select the start point → Press → Select the end point → Press → Select Effect → Press → Select Alignment → Press → Select an option → Press
Effect	Background Colour:	Change background color
		<p>Select Background Colour: → Press → Select a color → Press </p>
Effect	Cancel	Cancel all Arrange Mail settings and return to normal S! Mail
		<p>Select Cancel → Press → Choose Yes → Press </p>
Effect	Undo	Cancel last action
		<p>Select Undo → Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Background sound insertion/deletion cannot be undone.

Preview

■ In text entry window, press **Options** → Select **Preview** → Press

■ Saving as Templates

Save created Arrange Mail as templates.

- Entered recipients, subject, attachments and Messaging Settings are deleted.
- Follow these steps in S! Mail Composition window of created Arrange Mail.

- 1** Press **Options**
- 2** Select *Save as Template* and press
- 3** Enter name and press
- 4** Select *Save here* and press

■ Creating Arrange Mail from Templates

Create Arrange Mail from custom or preloaded templates.

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging* ▶ *Templates*

- 1** Select a template and press

S! Mail Composition window opens.

 - To check templates, select one and press **Options** ▶ Select *Preview* ▶ Press
- 2** Complete and send message (perform from Step 3 on P.14-4)

Opening Templates from S! Mail Composition Window

- Follow these steps after Step 2 on P.14-4.
 - Press **Options** ▶ Select *Launch Template* ▶ Press
 - ▶ Select a template ▶ Press

Changing Template Name Display

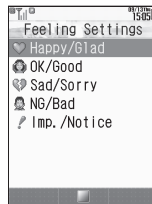
- Press ▶ Select *Templates* ▶ Press ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select *Item Displayed* ▶ Press ▶ Select *File Name or Title* ▶ Press

■ Creating Feeling Mail

Set emotion to messages; recipient handset responds accordingly.

- Send Feeling Mail to compatible SoftBank handsets only.
- Follow these steps after Step 10 on P.14-4; after Mail Composition window returns, complete and send message.

- 1** Press **Options**
- 2** Select *Feeling Settings* and press
- 3** Select a category and press
- 4** Select a Pictogram and press



Tip ▶ For details on handset response to Feeling Mail, see P.14-16.

Sending SMS Mail

Follow these steps to send SMS to a number saved in Phone Book.

1 Press 

2 Select **Create New SMS** and press 

Mail Composition window opens.

3 Select recipient field and press 

4 Select **Phone Book** and press 

For other recipient entry methods, see P.14-5.

5 Select a recipient and press 

6 Select message text field and press 

7 Enter a message

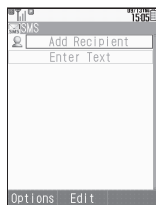
• For more, see Step 9 on P.14-4.

8 Press 

Mail Composition window returns.

Mail Composition Options: P.14-6

9 Press  




SMS Mail Composition Window













When Message Text Exceeds SMS Character Limit

■ A confirmation appears. To convert SMS to S! Mail, follow these steps.

Choose **Yes** → Press 

Messaging Settings

- Settings are valid for one message, and effective when viewed on compatible handsets/applications.
- **Set Auto Delete**, **Reply Request**, **Forward NG**, **Delete NG**, **Quiz** and **Set Auto Play File** cannot be applied at the same time; select one per message.
- Only **Delivery Report** and **Expiry Time** are available for SMS.
- Follow these steps after Step 10 on P.14-4 (for S! Mail) or Step 8 on the left (for SMS); press  to return to Mail Composition window then complete and send message.

Delivery Report ¹ Default: Off	Set to receive Delivery Report when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers Press  Options → Select Messaging Settings → Press  → Select Delivery Report → Press  → Choose On or Off → Press 
Priority ¹ Default: Normal	Set message priority Press  Options → Select Messaging Settings → Press  → Select Priority → Press  → Select priority → Press  • Priority setting does not affect delivery speed.
Remote Fwd. Action ² Default: Not Delete	Select whether to delete Server Mail after forwarding it Press  Options → Select Messaging Settings → Press  → Select Remote Fwd. Action → Press  → Select Not Delete or Del. After Forward → Press 

¹Setting may not be effective when sent to mail addresses.

²Available when forwarding Server Mail (Remote Forward).

Set Auto Delete ³ Default Off	Set the message to be deleted from recipient handsets once read Press Options → Select Messaging Settings → Press → Select Set Auto Delete → Press → Choose On or Off → Press
Reply Request ³ Default Off	Set to show a reply request Press Options → Select Messaging Settings → Press → Select Reply Request → Press → Choose On or Off → Press
Forward NG ³ Default Off	Set to show a do not forward request Press Options → Select Messaging Settings → Press → Select Forward NG → Press → Choose On or Off → Press
Delete NG ³ Default Off	Set to show a do not delete request Press Options → Select Messaging Settings → Press → Select Delete NG → Press → Choose On or Off → Press
Expiry Time ⁴ Default Maximum	Set Message Center sent message storage limit Press Options → Select Messaging Settings → Press → Select Expiry Time → Press → Select a limit → Press • Messages are deleted if not received by the specified Expiry Time.

	Set up a question; recipients need to answer it correctly to open the message Preset Quiz Press Options → Select Messaging Settings → Press → Select Quiz → Press → Select Switch On/Off → Press → Choose On → Press → Select a question → Press ■ To set multiple-choice options, select Selection → Press → Select a number → Press → Enter/edit option → Press ■ To set the answer, select it → Press → Answer → Press Done → Press Done → Press Done ■ To require entry of an exact answer, select Match Characters → Press → Enter the answer → Press → Press Done → Press Done • Selection or Match Characters is not selectable for questions with preset options or answer. Custom Quiz Press Options → Select Messaging Settings → Press → Select Quiz → Press → Select Switch On/Off → Press → Choose On → Press → Select Create Original → Press → Enter a question → Press → Select answer type → Press → Set options/answer → Press Done → Press Done Editing Assigned Quiz Press Options → Select Messaging Settings → Press → Select Quiz → Press → Select Edit Question → Press → Edit question/answer → Press Done → Press Done
Quiz ³ Default Off	

³Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers.

⁴Available only for SMS.

Reply To Settings Default: Off	Designate a different mail address for receiving replies
	<p>Press Options → Select Messaging Settings → Press → Select Reply To Settings → Press → Select Switch On/Off → Press → Choose On → Press → Select or enter address (P.14-5) → Press </p> <p> To cancel, press Options → Select Messaging Settings → Press → Select Reply To Settings → Press → Select Switch On/Off → Press → Choose Off → Press → Press </p> <p> To edit address, press Options → Select Messaging Settings → Press → Select Reply To Settings → Press → Select Edit Address → Press → Edit address → Press → Press </p>

Setting Send Reservation

Send messages at the designated date/time in the future.

- Messages are saved to Unsent Messages folder.
- Save up to ten Send Reservation messages.
- Follow these steps after Step 10 on P.14-4 (for S! Mail) or Step 8 on P.14-11 (for SMS).

1 Press **Options**

2 Select **Send Reservation** and press

3 Select **Date & Time** and press

- To send messages ten seconds after signal returns, select **Within the Network** → Press → **Choose Yes** → Press
 - Send Reservation is not available while roaming.

4 Enter date/time and press

- Specify date/time within a week.

5 Choose **Yes** and press

Tip ► Result appears in Information window.

Speed Mail

Speed Mail List

Save up to ten frequently used numbers/addresses here to use Speed Mail.

Main Menu ► **Messaging** ► **Settings** ► **Speed Mail List**

1 Select **<empty>** and press

- To change entries, select one → Press → **Edit number/address** → Press → **Choose Yes** → Press
- To delete entries, select one → Press **Options** → **Select Delete or Clear All** → Press → **Choose Yes** → Press

2 **Phone Book**

1 Select **Phone Book** and press

2 Select an entry and press

- For entries with multiple numbers/addresses, use to select a SoftBank handset number or mail address → Press

Direct Entry

1 Select **Enter Number** or **Enter Address** and press

2 Enter recipient's SoftBank handset number or mail address and press

Adding to Speed Mail List while Creating Message

- Follow these steps after Step 3 on P.14-4 or on P.14-11.
 - Select Speed Mail List** → Press → **Select <empty>** → Press → **Choose Yes** → Press → **Perform Step 2 above**

Sending Speed Mail

1 In Standby, press **Speed Mail List** entry number with **Keypad** (**0** PR A - **9** S WXVZ) and press **Mail**

- When messaging to SoftBank handset numbers, select **S! Mail** or **SMS** ➤ Press **■**

2 Complete and send message (P.14-4, P.14-11)

Auto Resend

Activate Auto Resend to send unsent messages (failed due to out-of-range, etc.) automatically when signal returns.

- Resend is attempted up to two times for each message.
- Messages are sent in the same order they were created.
- Auto Resend is not available while roaming.
- Auto Resend is **On** by default.

Main Menu ➤ *Messaging* ➤ *Settings* ➤ *General Settings* ➤ *Auto Resend*

1 Choose **On** and press **■**

- To cancel, choose **Off** ➤ Press **■**
- Remaining failed messages will not be sent automatically.

Tip ➤ Result appears in Information window.

Signature

Saving a Signature

Main Menu ➤ *Messaging* ➤ *Settings* ➤ *General Settings* ➤ *Signature Settings* ➤ *Edit*

1 Enter a signature and press **■**

- Enter up to 256 single-byte alphanumeric.

Auto Insert to Message Text

- Save signature first.
- Available only for S! Mail.

Main Menu ➤ *Messaging* ➤ *Settings* ➤ *General Settings* ➤ *Signature Settings* ➤ *Auto Insert*

1 Choose **On** and press **■**

- To cancel, choose **Off** ➤ Press **■**

Manual Insert

- Follow these steps in Step 9 on P.14-4 or Step 7 on P.14-11.
Press **Options** ➤ **Select Advanced** ➤ **Press** **■** ➤
Select Signature ➤ **Press** **■**

Incoming Text Messages

Opening New Messages

1 Delivery Notice appears and Information window opens (envelope icon appears) for new mail

2 Select Message and press [OK]

Message list appears.

Alternatively, while Delivery Notice appears, press [OK] → Select a folder → Press [OK]

3 Select a message and press [OK]

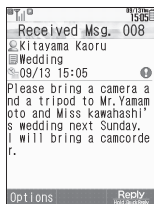
Message window opens.

- When a message is opened for the first time, message text appears in 3D animation (P.14-23 "3D Pictogram"). After animation stops, select whether to enable or disable 3D Pictogram (right).
- When a compatible Pictogram is the first character of subject or included in message text, corresponding animation appears in the message window background (P.14-22 "Animation View").

To retrieve complete S! Mail messages, see P.14-19.

Using Messages: P.14-20

- Tip** ▶
- When no Delivery Notice or Information window appears, open from Received Msg. folder (P.14-21 "Checking Messages").
 - Handset does not respond to messages with Low Priority.



When a Message is Opened for the First Time

- 3D Pictogram plays, then a confirmation to enable or disable 3D Pictogram appears. Follow these steps to set.

Select an option → Press [OK]

Viewing New Message Text on External Display

- When a new message is received with handset closed, activate External Display Backlight and press [OK].
 - To scroll message text, press [Right] or [Left].
 - To exit, press [OK]. (Next new message opens, if any.)
- My Pictograms do not appear.
- Up to 150 characters appear per message.
- When handset is opened while message appears on External Display, message list appears with the message selected.
- In External Display settings (P.9-12), activate Caller Display and set Messages to **Display** to view new messages on External Display.

New Mail Out of Standby

- A double beep sounds and a notice such as **New Message from XX** (name/number). appears.
 - To open message list, press [OK] for 1+ seconds.
 - May not be available in some windows.
 - To change/hide notice or mute double beep, see P.14-32 "Message Notice."
- Information window opens when handset returns to Standby.

Messages with Reply Request

■ When closing a message containing Reply Request, a confirmation appears.

To reply, choose Yes ➔ Press

- Confirmation does not appear for replied messages.

Messages with Quiz

■ A question appears when opening a message locked with Quiz.

To open, press ➔ Enter or select the answer ➔ Press

- Message cannot be opened until the correct answer is entered or selected.
- Subject and message text do not appear in message list.

Auto Play

■ If **Set Auto Play File** is set to an attached file, a comment appears and the file opens/plays automatically upon opening the message.




- Some files may not open/play.

Delivery Report

■ When messages are sent with Delivery Report (P.14-32) **On**, handset receives a Delivery Report from Server Mail Box. To open Delivery Report, follow these steps in Information window (P.14-15).

Select Delivery Report ➔ Press ➔ Select a message with unconfirmed Delivery Report ➔

Press ➔ Press Report

- When Report list appears, press to open first report ➔ Press ➔ Select next report ➔ Press
- Alternatively, open sent message;  appears for delivered messages,  for unknown and  for failed messages.

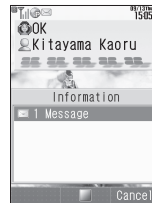
Retrieving New Mail Manually

■ Press ➔ Select **Retrieve New Msg.** ➔ Press

Receiving Feeling Mail

Ringtone, Vibration and Small Light respond according to emotion set by sender and Information window opens.

- Ringtone, Small Light and Vibration settings in Phone Book take priority.
- Feeling Mail settings are disabled when:
 - Sender is saved in Phone Book as Secret entry
 - The message was filtered as spam
 - The message was sorted to a Secret folder
- Default Small Light & Ringtone Settings:



Happy/Glad	Violet, Sound Effect 6
OK/Good	White, Sound Effect 7
Sad/Sorry	Blue, Sound Effect 8
NG/Bad	Red, Sound Effect 9
Important/Notice	Yellow, Sound Effect 10

Customizing Handset Response

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu	<p>► <i>Messaging</i> ► <i>Settings</i> ► <i>General Settings</i> ► <i>Link to Feeling</i></p>
Idle Screen Info. Default: On	Show or hide subject, sender and graphics above Information window for received Feeling Mail Select Idle Screen Info. ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Choose On or Off ► Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Light Default: On	Set Small Light illumination for incoming Feeling Mail Select Light ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select Switch On/Off ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Choose On or Off ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> To change light color, select Light ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select Light Colour ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select an item ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select a color ► Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Vibration Pattern Default: Link to Sound	Set handset vibration for incoming Feeling Mail Select Vibration Pattern ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select On (vibrate), Link to Sound (vibrate to melody) or Off ► Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Ringtone Default: On 5 seconds	Select sound/video for incoming Feeling Mail; set duration Select Ringtone ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select Switch On/Off ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Choose On or Off ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> To change tone/video, select Assign Tone ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select an item ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select a folder ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select a tone or file ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> To change duration, select Duration ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Enter time ► Press <input type="checkbox"/>

Window Description

Messaging Folder Contents

Message Type/Status

• Message Status:

	Unread		Read
	Sent		Failed
	Replied		Forwarded
	S! Mail Notice		Unread Delivery Report
	Send Reservation set		

SMS appears below SMS messages (SMS).

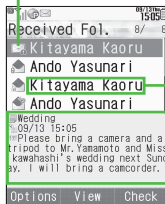
• Message Settings:

	Attachments		Protected
	Priority (High)		Priority (Low)
	SMS Mail on USIM Card		

Sender or Recipient

• Number, address or name appears.

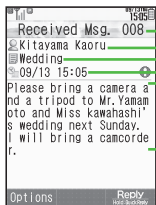
Message Text



Tip ►

- Follow these steps to sort messages.
 Press **Options** ► Select **View Settings** ► Press ► Select **Sort** ► Press ► Select an option ► Press
- Press in message list to toggle list view.

Message Contents



Message Number

Sender or Recipient

- Number, address or name appears.

Subject (S! Mail only)

Received or Sent Date & Time

Message Text

Tip ▶

- To activate Display Backlight, press **0 P.A.** - **9 S.M.C.**
- Press **#123** to open previous message (older one), or press ***123** to open next one (newer one).

Changing Message List View

- To toggle view in message list, see **P.14-17**.
- Message List View is **Sender+Preview** by default.

Main Menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **General Settings** ▶ **Message List View**

1 Select an option and press **■**

Server Mail

If handset is out-of-range or Message DL is not set to **Always Download**, messages may be stored in Server Mail Box. Check/retrieve complete messages via Mail List or S! Mail Notice, or from Server Mail Box directly.

Retrieving Mail List

Retrieve a list of messages stored in Server Mail Box (Server Mail).

Main Menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Server Mail Box**

1 Select **Mail List** and press **■**

- To refresh retrieved Mail List, press **ⓧ Options** ▶ Select **Retrieve Mail List** ▶ Press **■**

2 Choose **Yes** and press **■**

- After retrieval, Mail List appears.
- To cancel retrieval, press **ⓧ Cancel**.
- Using Mail List: **P.14-19**

■ Using Mail List

Get	Retrieve complete S! Mail messages Select a message ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Retrieve All	Retrieve all Server Mail Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ➔ Select Retrieve All ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Retrieved messages are deleted from Mail List and saved to Received Msg. folder.
Remote Forward	Forward Server Mail Select a message ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ➔ Select Remote Forward ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Perform from Step 6 in "Forwarding Messages" on P.14-24
Delete	Delete Server Mail Select a message ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ➔ Select Delete ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Choose Yes ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Delete All	Delete all Server Mail Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ➔ Select Delete All ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Choose Yes ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Message Details	Open Server Mail properties Select a message ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options ➔ Select Message Details ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>

■ S! Mail Notice

For S! Mail messages with attachments, multiple recipients, etc., Server Mail Box sends initial portion of message text as an S! Mail Notice, unless Message DL (Japan)/Message DL (Abroad) (P.14-33) is set to **Always Download**.

- By default, Message DL (Japan) is set to **Always Download** and Message DL (Abroad) is set to **Always Defer**. To change the settings, see P.14-33.
- appears for S! Mail Notices in received message list.

■ Retrieving Complete S! Mail Messages

1 In received message list, select an S! Mail Notice and press

2 Press **More**

- After download, complete message appears.
- Messages larger than 300 KB may be partially deleted.
- To cancel download, press **Cancel**.

■ S! Mail Notice Options

Forward	Forward S! Mail Notice text or Server Mail Select an S! Mail Notice ➔ Press Options ➔ Select Forward ➔ Press ➔ Select Notifi. Forward or Remote Forward ➔ Press ➔ Perform from Step 6 in "Forwarding Messages" on P.14-24
Delete	Delete S! Mail Notice or Server Mail, or both Select an S! Mail Notice ➔ Press Options ➔ Select Delete ➔ Press ➔ Select an option ➔ Press ➔ Choose Yes ➔ Press

Tip ▶ Some messages cannot be forwarded or deleted.

■ Server Mail Box Operations

Follow these steps first.

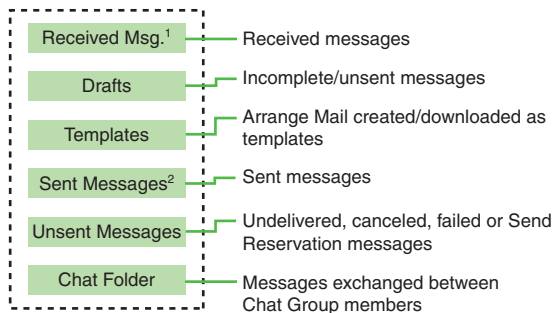
Main Menu ▶ *Messaging* ➔ *Server Mail Box*

Retrieve All Mails	Retrieve all Server Mail Select Retrieve All Mails ➔ Press
Delete All Mails	Delete all Server Mail Select Delete All Mails ➔ Press ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press ➔ Select Except New Msg. or Delete All ➔ Press
Mailbox Volume	Check Server Mail message count and volume Select Mailbox Volume ➔ Press

Using Messages

Messaging Folders

Messages are organized in folders by type.



¹ **Received Folder** and **Folder 1 - Folder 3** appear within. Spam Folder appears as well if Anti Spam Measures (P.14-32) is active.

² **Sent Folder** and **Folder 1 - Folder 3** appear within.

Memory Status

- Press ➔ Select **Memory Status** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Received Msg., Sent Total, Sent Msg., Drafts or Unsent Msg.** ➔ Press
 - Press to return.
 - USIM Card SMS message count and volume do not appear.

Checking Messages

To open Received Msg. folder while using another function, press for 1+ seconds.

Main Menu Messaging

1 Select Received Msg., Drafts, Sent Messages or Unsent Messages and press

Message list appears.

When folders appear, select one Press

To open properties (not available for unsent messages), select a message Press **Options** Select **Message Details** Press

- Press to scroll down.
- Press to return.

2 Select a message and press

Message window opens.

- When images are attached, select one and press to open it.
- Mail Composition window (P.14-4, P.14-11) opens after opening messages in Drafts.

Messages with Quiz: P.14-16

Use to scroll.

To jump to the top or bottom of the message, press **Options** Select **Scroll Jump** Press Select **Jump to Top** or **Jump to Bottom** Press

Slide Playback

- A slide consists of message text with image/sound or video.
After Step 2 on the left, press **Options** Select **Slide Play** Press
 - Press to stop.

Message List Options

Check	Select multiple messages (P.14-22)
View Mail Address ¹	Open sender/recipient details Select a message Press Options Select View Mail Address Press Select sender or recipient Press <ul style="list-style-type: none">Open sender/recipient details and press Options to copy number/address, save to Phone Book or set as an auto sort key (P.14-29).
	Change received message status to read or unread Select a message Press Options Select Manage Msg. Press Select Switch to Unread or Switch to Read Press
SIM Sync ¹	Save SMS Messages to USIM Card Select an SMS message Press Options Select Manage Msg. Press Select SIM Sync Press <ul style="list-style-type: none">SIM Sync appears only for compatible USIM Cards.

¹Available in Received Msg. and Sent Messages.

²Available in Received Msg.

Message Window Options

Copy¹	Copy sender/recipient number/address, subject or message text Press Options ➔ Select Copy ➔ Press ➔ Select an item ➔ Press ■ For Message Text or Subject , use to select the first character of text ➔ Press ➔ Use to select the end point ➔ Press
Font Size² Default: Standard	Change font size Press Options ➔ Select Font Size ➔ Press ➔ Select a size ➔ Press • In 3D Pictogram, Smaller and Tiny appear the same.
Char-code³	Change encoding when text appears distorted Press Options ➔ Select Char-code ➔ Press ➔ Select an option ➔ Press

¹Available in Received Msg. and Sent Messages.

²Available in Received Msg., Sent Messages and Unsent Messages.

³Available in Received Msg.

Selecting Multiple Messages

Select multiple messages to protect, delete, change the status of or move all selected items simultaneously.

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging*

1 Select a folder and press

■ When folders appear within, select one ➔ Press

2 Select a message and press **Check**

appears.

■ To uncheck, select a message with ➔ Press **Uncheck**

3 Repeat Step 2 as needed

■ To uncheck all, press **Options** ➔ Select **Unselect All** ➔ Press

Animation View

When an Animation View Pictogram (**P.20-12**) is entered as the first character of the subject or included in message text, corresponding animation appears in background of message window. If multiple Animation View Pictograms are entered, the one entered as the first character of subject takes priority. Otherwise, animation for first one in message text appears.

Animation View Setting

Enable or disable upon opening received messages. Animation View is enabled by default.

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging* ➔ *Settings* ➔ *General Settings* ➔
Animation View

1 Choose **On** or **Off** and press

- Note** ▶
- Animations do not appear for Arrange Mail or S! Mail messages with attachments.
 - When Custom Screen (**P.9-9**) is set, animations may not appear or appear for other Pictograms.

3D Pictogram

To animate Pictograms, Emoticons and compatible words such as **おはよう**, **食事** and **新幹線** included in the first 150 characters of message text, in 3D, follow these steps after opening message window in Step 2 on P.14-21.

1 Press **Options**

2 Select **3D Pictogram** and press

Press to stop animation.

- Press to pause/resume.

3D Pictogram Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu Messaging Settings General Settings 3D Pictogram

Display Effect Default: Unread Only	Enable or disable 3D Pictogram upon opening received messages Select Display Effect Press Select an option Press
Background Colour Default: Random	Change background color Select Background Colour Press Select a color or Random Press
Display Speed Default: Standard	Change animation speed Select Display Speed Press Select speed Press

Replying to Messages

Main Menu Messaging

1 Select **Received Msg. and press**

- When message list appears, skip ahead to Step 3.

2 Select a folder and press

3 Select a message and press

To reply to sender only without quoting text, press **Reply**

- Skip ahead to Step 7

- Mail Composition window opens.

4 Press **Options**

5 Select **Reply** or **Reply All** and press

6 Select an option and press

7 Complete and send message (P.14-4, P.14-11)

Quick Reply

After Step 3 above, press for 1+ seconds Select text



Press


- To edit Quick Reply text, see P.14-32 "Quick Reply Set."

- Tip**
- Select **Reply All** to send the same message to the sender and up to 19 recipients (To/Cc) of the original message at one time. **Reply All** may not appear for some messages.
 - For **Reply All**, your handset may be included in recipients.
 - Select **SMS (History)** or **S! Mail (History)** to quote the original message text when replying.

Forwarding Messages

Main Menu ► Messaging







- 1 Select *Received Msg.* and press** 
 - When message list appears, skip ahead to Step 3.
- 2 Select a folder and press** 
- 3 Select a message and press** 
- 4 Press**  **Options**
- 5 Select *Forward* and press** 
 - For S! Mail messages, S! Mail Composition window opens.
 - To forward SMS messages, select *S! Mail* or *SMS* ► Press 
- 6 Select recipient field and press** 

Select Recipient window opens.
- 7 Enter recipients and press** 
- To enter a recipient, see P.14-5.
- 8 Press**  **Send**
 - Files attached to the original message are automatically attached to forwarded messages.

Protecting Messages

Protect important messages in Received Msg. or Sent Messages folder from unintentional deletion. Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1 Select *Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages* and press** 
 - When message list appears, skip ahead to Step 3.
- 2 Select a folder and press** 
- 3 Select a message and press**  **Options**
 - To cancel protection, select a message with .
 - To select multiple messages, perform from Step 2 on P.14-22.
- 4 Select *Lock* and press** 
 -  appears for protected messages.
 - To cancel protection, select *Unlock* ► Press 

Deleting Messages

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg.*, *Drafts*, *Sent Messages* or *Unsent Messages* and press

■ When folders appear, select one ► Press

2 *Deleting Selected Messages*

1 Select a message and press **Options**

■ To select multiple messages, perform from Step 2 on P.14-22.

2 Select *Delete* and press

3 Choose *Yes* and press

• It may take some time to delete messages.

Deleting All Messages

1 Press **Options**

• To delete messages in *Drafts* or *Unsent Messages*, skip ahead to Step 3.

2 Select *Manage Msg.* and press

3 Select *Delete All* and press

■ When folder contains protected messages, select *Delete All* or *Except Locked Msg.* ► Press

4 Enter Handset Code and press

Canceling Sent Messages

Send cancellation request to delete sent messages saved in recipient's incoming message folder.

- When selected sent message is addressed to multiple recipients, cancellation request is sent to all the recipients.
- Available for S! Mail messages sent to compatible SoftBank handsets.
- Sent messages may not be deleted if message text is short.

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select *Sent Messages* and press

• When message list appears, skip ahead to Step 3.

2 Select a folder and press

3 Select a message and press **Options**


4 Select *Set Sent Cancel* and press

5 Choose *Yes* and press

• Handset receives a Delivery Report.









Sending from Drafts

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1 Select **Drafts** and press 
 - Saved messages appear.
- 2 Select a message and press 
- 3 Edit/send the message (P.14-4, P.14-11)
 - Sent messages are deleted from Drafts.


Sending from Sent/Unsent Messages

Main Menu ► Messaging









- 1 **Sent Messages**
 - 1 Select **Sent Messages** and press 
 - When message list appears, skip ahead to Step 3.
 - 2 Select a folder and press 
 - 3 Select a message and press  **Options**
 - 4 Select **Edit & Send** and press 
- Unsent Messages**
 - 1 Select **Unsent Messages** and press 
 - 2 Select a message and press  **Options**
 - To send without editing, select **Resend** ► Press 
 - (Omit the next steps.)
 - 3 Select **Edit** and press 
- 2 Edit/send the message (P.14-4, P.14-11)

Linked Info

Saving to Phone Book

Save a linked phone number/mail address from within message text or sender's/recipient's number/address to Phone Book. In message text, available numbers/addresses are selectable with .

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1 Select **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** and press 
 - When message list appears, skip ahead to Step 3.
- 2 Select a folder and press 
- 3 Select a message and press 
- 4 **Saving Sender's/Recipient's Address**
 - 1 Press  **Options**
 - 2 Select **Save Address** and press 
 - 3 Select a phone number or mail address and press 
- Saving Linked Info**
 - 1 Select a phone number or mail address and press 
 - 2 Select **Save to Phone Book** or **Save Address** and press 

5 Select *As New Entry* and press

Number or address is entered in corresponding Phone Book field. Complete other fields and save (P.4-4).

- To save to an existing Phone Book entry, select **As New Detail** → Press → Select an entry → Press → Press **Save**

Using Linked Info

Use linked numbers, addresses or URLs (**http://**, **https://** or **rtsp://**) within message text to place calls, send messages or access Internet sites. Available numbers/addresses/URLs are selectable with

Main Menu ▶ Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg.*, *Sent Messages* or *Unsent Messages* and press

- When folders appear, select one → Press

2 Select a message and press

- For more, perform Step 2 on P.15-13.

Saving Attachments to Data Folder

Save attached images, sounds, and other files to Data Folder. When memory is full, delete files (P.8-6) beforehand.

Main Menu ▶ Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages* and press

- When message list appears, skip ahead to Step 3.

2 Select a folder and press

3 Select a message and press

4 Select a file and press **Options**

- To open properties, select **File Details** → Press
 - Press to return.

5 Select *Save to Data Folder* and press

- To save without changing file name, press and skip ahead to Step 7.

6 Enter name and press

7 Select *Save* or *Save here* and press

Message window returns.

- To save to Memory Card, press **Options** → Select **Change to MemoryCard** → Press → Select **Save** or **Save here** → Press

Using Attachments

Assign attached files as Wallpaper, ringtone or ringvideo directly from messages and save to Data Folder.

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1** Select **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** and press
 - When message list appears, skip ahead to Step 3.
- 2** Select a folder and press
- 3** Select a message and press
- 4** Select a file and press **Options**
- 5** Select **Save as Wallpaper, Set as Ringtone or Set as Ring Video** and press
- 6** Enter name and press
- 7** Select **Save or Save here** and press
 - To assign images smaller or larger than Display as Wallpaper, select **Centred, Full Screen** or **Fit Image** ► Press ► Press

My Folders

Organize received/sent messages into My Folders.

Adding/Deleting My Folders

- Create up to 17 folders in addition to default Folder 1 - 3.
- Empty folder (move or delete messages) before deleting it.

Main Menu ► Messaging

- 1** Select **Received Msg. or Sent Messages** and press
 - To rename My Folders, select one ► Press **Options** ► Select **Rename** ► Press ► Skip ahead to Step **2** of "Adding My Folders" in Step 3
 - To move My Folders, select one ► Press **Options** ► Select **Relocate Folder** ► Press ► Select a location ► Press
- 2** Press **Options**
- 3** **Adding My Folders**
 - 1** Select **Create New Folder** and press
 - 2** Enter name and press
 - Enter up to 20 characters.

Deleting My Folders

 - 1** Select a folder and press **Options**
 - 2** Select **Delete** and press
 - 3** Enter Handset Code and press

Setting Auto Sort Keys

Set keys (sender/recipient, S! Mail subject or SMS message text string) by folder to sort received/sent messages automatically.

- Specify up to 20 keys for each folder including Spam Folder (P.14-32 "Anti Spam Measures").
- Keys in upper folders have higher priority.
- Settings apply to newly received or sent messages.

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press

2 Select a folder (*My Folder or Spam Folder*) and press **Options**

- To select a Secret folder, see P.14-30 "Unlock Temporarily" or "Cancel Secret."

3 Select *My Folders* and press

4 Select a blank entry and press

- To delete entries, select one ► Press **Options** ► Select *Delete or Clear All* ► Press ► Choose **Yes** ► Press ► Press **Confirm**

5 *Sort by Sender/Recipient*

1 Select *Address* and press

2 Enter sender/recipient (P.14-5)

- To change entries, select one ► Press **Options** ► Select *Replace* ► Press ► Enter sender/recipient (P.14-5) ► Press **Confirm**

Sort by Subject (S! Mail) or Text String (SMS)

1 Select *Subject* and press

2 Enter text and press

- Enter up to 40 single-byte alphanumeric.

6 Press **Confirm**

Re-sorting Messages in Received Folder

■ Select a folder (*My Folder or Spam Folder*) ► Press

Options ► Select *Classify* ► Press

- To select a Secret folder, see P.14-30 "Unlock Temporarily" or "Cancel Secret."

Moving Messages Manually

Incoming linked messages cannot be moved.

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select *Received Msg. or Sent Messages* and press

2 Select a folder and press

- To select a Secret folder, see P.14-30 "Unlock Temporarily" or "Cancel Secret."

3 Select a message

- To select multiple messages, perform from Step 2 on P.14-22.

4 Press **Options**

- When multiple messages are selected, skip ahead to Step 6.

5 Select *Manage Msg.* and press

6 Select *Move to Folder* and press

7 Select a folder and press

- To move files to a Secret folder, unlock temporarily or cancel Secret beforehand (P.14-30).

Secret Folder

Hide folders to require Handset Code entry for access.

Main Menu ► Messaging

1 Select **Received Msg., Sent Messages** or **Chat Folder** and press **□**

2 Select a folder and press **☒ Options**

3 Select **Set Secret** and press **□**

4 Enter Handset Code and press **□**

■ To set handset response to new messages sorted into Secret folders, see P.14-32 "Secret Folder."

5 Press **□**

Unlock Temporarily

■ Press **☒ Options** ► Select **Unlock Temporarily** ► Press **□**
 ► Enter Handset Code ► Press **□**

Cancel Secret

■ Unlock Secret folders temporarily and follow these steps.
 Select a Secret folder ► Press **☒ Options** ► Select **Unset Secret** ► Press **□** ► Enter Handset Code ► Press **□**
 ■ Handset Code is not required for Chat Folders.

Note ► Messages appear in Chat Folders even if source messages are sorted into Secret folders. To hide messages, set Chat Folders to Secret as well.

Chat Folder

Use Chat Folders to organize messages exchanged between handset and Chat Group members.

Each folder (Group) holds up to 300 messages.

Saving Members

- Create up to seven folders (Groups) in addition to default Group 1 - 3.
- Save up to 20 members per Group.

Main Menu ► Messaging ► Chat Folder

1 Select a folder (Group) and press **☒ Options**

■ To rename folders, select one and press **☒ Options** ► Select **Rename** ► Press **□** ► Enter name ► Press **□**

■ To add folders, press **☒ Options** ► Select **Create New Folder** ► Press **□** ► Enter name ► Press **□**

■ To delete folders, select one and press **☒ Options** ► Select **Delete Folder** ► Press **□** ► Choose **Yes** ► Press **□**

■ To select a Secret folder, see "Unlock Temporarily" or "Cancel Secret" on the left.

2 Select **Add New Member** and press **□**

3 Select a blank entry and press **□**

4 Enter a member

- Repeat Steps 3 - 4 to add members.
- To enter members, see **P.14-5**.
- To edit number/address, select a member → Press **■** → Edit
- To change members, select one → Press **☰ Options** → Select **Change Member** → Press **■** → Perform from Step 4
- To delete members, select one → Press **☰ Options** → Select **Delete** → Press **■** → Choose **Yes** → Press **■**
- To delete all members, press **☰ Options** → Select **Clear All** → Press **■** → Choose **Yes** → Press **■**

5 Press **☑ Confirm**

- When a Secret folder warning appears, press **■**.

Re-sorting Messages into Chat Folders

- Follow these steps after Step 1 in "Saving Members" on **P.14-30**.
Select Classify → Press **■**
 - When source messages are sorted into Secret folders, enter Handset Code → Press **■**

Resetting Chat Folders

- Follow these steps after Step 1 in "Saving Members" on **P.14-30**.
Select Reset → Press **■** → **Enter Handset Code** → Press **■** → **Choose Yes** → Press **■**
 - Source messages in Received Msg. and Sent Messages remain.

Opening Chat Folders

Main Menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Chat Folder**

1 Select a folder (Group) and press **■**

Message list appears.

- When no members are saved, choose **Yes** → Press **■** → Perform from Step 3 in "Saving Members" on **P.14-30**
- To reply to messages, select one → Perform from Step 4 in "Replying to Messages" on **P.14-23**
- To delete all messages, press **☰ Options** → Select **Manage Msg.** → Press **■** → Select **Delete all** → Press **■** → Choose **Yes** → Press **■**
 - Source messages in Received Msg. and Sent Messages remain.
 - Messages are deleted from Chat Folder even if source messages are protected.

2 Select a message and press **■**

Message window opens.

Switch to Read/Unread

- Select a received message in Chat Folder message list and follow these steps.
Press **☰ Options** → **Select Manage Msg.** → Press **■** → **Select Switch to Read or Switch to Unread** → Press **■**
 - Source message status changes accordingly.

Settings

General Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ *Messaging* ▶ *Settings* ▶ *General Settings*

Sending Status <small>Default On</small>	Show or hide progress bar while sending messages Select <i>Sending Status</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <i>On</i> or <i>Off(Background)</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Delivery Report <small>Default Off</small>	Confirm message delivery to SoftBank handset numbers Select <i>Delivery Report</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <i>On</i> (request report) or <i>Off</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Anti Spam Measures <small>Default Off</small>	Filter incoming messages from numbers or addresses not saved in Phone Book Select <i>Anti Spam Measures</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ For <i>On</i>, press <input type="checkbox"/> again. • When Anti Spam Measures is active, unsolicited messages (spam) are filtered into Spam Folder. • Handset does not respond to filtered messages. (No ringtones, Information window, etc.)
Quick Reply Set.	Edit Quick Reply text Select <i>Quick Reply Set.</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select text ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Edit text ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>

Auto Delete <small>Default On</small>	Activate or cancel automatic deletion of oldest received/sent messages to save new ones when memory is full Select <i>Auto Delete</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <i>Received Msg. or Sent Messages</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Message Notice <small>Default View Setting: Name Alert Sound: On</small>	Change/hide notice or activate/mute alert sound (double beep) for messages received during handset use Edit Message Select <i>Message Notice</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <i>View Setting</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select an option ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Alert Sound Select <i>Message Notice</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <i>Alert Sound</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose <i>On</i> or <i>Off</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Secret Folder <small>Default Notify</small>	Select whether to notify (with ringtones, etc.) of incoming messages sorted to Secret folders Select <i>Message Notice</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <i>Secret Folder</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <i>Notify</i> or <i>No Response</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Received/Sent Msg. View <small>Default Folder View</small>	Show or hide folders in Received Msg. and Sent Messages folders Select <i>Received Msg. View</i> or <i>Sent Msg. View</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select <i>List View</i> or <i>Folder View</i> ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When folders are hidden, messages in Secret folders appear in message list. ■ When the folder contains a Secret folder, enter Handset Code ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>

Scroll Unit Default: Single Line	Select from three scroll units
	Select Scroll Unit → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select Single Line, Half Page or Whole Page → Press <input type="checkbox"/>

S! Mail Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ Messaging ▶ Settings ▶ S! Mail Settings

Message DL (Japan)* Default: Always Download	Set complete S! Mail retrieval to auto or manual; adjust this setting when using handset in Japan
	<p>Always Retrieve Automatically or Manually Select Message DL(Japan) → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select Always Download or Always Defer → Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Retrieve Specified Messages Select Message DL(Japan) → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select Specify → Press <input type="checkbox"/> Edit → Select Phone Number, Saved Address, My Folders or Individual Address → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> Confirm</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Multiple items are selectable. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To save/edit Individual Address entries, select Individual Address → Press <input type="checkbox"/> Edit → Select an entry or a blank entry → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select or enter number/address → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> Confirm To delete Individual Address entries, select Individual Address → Press <input type="checkbox"/> Edit → Select an entry → Press <input type="checkbox"/> Options → Select Delete or Clear All → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Choose Yes → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> Confirm

Message DL (Abroad)* Default: Always Defer	Set complete S! Mail retrieval to auto or manual; adjust this setting when using handset outside Japan Select Message DL(Abroad) → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select Always Download or Always Defer → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Reply To Settings Default: Off	Designate a different mail address for receiving replies Select Reply To Settings → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select Switch On/Off → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Choose On → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select or enter address (P.14-5) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To cancel, select Reply To Settings → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select Switch On/Off → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Choose Off → Press <input type="checkbox"/> To edit address, select Reply To Settings → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select Edit Address → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select or enter address → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Picture Appearance Default: Fit for Screen	Set display size for images in received messages Select Picture Appearance → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select Normal or Fit for Screen → Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Slides (P.14-21) always play at Normal size.

*When set to **Always Download**, complete S! Mail messages including attachments are retrieved; transmission fees apply depending on the price plan. Change Message DL setting as needed.

<p>Auto Play File <small>Default</small> Pictures: On Sounds: Off</p>	<p>Select whether to open/play attached images/sounds automatically</p> <p>Select Auto Play File ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➤ Select Pictures or Sounds ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➤ Choose On or Off ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Images/sounds always open/play when playing slides (P.14-21). • Auto Play File settings do not apply to Arrange Mail.
<p>Send File Settings <small>Default</small> Save & Attach</p>	<p>Set pre-attachment save option for files newly captured with handset camera or Voice Recorder</p> <p>Select Send File Settings ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➤ Select Save & Attach or Attach Only ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p>

SMS Settings

Follow these steps first.

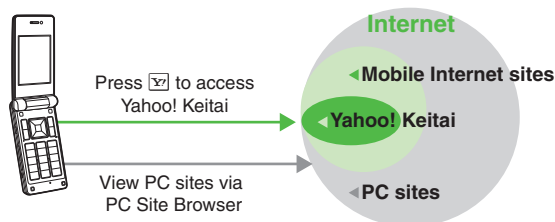
Main Menu ➤ *Messaging* ➤ *Settings* ➤ *SMS Settings*

<p>Expiry Time <small>Default</small> Maximum</p>	<p>Set Message Center sent message storage limit</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select Expiry Time ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➤ Select an option ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/> • Expiry Time applies to SMS Center Number set to Setting1(Default) in Message Centre (below).
<p>Message Centre <small>Default</small> Setting1 (+819066519300)</p>	<p>Set SMS Center Number</p> <p>Editing Center Number Select Message Centre ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➤ Select Setting1(Default), Setting2 or Setting3 ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➤ Edit number ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Deleting Center Number Select Message Centre ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➤ Select Setting2 or Setting3 ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➤ Options ➤ Select Delete ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➤ Choose Yes ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <p>Setting Center Number Select Message Centre ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➤ Select Setting2 or Setting3 ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➤ Options ➤ Select Set Default ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Selected number moves to Setting1(Default) and shifts the others down. • Do not change Center Number unless instructed to do so.
<p>Char-code <small>Default</small> Shift JIS</p>	<p>Select character encoding for composing SMS messages</p> <p>Select Char-code ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➤ Select an option ➤ Press <input type="checkbox"/></p>

Getting Started	15-2	Streaming	15-13
Using Yahoo! Keitai	15-3	Live Monitor (Japanese)	15-14
■ Opening Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu	15-3	■ Live Monitor Basics	15-14
■ Using History	15-4	■ Registering with Live Monitor Items	15-15
■ Entering URLs Directly	15-4	■ Opening Information	15-15
Basic Operations	15-5	■ Automatic Update	15-16
■ Internet Content.....	15-5	Using PC Site Browser	15-16
■ Selecting Items	15-5	■ Opening Yahoo! JAPAN	15-16
■ Page Browsing	15-6	■ Using History	15-17
■ Function Shortcuts	15-8	■ Entering URLs Directly.....	15-17
■ Text Entry & Item Selection	15-8	Additional Functions	15-18
■ Options Menu	15-9	■ Common Settings	15-18
Advanced Features	15-10	■ PC Site Browser Settings.....	15-19
■ Bookmarks & Saved Pages	15-10		
■ Saving Files to Data Folder	15-12		
■ Using Linked Info.....	15-13		

Getting Started

Access the Internet directly from handset.
Press a single key to access **Yahoo! Keitai** SoftBank Mobile Internet portal, or view PC sites via PC Site Browser.



- In this manual, "Yahoo! Keitai" refers to the SoftBank Mobile Internet portal, "PC sites" to websites viewed via PC Site Browser, and "Internet" to both Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites.
- An additional contract is required to use the Internet.
- Retrieve Network Information (P.1-16) before using the Internet.

Note ▶

- Some page content may automatically activate Internet connection incurring transmission fees. To disconnect, press [BACK].
- Requested pages may not appear due to transmission conditions/Server status.

Tip ▶ For more about Yahoo! Keitai, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Security

SSL

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) is an encryption protocol for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information such as credit card numbers. Electronic certificates are saved on handset (P.15-19 "Root Certificates").

Disclaimer

When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Cybertrust, Entrust Japan, GlobalSign, RSA Security and SECOM Trust Systems cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

Secure Pages

A confirmation appears before entering and exiting secure pages. Press [OK] to proceed (OK appears).

To disable confirmations, see P.15-19 "Secure Prompt."

Using Yahoo! Keitai

Opening Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

1 Press

Handset connects to the Internet and Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu appears.

To disconnect, press .


- Handset remains connected to the Internet even if it is closed.



2 Highlight a menu item and press




Corresponding page opens.



- Repeat Step 2 to open additional links.

Basic Operations: **P.15-5**

To return to the previous page, press  **Back**.

- To return to the initial page, press  **Options** → Select **Forward** → Press 

To jump to page top or bottom, press  **Options** → Select **Convenient Functions** → Press  → Select **Jump to Top** or **Jump to Bottom** → Press 

To return to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu, press  **Options** → Select **Yahoo! Keitai** → Press 






3 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press


User Authentication

- If requested, enter user ID or password → Press  → Press  **Send**

Switching Browser

- Open a page and follow these steps.

Press  **Options** → Select **Change to PC Browser or Switch Browser** → Press  → Select **This Page or Linked Page** → Press  → Press  → Choose **Yes or No** → Press 

- To hide warning message, choose **Yes**; Warning Message (P.15-19) is set to **Off**.
 - Warning message appears when activating PC Site Browser or when toggling between Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser, unless Warning Message is **Off**.
- Pressing  immediately after switching browser does not open previous page.

Tip ▶ Accessing Yahoo! Keitai corrects Clock when **Auto Corr. Setting (P.9-17)** is active.

Using History

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ History

1 Select an item and press

Handset connects to the Internet.

- To open properties, select an item ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select **Details** ▶ Press
 - Press to return.
- To sort items, press **Options** ▶ Select **Sort** ▶ Press ▶ Select **By Domain** or **By Date** ▶ Press

2 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press

Sending URLs via S! Mail/SMS

- Open History and follow these steps.
 - Select an item ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select **Send URL** ▶ Press ▶ Select **S! Mail** or **SMS** ▶ Press ▶ Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-4 or on P.14-11.)

Deleting History

- Open History and follow these steps.
 - One Entry
 - Select an item ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press
 - All Entries
 - Press **Options** ▶ Select **Delete All** ▶ Press ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

- Tip ▶
- History stores up to 300 pages; when full, oldest are deleted to make room for new ones.
 - From open pages, access **History** via Options menu.

Entering URLs Directly

Enter URLs directly to access pages. **http://** may be omitted.

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Enter URL

1 Enter URL and press

Handset connects to the Internet.

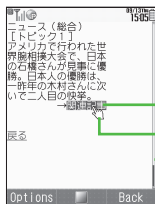
- PC Site Browser may activate depending on the URL.
- To select from previously entered URLs, press **Options** ▶ Select **URL Entry Log** ▶ Press ▶ Select a URL ▶ Press ▶ Press

2 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press

- Tip ▶
- Up to 10 entries are saved. When full, oldest entries are deleted to make room for new ones.
 - From open pages, access **Enter URL** via Options menu. (Current page's URL is entered.)

Basic Operations

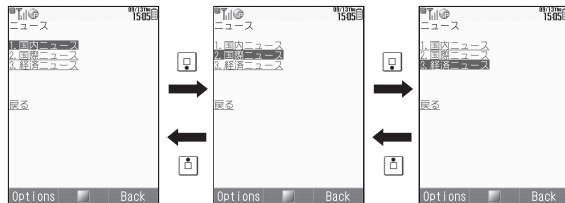
Internet Content



- Cursor (see below)
- Pointer (see right)
- Scroll Bar (P.15-6)

Selecting Items

Move cursor with to select items.



- Alternatively, use when multiple items are listed in one row.
- Cursor does not appear for unselectable items.

Pointer Navigation

When pointer navigation is active, use to move . When appears, press to select the item.



Activating/Canceling Pointer Navigation

Open a page and follow these steps.

- Press **Options** \rightarrow **Select Settings** \rightarrow Press \rightarrow **Select Cursor Settings** \rightarrow Press \rightarrow **Select Cursor/ Yahoo! Keitai or Cursor/PC Site Browser** \rightarrow Press \rightarrow **Choose On or Off** \rightarrow Press

- Pointer navigation is active for PC Site Browser by default.
- Alternatively, press for 1+ seconds to toggle pointer navigation on/off.

Changing Pointer Speed

Open a page and follow these steps.

- Press **Options** \rightarrow **Select Settings** \rightarrow Press \rightarrow **Select Cursor Settings** \rightarrow Press \rightarrow **Select Speed Settings** \rightarrow Press \rightarrow **Select Slow, Normal or Fast** \rightarrow Press

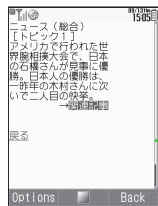
- Pointer speed is **Normal** by default.

Tip \blacktriangleright Pointer graphic may vary by Custom Screen (P.9-9).

Page Browsing

Scrolling Pages

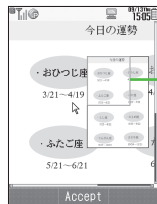
If page content continues beyond view, scroll bar appears beside/below window; a slider indicates current page position. Use to scroll pages. Alternatively, press and hold designated key to scroll in the corresponding direction: (Up), (Left), (Right), (Down).



Scroll Bar

Page Navigation

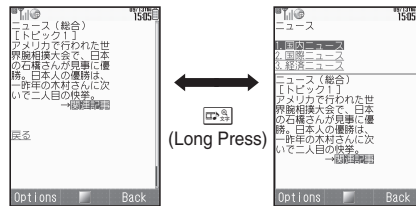
When using (Long Press) to scroll PC site pages, activate Page Navigation (P.15-18) to confirm current page position.



Current Page Position

Switching Frames

On framed pages, press for 1+ seconds to select other frames; scroll or select items within.

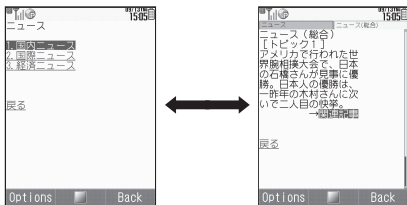


Viewing Single Frame

- Open a framed page and select a frame Press
- Select *Frame In* Press
- To return, press .

Tabbed Browsing

Open up to three pages at one time using tabs. Yahoo! Keitai and PC site pages cannot be open simultaneously.



1 Highlight a menu item and press  **Options**




2 Select *Open in New Tab* and press 

Highlighted link opens in a new tab.




To open a third page, press  **Options** → Select **Tab Menu**
→ Press  → Select *Open in New Tab* → Press 

Toggle Tabs

Press  (Long press) → Use  to switch between tabs

- To cancel, press .
- Options menu, scrolling, etc. are not available while switching between tabs (after  is pressed for 1+ seconds).
- Alternatively, point to a tab and press  to open it.

Closing Tabs

Press  **Options** → Select **Tab Menu** → Press  → Select **Close Tab or Close All Other Tabs** → Press 












Note ▶ Portions of page content may not appear in tabbed browsing; close old tabs.

Tip ▶

- Some pages automatically open in a new tab.
- Alternatively, to open pages in a new tab, open Options menu from Bookmarks, Saved Pages, Enter URL or History and select *Open in New Tab*.

Function Shortcuts

In a page window, press the indicated key for 1+ seconds for the corresponding function.

	Continuous scroll up/down/left/right (P.15-6) ²
	Continuous scroll up (P.15-6) ²
 ¹	Continuous scroll left (P.15-6) ²
 ¹	Continuous scroll right (P.15-6) ²
	Continuous scroll down (P.15-6) ²
 ¹	Jump to a location (P.15-17)
	Toggle tabs (P.15-7)
	Toggle image size (large/small)
	Activate/cancel Manner mode (P.2-18)
	Toggle pointer navigation on/off (P.15-5)
	Switch frames (P.15-6)

¹Available for PC Site Browser only.



²Available along with Page Navigation (P.15-6) in PC Site Browser.

Text Entry & Item Selection


Enter text or select items to send information.





Text Entry Field

- Highlight and press . Text entry window opens. Enter text and press .


Check-box

- Highlight (check-box) and press . The box changes to , indicating that the item is selected.
- In addition to , may also appear as selection indicators.

Menu List

- Highlight the field and press  to select an item. Some menu lists support multiple selection; select items and press  to exit list.

Command Button

- Use to send, reset, etc.
- Highlight and press  to execute the indicated command.

Input Memory

- Entered text (except Security Code) is saved to Input Memory. Use saved text in other applications.
- To use Input Memory, follow these steps in a text entry window.
Press **Options** ➔ **Select Advanced** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Input Memory** ➔ Press ➔ **Select text** ➔ Press
- Up to 20 entries are saved. When full, oldest entries are deleted to make room for new ones.

Options Menu

Copy Text

Copy text

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Copy Text** ➔ Press ➔
Perform from Step 3 on P.3-8

Reload

Update page content

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Reload** ➔ Press
• Reload simultaneously updates the corresponding content saved in Saved Pages.

Send URL

Send URLs via S! Mail/SMS

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Convenient Functions** ➔
Press ➔ **Select Send URL** ➔ Press ➔ **Select S! Mail or SMS** ➔ Press ➔ **Complete and send message (Perform from Step 3 on P.14-4 or on P.14-11.)**
• S! Mail Composition window opens automatically if a URL exceeds the SMS character limit.

Search

Search current page

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Convenient Functions** ➔
Press ➔ **Select Search** ➔ Press ➔ **Enter search text** ➔ Press
• First search result is highlighted; press to jump to next.
■ To cancel, press **Cancel**.

Details

Open page properties/server certificates

Opening Page Properties

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Convenient Functions** ➔
Press ➔ **Select Details** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Page Information** ➔ Press
■ Press to return.

Opening Server Certificates

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Convenient Functions** ➔
Press ➔ **Select Details** ➔ Press ➔ **Select Server Certificate** ➔ Press ➔ **Select a certificate** ➔ Press
■ To return, press ➔ Press four times

Help

View a summary of key assignments

Press **Options** ➔ **Select Help** ➔ Press
■ Press to return.

Flash® Menu

Handle Flash® files

Pause

Press **Options** → Select **Flash® Menu** → Press →
Select **Pause** → Press

To play Flash® files, press **Options** → Select **Flash® Menu**
→ Press → Select **Resume** or **Replay** → Press

Replay

Press **Options** → Select **Flash® Menu** → Press →
Select **Replay** → Press

Image Quality Setting

Press **Options** → Select **Flash® Menu** → Press →
Select **Quality** → Press → Select **Low, Medium** or
High → Press

Char-code

Change encoding when text appears distorted

Press **Options** → Select **Settings** → Press → Default Automatic
Select **Char-code** → Press → Select an option →
Press

- Use Automatic whenever possible.

Uploading
FilesUpload images or other Data Folder files to the
Center via Internet sites

Open compatible site first.
Select **select** → Press → Select a file → Press
→ Select **Send** → Press

- Example above is for reference only. Follow site instructions for specific procedure.
- Files are uploadable only via pages supporting uploads.

Advanced Features

Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Bookmark sites or save page content to Saved Pages.

Item	Description
Bookmarks	Save links to sites. Handset connects to the Internet to access the site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Create folders to organize Bookmarks. • Save up to 100 Bookmarks for Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites each.
Saved Pages	Save page content; handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Internet. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Save up to 100 pages for Yahoo! Keitai and PC sites each.

Tip ▶ The following links are saved in Bookmarks by default.

- **Sharp Space Town**
Download Wallpaper, games, Dictionary files, etc.
- **加沢**
Download Custom Screens (P.9-9).

Saving Bookmarks & Pages

Follow these steps after opening a page.

- 1 Press **Options**
- 2 Select **Bookmark** or **Saved Pages** and press **Enter**
- 3 Select **Save** and press **Enter**
 - **Save** appears only for savable pages.
- 4 Enter title and press **Enter**

Tip ▶ Pages are saved with a preview page when available.

Opening Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai

- 1 Select **Bookmarks** or **Saved Pages** and press **Enter**
Title/page list appears.
- 2 Use **Left Arrow** to select a title/page and press **Enter**
 - Saved Pages list view can be changed ("Switch View" on the right).



Bookmarks List

Opening Bookmarks Online

- Press **Options** ▶ Select **Bookmark** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶
Select **Open List** ▶ Press **Enter** ▶ Select a title ▶ Press **Enter**

Bookmarks/Saved Pages List Operations

Open Properties	Select a title/page ▶ Press Options ▶ Select Details ▶ Press Enter Press Enter to return.
Move	Select a title/page ▶ Press Options ▶ Select Move ▶ Press Enter ▶ Use Left Arrow to select target location ▶ Press Enter
Delete	Select a title/page ▶ Press Options ▶ Select Delete ▶ Press Enter ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press Enter
Delete All	Press Options ▶ Select Delete All ▶ Press Enter ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press Enter ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press Enter
Switch View (Saved Pages)	Press Options ▶ Select List View or Preview View ▶ Press Enter

Editing Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Open Bookmarks or Saved Pages (Step 1 in "Opening Bookmarks & Saved Pages" on P.15-11) first.

Title

Edit titles

Bookmarks

Select a title → Press **Options** → Select **Edit** → Press → Select **Title:** → Press → Enter title → Press → Press **Save**

Saved Pages

Select a title/page → Press **Options** → Select **Rename** → Press → Enter title → Press

Bookmarks
Folder

Sort Bookmarks into folders

Creating a Folder

Press **Options** → Select **Create Folder** → Press → Enter name → Press

Moving to Folder

Select a title → Press **Options** → Select **Move** → Press → Press **Folder** → Select a folder → Press → Press

Moving from Folder

Select a title → Press **Options** → Select **Move** → Press → Press **Parent** → Press

Changing Folder Names

Select a folder → Press **Options** → Select **Rename** → Press → Enter name → Press

Saving Files to Data Folder

When memory is full, delete files (P.8-6) beforehand.

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Open a page

1 Press **Options**

2 Select **Save Items** and press

- To save background image, select **Save Background Image** → Press
 - **Save Background Image** appears for pages with background images.
- If there is only one file, skip ahead to Step 4.

3 Select a file and press

- To open files, select **View** or **Play** → Press
 - Press to return.
- To open properties, select **Details** → Press
 - Press to return.

4 Select **Save** and press

Data Folder opens.

- To switch between handset and Memory Card, press **Options** → Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to MemoryCard** → Press
- To save to a sub folder, select folder → Press

5 Press

File is saved to Data Folder.

- Handle File(s) menu may open with available file functions.
- If the same file name exists, select **Rename**, **Overwrite** or **Cancel** → Press

Automatic Saving

- Some files are saved automatically. Save location is indicated after download.

Using Linked Info

- Available only when number, address or URL can be highlighted.
- Underlined words may serve as a linked number, address or URL.

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Yahoo! Keitai

1 Open a page containing a phone number, mail address or URL

2 Dialing Numbers

- 1 Highlight a number and press
- 2 Select *Call* or *Video Call* and press

Sending Messages

- 1 Highlight a SoftBank handset number or mail address and press
- 2 Select *Create Message* and press
 - When confirmation for mail type appears, select *S! Mail* or *SMS* and press .
 - To complete and send message, perform from Step 6 on P.14-4 or on P.14-11.

Accessing Internet Sites

- 1 Highlight a URL and press

Handset connects to the Internet.

 - Video/sound plays for *rtsp://*URLs.

Streaming

Enjoy audiovisual media while it downloads.

- Only compatible Yahoo! Keitai files support streaming.
- Downloaded content cannot be saved.

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ *Open a page*

1 Select a file and press

Streaming begins. (Playing Music/Video: P.7-6)

- To specify start point, see P.7-7 "Time Search."
- To pause/resume a stream, press .
 - Streaming requires a continuous Internet connection. (Packet transmission fees apply.)

Incoming Calls/Mail while Streaming

- Streaming stops for incoming calls. Press to answer calls.
 - After the call, **Reconnect?** appears.
- Notice appears or a double beep sounds for incoming mail (P.14-32 "Message Notice").

- Note ▶
- Streaming continues even after handset is closed.
 - Some streams do not support pause, fast forward, rewind or Options.

Tip ▶ Up to 10 previously accessed URLs are saved. When full, oldest URLs are deleted to make room for new ones.

■ Playback Operations

Display Size	Change display size Press Options ▶ Select Settings ▶ Press ▶ Select Display Size ▶ Press ▶ Select a size ▶ Press
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Press to toggle Display Size for current stream. • Display Size may not change depending on file/stream.
Backlight	Adjust Backlight Press Options ▶ Select Settings ▶ Press ▶ Select Backlight ▶ Press ▶ Select a pattern ▶ Press
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Selecting Normal Settings applies Display Backlight setting (P.9-12).
Sound Effects	Adjust Sound Effects Press Options ▶ Select Settings ▶ Press ▶ Select Sound Effects ▶ Press ▶ Select an effect ▶ Press

Streaming from Media Player Access the Internet from Media Player

Main Menu ▶ **Media Player** ▶ **Streaming**

Resuming the File Played Last

Select Last Played ▶ Press

Using Bookmarks

Select Bookmarks ▶ Press ▶ **Select an entry** ▶ Press

Using History

Select History ▶ Press ▶ **Select an entry** ▶ Press

- To open properties, select an entry ▶ Press **Options** ▶ **Select Details** ▶ Press
- Press to return.

Live Monitor (Japanese)

Live Monitor Basics

Receive Yahoo! Keitai content/S! Loop item update notices.

- Information is saved in Live Monitor List (Yahoo! Keitai content) or S! Loop List (S! Loop items) according to the type.
- In Standby, view breaking news in Live Monitor List (P.9-6).

Window Description (Example: Live Monitor List)



■ Live Monitor List Indicators

	Unread News Flash		Unread General news
	Read News Flash		Read General news
	News Flash auto update disabled		General news auto update disabled

■ S! Loop List Indicators

	Unread S! Loop		S! Loop auto update disabled
	Read S! Loop		

Registering with Live Monitor Items

Live Monitor List

Register with up to one News Flash item and four General news items.

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Live Monitor ▶ Live Monitor List

1 Select **Content List** and press

2 Choose **Yes** and press

Handset connects to the Internet.

3 Select an item and press

- Follow onscreen instructions.

S! Loop List

Register with up to five S! Loop items.

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Live Monitor ▶ S! Loop List

1 Select **S! Loop** and press

2 Choose **Yes** and press

Handset connects to the Internet.

- Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.

Resetting Live Monitor List/S! Loop List

Press ▶ Select **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Live Monitor** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Settings** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Reset Live Monitor** ▶ Press ▶ Enter **Handset Code** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

- Not available during auto updates.

Deleting Live Monitor Items

Open Live Monitor List or S! Loop List and follow these steps.

• One Entry

Select an item ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Delete This Monitor** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

• All Entries

Select an item ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select **Delete** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Delete All** ▶ Press ▶ Enter **Handset Code** ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

Opening Information

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Live Monitor

1 Select **Live Monitor List** or **S! Loop List** and press

2 Select an item and press

Title list appears.

To update Live Monitor items, select one ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select **Reload** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Reload This Monitor** or **Reload All** ▶ Press

3 Select a title and press

Information appears.

Press **Prev** or **Next** to open other titles.

To access the Internet, select the title in information ▶ Press ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press

Automatic Update

Update Live Monitor items automatically.

- Updating Live Monitor items may incur high charges.
- Update Frequency
 - Live Monitor List News Flash: After a set interval
 - Live Monitor List General news: Once a day
 - S! Loop List items: Approximately four times a day
- Automatic Update is **Off** by default.

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Live Monitor ▶ Settings ▶ Automatic Update

1 Select **Live Monitor** or **S! Loop** and press

2 **Live Monitor List**

1 Select **News Flash** or **General** and press

2 Press

3 Select an interval or choose **On** and press

■ To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ Press

S! Loop List

1 Press

2 Choose **On** and press

■ To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ Press

- Note** ▶
- Automatic Update does not affect Live Monitor List News Flash or S! Loop List update items overnight.
 - Automatic Update is only available in Japan.
 - Update may fail if signal is weak/handset is out-of-range.
 - USIM Card replacement cancels Automatic Update.

Using PC Site Browser

- Browsing PC sites may incur higher charges.
- Download/view document (.pdf, .doc, .xls, and .ppt)/image (JPEG, PNG and GIF) files. See **P.12-16** "Document Viewer."
 - PNG/GIF images larger than 300 KB cannot be saved.

Opening Yahoo! JAPAN

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ PC Site Browser

1 Select **Homepage** and press

Handset connects to the Internet and Yahoo! JAPAN Home opens (appears).

- When a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.
 - To disconnect, press .
 - Handset remains connected to the Internet even if it is closed.



2 Highlight a menu item and press

- Repeat Step 2 to open additional links.

■ Basic Operations: **P.15-5**

■ To return to the previous page, press **Back**.



■ To return to the initial page, press **Options** ▶ Select **Forward** ▶ Press

■ To jump to page top or bottom, press **Options** ▶ Select **Convenient Functions** ▶ Press ▶ Select **Jump to Top** or **Jump to Bottom** ▶ Press





■ To return to Yahoo! JAPAN Home, press **Options** ▶ Select **Homepage** ▶ Press

3 To exit, press then choose **Yes** and press




Switching View

- Open a page and follow these steps.
 - Press  **Options** ➔ **Select PC Screen or Small Screen** ➔ Press 
 - In Small Screen view, PC sites are redesigned to fit Display.







Zoom

- Open a page and follow these steps.
 - Press  **Options** ➔ **Select Convenient Functions** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Zoom** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select a scale** ➔ Press 

Rotating 90 Degrees Clockwise

- Open a page and follow these steps.
 - Press  **Options** ➔ **Select Convenient Functions** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Rotation** ➔ Press 
 - Repeat the above steps to return to standard view. Exiting PC Site Browser cancels rotation.

Jump to Location

- Open a page and follow these steps.
 - Press  **Options** ➔ **Select Convenient Functions** ➔ Press  ➔ **Select Quick Movement** ➔ Press  ➔ Use  to select a location ➔ Press 
 - Alternatively, press  for 1+ seconds to open the Quick Movement map.

Using History

Main Menu ▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➔ *PC Site Browser* ➔ *History*

1 Select an item and press

- To open properties, send URL, sort items or delete, see **P.15-4**.

Tip ▶ History stores up to 300 pages; when full, oldest are deleted to make room for new ones.

Entering URLs Directly

Main Menu ▶ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➔ *PC Site Browser* ➔ *Enter URL*

1 Enter URL and press

- Yahoo! Keitai page may open depending on the URL.
- To select from previously entered URLs, see **P.15-4**.

Additional Functions

Common Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Common Settings

Font Size Default: Standard	Change character size Select Font Size ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Yahoo! Keitai or PC Site Browser ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a size ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Scroll Unit Default: Single Line	Select from three scroll units Select Scroll Settings ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Scroll Unit ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select a unit ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Page Navigation Default: On	Show/hide navigation map for continuous scroll Select Scroll Settings ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Page Navigation ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose On or Off ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> • Available for PC Site Browser only.
Downloads Default: Show Images/Play Sounds	Select whether to download images and sounds automatically or to open text information only Images Select Downloads ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Images ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Show Images or Do not Show ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> Sounds Select Downloads ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Sounds ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Play Sounds or Do not Play ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>

Memory Operation	Clear cache (temporarily saved information in Cache Memory), cookies (information sent by a server for user identification) or authentication information (user ID or password previously entered) Select Memory Operation ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Delete Cache, Delete Cookies or Delete Auth Info ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Download to Default: Phone Preferred	Select whether to save downloaded files on handset or Memory Card Select Download to ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Select Phone Preferred or Prefer Card ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> • If selected memory is low, downloaded files are not saved. • Saving to Memory Card is prohibited depending on the file; such files are saved to handset.
Initialized Browser	Restore default settings and reset Bookmarks and Saved Pages Select Initialized Browser ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Reset Settings	Restore default browser settings Select Reset Settings ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Enter Handset Code ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose Yes ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>

Security Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! Keitai ▶ Common Settings ▶ Security Settings

Manufacture Number Default: Off	Select whether or not to send handset manufacture number automatically for authentication Select Manufacture Number ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ▶ Choose On (send) or Off ▶ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
---	---

Send Referer Default: Send	Select whether or not to send referer information to the Server Select <i>Send Referer</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select <i>Send or Not Send</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Cookies Default: Enabled	Enable or disable cookies (P.15-18) Select <i>Cookies</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select <i>Enabled, Disabled or Confirm</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Script Settings Default: On	Select whether or not to run scripts Select <i>Script Settings</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select <i>On, Ask NW Access, Confirm or Off</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Secure Prompt Default: Show	Show or hide confirmations before entering and exiting secure pages Select <i>Secure Prompt</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select <i>Show or Do not Show</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Keep Auth Info Default: Per Browsing	Previously entered user ID or password is entered automatically for authentication Select <i>Keep Auth Info</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select <i>Per Browsing, On (authenticate automatically) or Off</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For Per Browsing, entered user ID or password remains for automatic authentication and is deleted upon exiting the Internet. For On, entered user ID or password remains even after exiting the Internet or turning handset power off. Saved user ID or password is applicable to Basic/Digest authentication. Some sites may employ other HTTP authentication schemes.

Root Certificates	Open electronic certificates issued by Certificate Authorities saved on handset Select <i>Root Certificates</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> To open certificates, select one → Press <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Press <input type="checkbox"/> to return.
Flash® Restriction Default: On	Select whether or not to restrict Flash® downloads <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select Flash® Restriction → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Choose On (restrict) or Off → Press <input type="checkbox"/>

PC Site Browser Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu	▶ <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> → <i>PC Site Browser</i> → <i>PC Site Browser Settings</i>
Warning Message Default: On	Show or hide message appearing before PC Site Browser activation or switching Select <i>Warning Message</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select <i>PC Site Browser or Yahoo! Keitai</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Choose <i>On or Off</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Zoom Setting Default: 100%	Select page scale Select <i>Zoom Setting</i> → Press <input type="checkbox"/> → Select a scale → Press <input type="checkbox"/>

16

S! Applications

Getting Started	16-2
Using S! Applications	16-3
■ Starting S! Applications	16-3
■ Downloading S! Applications	16-4
■ Screensaver	16-4
Managing S! Applications	16-5
S! Application Settings	16-5

Getting Started

Download S! Applications, including games.

- Download and use 814SH/815SH compatible S! Applications.
- Separate subscriptions are required for S! Applications downloaded via Yahoo! Keitai.

Lifestyle-Appli

- Lifestyle-Appli, an S! Application required to use S! FeliCa, is preloaded on handset (**P.17-2**). Lifestyle-Appli settings and usage patterns resemble those of other S! Applications.

Network S! Applications

- Network S! Applications require Internet connection.
 - Before using a Network S! Application, a message appears indicating that Internet connection is required. To skip this confirmation, see **P.16-5**.

Memory Status

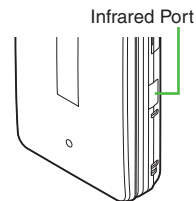
- S! Applications are saved in S! Appli Library. To check memory status, see **P.8-2**.

Tip ▶ For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).


Remote Control

Use handset to control a TV, VCR, etc. (A compatible S! Application is required.)

- Align Infrared Port (right) with infrared port of target device.
- Maximum usage distance is approximately five meters (with a fully charged battery).
- Remote control operation may not be possible depending on ambient light level, obstacles, etc.



Video Output

Start a Video Output-compatible S! Application and press  to view it on a TV, VCR, etc. For details, see **P.9-13**. Confirm compatibility in properties (Step 1 on **P.16-3**).

Using S! Applications

Starting S! Applications



Main Menu ▶ S! Appli




1 Select S! Appli and press

S! Appli Library opens.

 To switch between handset and Memory Card, press 

Options ▶ Select **Change to Phone** or **Change to Memory Card** ▶ Press 

 To open Java™ License Information, select **Information** ▶ Press 

 To open properties, select an S! Application ▶ Press 
Options ▶ Select **Details** ▶ Press 

2 Select an S! Application and press

S! Application starts.

- For operations, refer to the source Internet site, etc.
- If the S! Application cannot be used, S! Appli Library returns.

3 To exit, press

 To pause, select **Suspend** ▶ Press 

- S! Application resumes from pause point.

4 Select **End** and press



Tip ▶ Incoming transmissions automatically pause S! Application.
To show notice instead, see **P.16-6** "Calls & Alarms."

Resuming S! Applications

1 While appears in Standby, press

2 Select **Resume** and press

 To end the S! Application, select **End** ▶ Press 

 To open Main Menu and keep the S! Application paused, select **Cancel** ▶ Press 

Memory Card S! Applications

Synchronize Memory Cards used on other SoftBank handsets, PCs and other devices to update S! Appli Library. Retrieve Network Information beforehand (**P.1-16**).

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli ▶ Settings ▶ Synchronization

1 Choose **Yes** and press

Tip ▶ It may take some time to update S! Appli Library depending on the number of files saved, etc.

Downloading S! Applications

- Make sure signal is strong.
- S! Applications cannot be downloaded while one is paused.

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli ▶ S! Appli ▶ Download

1 Open an Internet site offering S! Applications

2 Select an S! Application and press

Properties appear.

- Check S! Application title, file size, etc.

3 Press **Yes**

Download starts.

Press to cancel.

4 Downloaded S! Application is automatically saved and a confirmation appears

- When you download a new version of S! Application set as Screensaver (right), Screensaver may be canceled.

5 Choose **Yes** and press

Internet connection ends and S! Appli Library opens.

To return to the site, choose **No** and press .

Starting S! Applications: **P.16-3**

- Tip ▶**
- Some S! Applications require permission settings. Follow onscreen prompts (may be in Japanese).
 - Download compatible S! Applications to Memory Card.

Screensaver

Set an S! Application to activate when handset enters Standby.

Activating/Canceling Screensaver

Screensaver is **Off** by default.

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli ▶ Settings ▶ Screensaver ▶ Switch On/Off

1 Choose **On** and press

To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ Press

Tip ▶ To set Activation Time, see **P.16-6**.

Setting Screensaver

- Only one compatible S! Application can be set for Screensaver.
- Screensaver cannot be set when an S! Application is paused.
- Memory Card Lifestyle-Appli or S! Applications cannot be set.

Main Menu ▶ S! Appli ▶ S! Appli

1 Select an S! Application and press **Options**

2 Select **As Screensaver** and press

- **As Screensaver** appears for compatible S! Applications.

- Note ▶**
- Screensaver may not start or an active Screensaver may be canceled when Headphones or an external device (handsfree device, etc.) is connected to handset.
 - Screensaver which responds to incoming transmissions may cancel out selected Mode Settings profile.

Managing S! Applications

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli

Permission	Customize the method of confirmation, etc. for each S! Application operation
	<p>Select an S! Application ► Press Options ► Select Permission ► Press ► Select an item ► Press ► Select an option ► Press </p> <p>■ To reset, press Options ► Select Permission ► Press ► Select Reset Settings ► Press ► Choose Yes ► Press </p> <p>• Options:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Ask Once Confirmation appears at initial activation■ Always Ask Confirmations appear before operations■ Never Ask Confirmations do not appear■ No Operation is blocked <p>• Some S! Applications have no settings. Items/options vary by S! Application.</p>

Move to Card	Move S! Applications to Memory Card
	<p>Select an S! Application ► Press Options ► Select Move to Card ► Press </p> <p>■ When an older version of the S! Application is saved, choose Yes to overwrite or No ► Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• S! Applications cannot be moved to Memory Card when the same S! Application is already saved or when Memory Card memory is low.• Some S! Applications cannot be moved to Memory Card.
Delete	Delete S! Applications one at a time
	<p>Select an S! Application ► Press Options ► Select Delete ► Press ► Choose Yes ► Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Handset Code may be required.• Some preloaded S! Applications can be deleted. To restore them, perform Memory All Clear (P.16-6).

Cancel Screensaver to manage Screensaver S! Application.

S! Application Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► Settings

Application Volume Default Level 3	Adjust the volume of S! Application sounds
	<p>Select Application Volume ► Press ► Use to adjust level ► Press </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• In Manner mode, volume set in Manner settings applies.

Backlight <small>Default</small> Normal Settings	Select a Backlight status for S! Applications Select Backlight ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select Switch On/Off ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select Always On, Always Off or Normal Settings ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Always On Backlight remains on while S! Application runs ▪ Always Off Backlight remains off while S! Application runs ▪ Normal Settings Applies Display Backlight setting (P.9-12)
Blink <small>Default</small> On	When activated, Backlight flashes while compatible S! Applications play Select Backlight ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select Blink ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Choose On or Off ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Vibration <small>Default</small> On	When activated, handset vibrates while compatible S! Applications play Select Vibration ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Choose On or Off ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • In Manner mode, vibration set in Manner settings applies.
Screensaver Activation Time <small>Default</small> 3 seconds	Enter time delay before Screensaver activates in Standby Select Screensaver ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select Activation Time ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Enter time (01 - 10 seconds) ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Surround <small>Default</small> On	Set surround effect for S! Applications Select Surround ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Choose On or Off ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use Headphones to enjoy surround effect.

Calls & Alarms <small>Default</small> *	Select handset response to incoming calls, etc. while an S! Application is active Select Calls & Alarms ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select from Voice Calls to Start Demand ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select handset response ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Handset response options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Accept Calls, Message/Alarm/Start Priority S! Application pauses for incoming call/mail, Alarm or S! Appli Request ▪ Show Call Notice, Message/Alarm/Start Notice A message appears for incoming calls, mail, etc. For example, 090392XXXX1 appears. Press <input type="checkbox"/> to answer a call. • Regardless of setting, a message appears for S! Applications started from Screensaver.
Set to Default	Restore default S! Application settings Select Set to Default ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Choose Yes ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Memory All Clear	Restore S! Appli Library to default setting Delete IC Card (P.17-2) data beforehand Select Memory All Clear ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Choose Yes ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Memory All Clear deletes downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Appli. • Memory All Clear resets Near Chat application password and thus cancels Near Chat access restriction.

*Voice Calls/Video Calls/Circle Talk: Accept Calls
 Incoming Message: Message Notice
 Alarm: Alarm Priority
 Start Demand: Start Priority

17

S! FeliCa (Japanese)

Basics	17-2
■ Starting Lifestyle-Appli	17-2
Using S! FeliCa	17-3
■ Reader/Writer Transactions	17-3
■ IC Info Display	17-4
Locking IC Card	17-5
■ IC Card Lock	17-5
■ Remote Lock.....	17-5
S! FeliCa Settings	17-7

Basics

S! FeliCa encompasses a range of IC Card-based services available via FeliCa-compatible SoftBank handsets. To use e-money, e-ticketing and reward point systems, etc., hold handset over a compatible reader/writer at a shop or restaurant, etc.

■ S! FeliCa Terms

FeliCa	A contactless IC card technology enabling wireless data transmissions with compatible reader/writer terminals
IC Card	The FeliCa chip embedded in FeliCa-compatible handsets. Holds information required to use S! FeliCa.
Lifestyle-Appli	S! Applications required to use S! FeliCa. Lifestyle-Appli settings and usage patterns resemble those of other S! Applications (P.16-5 - 16-6). However, Lifestyle-Appli cannot be set as Screensaver. Edy e-money Lifestyle-Appli is preloaded on handset. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Edy is a prepaid e-money service run by bitWallet Inc.

- Note** ▶
- IC Card data content varies by service and usage history. Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli. Contact service providers for Lifestyle-Appli registration and usage details.
 - SoftBank is not liable for damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of IC Card data/settings.

Service Usage Outline

Download Lifestyle-Appli

Download Lifestyle-Appli via Internet site.

- Lifestyle-Appli is saved to Lifestyle-appli folder.




Complete Registration/Set Up

Activate Lifestyle-Appli, complete registration/ customize settings.

- Charge accounts, check balance or payment records, etc.



Use Service

To use S! FeliCa at shops, restaurants, and locations, place  logo over reader/writer.




- Use e-money/e-tickets to shop/travel; earn reward points.



Note ▶ Keep service passwords/customer service contact information, etc. in a separate place.

Starting Lifestyle-Appli

Lifestyle-Appli cannot be started during calls or when an S! Application is active.

Main Menu ▶ Lifestyle-appli

- 1 Select Lifestyle-appli and press** 
 - ▶ To download a Lifestyle-Appli, select **Download** ▶ Press 
- 2 Select an application and press** 

Lifestyle-Appli starts.
- 3 To end the Lifestyle-Appli, press** , **select End and press** 

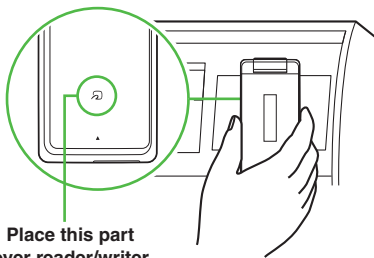
Using S! FeliCa

Reader/Writer Transactions

Follow these steps to conduct a transaction. Example: making an electronic payment:

- Complete registration, setup and charge in advance.
- Complete transactions without activating a Lifestyle-Appli.

1 Place logo over reader/writer



- The illustration above is for reference only.
- Confirm scan results on reader/writer display.
- If recognition is slow, move handset around slightly.
- Reader/writer will scan FeliCa IC Card even during calls or Internet transmissions. (It may take some time.)

- Note** ▶
- Transactions are possible even when handset power is off. (Lifestyle-Appli does not start automatically.)
 - Align handset parallel to reader/writer.
 - Foreign articles can block/hamper recognition.
 - S! FeliCa is not available when battery is low. Charge it beforehand.

- Tip** ▶
- When placed over sensor, handset may display a message, vibrate or activate mail, Internet or an S! Application for some services. To disable response, see P.17-7 "Interface Settings."






IC Info Display

Show Lifestyle-Appli balances on External Display.
For use with compatible S!/Lifestyle-Applications.

Setup

Add Lifestyle-Applications to IC Info Display list.
IC Info Display is **Off** with no applications listed by default.

Main Menu ▶ Lifestyle-appli ▶ IC Card Settings ▶ IC Info. Display

- 1** Enter Handset Code and press 
- 2** Use  to select <empty> and press  **Options**
- 3** Select **S! Appli** or **Lifestyle-appli** and press 
- 4** Select an application and press 





Note ▶ Start Lifestyle-Appli once before adding it to IC Info Display list.

Tip ▶ Only compatible applications can be added.

Move

Move applications up/down IC Info Display list

Main Menu ▶ Lifestyle-appli ▶ IC Card Settings ▶ IC Info. Display

Enter Handset Code ▶ **Press**  ▶ **Select an application** ▶ **Press**  **Options** ▶ **Select Move** ▶ **Press**  ▶ **Select a location** ▶ **Press** 


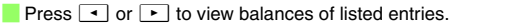





Delete

Remove applications from IC Info Display list

Main Menu ▶ Lifestyle-appli ▶ IC Card Settings ▶ IC Info. Display

Enter Handset Code ▶ **Press**  ▶ **Select an application** ▶ **Press**  **Options** ▶ **Select Delete** ▶ **Press** 

Checking Lifestyle-Appli Balance

- 1** **With handset closed, press**  **for 1+ seconds**
Balance for first IC Info Display list entry appears.
 Press  or  to view balances of listed entries.
 Press  or  to exit.

Note ▶ Balances do not appear if IC Card Lock, Keypad Lock or Password Lock is active.

Locking IC Card

IC Card Lock

Use this function to restrict access to/prevent unauthorized use of S! FeliCa on handset.

IC Card Lock is **Off** by default.

Main Menu ▶ *Lifestyle-appli* ▶ *IC Card Settings* ▶ *IC Card Lock*

- 1 Choose *On* and press**
■ To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ Press
- 2 Enter Handset Code and press**
- 3 Choose *Yes* and press**

Remote Lock

Disable S! FeliCa remotely by mail or phone.

Mail Remote Lock	Send mail with specified password (right) to activate Remote Lock
Call Remote Lock	Call from a specified phone (P.17-6) to activate Remote Lock

Mail Remote Lock

■ Preparation on Handset

Main Menu ▶ *Lifestyle-appli* ▶ *IC Card Settings* ▶ *Remote Lock*

- 1 Enter Handset Code and press**
- 2 Select *Mail Remote Lock* and press**
- 3 Select *Remote Lock PW* and press**
- 4 Enter a password and press**
 - Enter between 5 and 16 alphanumeric.
- 5 Select *Switch On/Off* and press**
- 6 Choose *On* and press**
 - To cancel, choose **Off** ▶ Press
 - Reactivate Mail Remote Lock to use the same settings.
- 7 Press** **Save**

Lock Notice Settings

■ IC Card Lock confirmation notice is sent to Remote Lock message sender by default. To change recipient or disable notice, follow these steps after Step 6 on P.17-5.

• Changing Recipient

Select **LockNoticeSettings** → Press → Select **Email Lock Notice** → Press → Select **AddressTo Notice** → Press → Select **Address to Notice** → Press → Select how to specify recipient → Press → Select/enter recipient → Press

• Disabling Notice

Select **LockNoticeSettings** → Press → Select **Email Lock Notice** → Press → Choose **Off** → Press

■ Activating Remote Lock via Mail

1 Send S! Mail or e-mail to handset with password (P.17-5) as subject

- Leave other fields blank.

After Handset Receives Message

■ IC Card Lock is set and notice is sent from handset to specified mail address.

Note ► If handset cannot receive mail IC Card Lock is not set.

■ Call Remote Lock

■ Preparation on Handset

- Enable Remote Lock activation via public phones.
- Save up to two phone numbers from which to call handset.

Main Menu ► Lifestyle-appli ► IC Card Settings ► Remote Lock

1 Enter Handset Code and press

2 Select **Call Remote Lock** and press

3 Select **Phone No. to Lck 1** and press

► To enable activation via public phone, select **Set Public Phone** → Press → Choose **On** → Press

► To disable activation via public phone, choose **Off**.

4 Select **Phone Book** or **Enter Number** and press

5 Select/enter a phone number and press

► To save second phone number, select **Phone No. to Lck 2** → Press → Repeat Steps 4 - 5

6 Select **Switch On/Off** and press

7 Choose **On** and press

► To cancel, choose **Off** → Press

- Reactivate Call Remote Lock to use the same settings.

8 Press **Save**

Count for Lock

- By default, IC Card Lock is set after three consecutive Missed Calls from specified phone. To change required Missed Call count, follow these steps after Step 7 on P.17-6.

Select **Count for Lock** ➔ Press ➔ Enter Missed Call count (3 -10) ➔ Press

Activating Remote Lock via Phone

1 Using one of the specified phones, call handset

- Public phones can be used for this function if Set Public Phone is activated beforehand.

2 End the call

The call is recorded as a Missed Call on your handset.

3 Within three minutes, repeat Steps 1 - 2 until the specified number of Missed Calls are recorded

After Specified Number of Missed Calls

- IC Card Lock is set; a message announces Remote Lock activation.

- Note** ➔
- Missed Call count is reset by calls from numbers not saved for this function. If series is interrupted, start over from the beginning.
 - When Call Forwarding is active, Missed Calls may not be recorded.

S! FeliCa Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ➔ Lifestyle-appli ➔ IC Card Settings

IC Card Status	Check IC Card status Select IC Card Status ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> If IC Card Lock is set, choose Yes ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Interface Settings Default On (all)	Set handset response to reader/writer commands: Choose On for S! Appli to activate S! Application, Browser to access Internet, Messaging to activate mail, Vibration to vibrate handset, and Pop-up Message to open pop-up message Select Interface Settings ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Select from S! Appli to Pop-up Message ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Choose On or Off ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/>
Set to Default	Cancel custom settings and return S! FeliCa settings to their defaults Select Set to Default ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> ➔ Choose Yes ➔ Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none">Set to Default does not delete downloaded Lifestyle-Appli.Reset All (P.9-24)/Memory All Clear (P.16-6) returns Lifestyle-Appli settings to defaults; all downloaded Lifestyle-Applications are deleted. If IC Card data remains, Reset All and Memory All Clear are disabled.

S! Cast (Japanese)	18-2
■ Service Registration & Content Subscription.....	18-2
■ New Received Information.....	18-2
■ Back Issues.....	18-2
■ Using Information.....	18-3
■ Using Weather Indicator.....	18-3
e-Books (Japanese)	18-4
■ e-Book Viewer.....	18-4
■ BookSurfing®.....	18-5

S! Cast (Japanese)

Register with S! Cast to show Weather Indicator (P.18-3) in Standby and subscribe to Japanese mobile periodicals that download to handset automatically overnight.

- A separate subscription and registration are required.
- Only available within Japan on compatible 3G handsets.

Service Registration & Content Subscription

Complete service registration to use S! Cast, then subscribe to content.

Registration and subscription require Internet use (connection fees apply). Confirm signal strength beforehand.

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment ▶ S! CAST/Weather Icon

1 Select **Registration/Cancel** and press **[OK]**

Handset connects to the Internet and service registration page opens.

- Follow onscreen instructions.

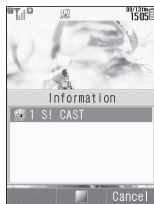
New Received Information

1 Information window opens for new information

2 Select **S! CAST** and press **[OK]**

Information appears.

- Follow onscreen instructions. Information handling is similar to that of Yahoo! Keitai.
 - Selecting Items: P.15-5
 - Saving Files to Data Folder: P.15-12
 - Using Linked Info: P.15-13



Information

3 Press **[End Call]** to exit

Show or Hide Information Window

- Press **[OK]** ▶ Select **Entertainment** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select **S! CAST/Weather Icon** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select **S! CAST Notif.** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Choose **On or Off** ▶ Press **[OK]**

Opening Unread Latest Information

- Press **[OK]** ▶ Select **Entertainment** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select **S! CAST/Weather Icon** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select **What's New** ▶ Press **[OK]**

Requesting Re-Delivery

- If information delivery fails, follow these steps to request re-delivery of latest information. (Make sure signal is strong and stable.)

Press **[OK]** ▶ Select **Entertainment** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select **S! CAST/Weather Icon** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select **Get Latest Contents** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **[OK]**

Back Issues

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment ▶ S! CAST/Weather Icon ▶ History

1 Select date and press **[OK]**

2 Press **[End Call]** to exit

Using Information

Save File	Press Options ➔ Select Save Items ➔ Press
Change Font Size	Press Options ➔ Select Font Size ➔ Press ➔ Select a size ➔ Press
Change Scroll Unit	Press Options ➔ Select Scroll Unit ➔ Press ➔ Select a unit ➔ Press
Copy Text	Press Options ➔ Select Copy Text ➔ Press ➔ Perform from Step 3 on P.3-8
Open Properties	Press Options ➔ Select Page Information ➔ Press ■ Press to return.

Using Weather Indicator

After S! Cast registration, local area weather indicator (updated automatically based on Location Information) appears in Standby.

- To check weather forecast, see right.

☀ : Clear Skies (Day)
 🌙 : Clear Skies (Night)
 ☁ : Cloudy
 🌧 : Rain
 ❄ : Snow
 ⚡ : Thunder Showers

/ : Partly/Chance of
 ▶ : Then
 Example: ☁ 🌧
 ➔ Partly cloudy with a chance of rain

- (chance of rain), (fall foliage season), etc. appear at the same time.

Manual Update

- Press ➔ Select **Entertainment** ➔ Press ➔ Select **S! CAST/Weather Icon** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Weather Icon** ➔ Press ➔ Select **Manual Update** ➔ Press ➔ Choose **Yes** ➔ Press
- Available when Icon Update is *On*.

Weather Forecast (Japanese)

Main Menu ➔ *Entertainment* ➔ *S! CAST/Weather Icon* ➔ *Weather Icon*

- 1 Select **Weather** and press

Weather Indicator Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ➔ *Entertainment* ➔ *S! CAST/Weather Icon* ➔ *Weather Icon* ➔ *Settings*

Standby Settings Default On	Show or hide Weather Indicator in Standby Select Standby Settings ➔ Press ➔ Choose On or Off ➔ Press
Weather Notif. Default On	Toggle Notification (Information window) on/off Select Weather Notif. ➔ Press ➔ Choose On or Off ➔ Press
Icon Update Default On	Activate or cancel automatic updates Select Icon Update ➔ Press ➔ Choose On or Off ➔ Press ■ For On , choose Yes ➔ Press

e-Books (Japanese)

Use BookSurfing® to download/view e-media (books, comics, photo books, etc.), or e-Book Viewer to open/view XMDF files on 814SH/815SH. Zoom pages or play embedded sounds/vibration.

Content Key required for access to some e-media.

e-Book Viewer	Use to open or view XMDF files
BookSurfing®	Use to download/view e-media or CCF files

Downloading e-Books

■ Press ▽ ⇒ Select **メニューリスト** ⇒ Press ■ ⇒ Select **書籍・コミック・写真集** ⇒ Press ■

- Visit Sharp Space Town for e-Book order information, etc.

e-Book Viewer

Read books and dictionary files saved in Data Folder (Books).

- Handset may not support some embedded sounds/images.
- e-Book Viewer cannot be started during Synchronization.
- e-Book Viewer is an S! Application.

Reading Books/Dictionaries

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment

1 Select **e-Book Viewer** and press ■

e-Book Viewer starts.

- Refer to the e-Book Viewer help menu for operational instructions.

When an S! Application is paused, choose **Yes** ▶ Press ■

- Note** ▶
- Only **zbf**, **zbs**, **zbk** files appear in Library.
 - e-Book Viewer ends when a book opened from Memory Card is used after removing the card.

Tip ▶ Open handset/Memory Card Data Folder (Books) via e-Book Viewer. Open other Memory Card folders containing e-Books used on other handset models via Library (P.18-5).



















Library

Open Memory Card books and dictionaries used on other handset models.



Perform Step 1 below first.

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment

1 Select *e-Book Viewer* and press Library

Switch Folders	Switch folders Press  Options → Select <i>Switch Folders</i> → Press  → Select a folder → Press 
Change Name	Rename folders/files Select a folder/file → Press  Options → Select <i>Change Name</i> → Press  → Edit → Press 
Move	Move files Select a file → Press  Options → Select <i>Move</i> → Press  → Select a location → Press  → Press 
New Folder	Create new folders Press  Options → Select <i>New Folder</i> → Press  → Enter name → Press 
Details	Open file properties Select a file → Press  Options → Select <i>Details</i> → Press 
Delete	Delete folders/files Select a folder/file → Press  Options → Select <i>Delete</i> → Press  → Choose <i>Yes</i> → Press 

Copy Text

- In Reading window, press  (メニュー) → Select 文字列をコピー → Press  → Perform from Step 3 on P.3-8
 - Some text cannot be copied.

BookSurfing®

Activate BookSurfing® S! Application to read comics, photo books and other CCF files saved in Data Folder (Books). To read fee-based CCF files, download Content Keys.

Main Menu ▶ Entertainment

1 Select *BookSurfing* and press

BookSurfing® S! Application starts.

- Refer to the BookSurfing® help menu for operational instructions.

 When an S! Application is paused, choose **Yes** → Press 

Note ▶ When purchasing a new handset, move CCF files via Memory Card and retrieve Content Key to open the files. Some files may need to be re-downloaded.

Tip ▶ Save CCF files to handset/Memory Card Data Folder (Books).

S! Town (Japanese)	19-2	Circle Talk	19-8
■ Using S! Town.....	19-2	■ Initiating Circle Talk.....	19-8
S! Loop (Japanese)	19-2	■ Accepting a Circle Talk Request	19-10
Hot Status	19-3	■ Creating Circle Talk Member List	19-10
■ Changing My Status	19-3	■ Editing Circle Talk Member List.....	19-11
■ Registering Members	19-4	■ Circle Talk Settings	19-11
■ Opening Hot Status	19-5	Near Chat (Japanese)	19-12
■ Editing Hot Status Member List.....	19-6	■ Getting Started.....	19-12
■ Hot Status Settings.....	19-7	■ Sending Near Chat Request.....	19-13
		■ Receiving Near Chat Request	19-13

S! Town (Japanese)

S! Town is an online communication application. Select an avatar to enter this 3D virtual town, where you can participate in events and meet other users.

- Usage requires the pre-installed S! Town S! Application.
- Internet connection is required; may incur high charges.
- S! Town is not available if Internet access is restricted by subscription.

Using S! Town

When using S! Town for the first time, agree to the terms of service then complete free user registration.

Main Menu ▶ *Communication*

1 Select **S! Town** and press

S! Town starts.

- Refer to the S! Town S! Application's help menu for operational instructions.

- Tip** ▶
- Check registration status or cancel registration via Yahoo! Keitai.
 - An upgrade notice may appear when starting S! Town. Follow onscreen instructions to upgrade.

S! Town Library

- Downloaded S! Town-compatible S! Applications are saved to S! Town Library. To start an application in S! Town Library, follow these steps.

Press ▶ Select **Communication** ▶ Press ▶ Select **S! Town** ▶ Press **Library** ▶ Select an application ▶ Press

S! Loop (Japanese)

S! Loop is an online communication service. Share your diary, join BBS, etc.

- Internet connection is required; may incur high charges.
- S! Loop is not available if Internet access is restricted by subscription.

Main Menu ▶ *Communication*

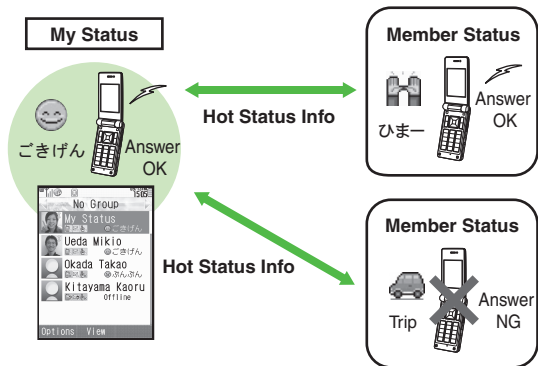
1 Select **S! Loop** and press

- Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.

Hot Status

Exchange current usage status, mood, etc. with compatible handsets.

A separate subscription is required.



- Register compatible handset numbers to member list. Hot Status information is updated automatically.

Note ▶ Hot Status is not available when IP Service Setting (P.9-18) is **Off**.

Changing My Status

1 Press **[X+Z]** for 1+ seconds

My Status window opens.

- Only Connection Setting and Standby Window On/Off are available when Connection status (▲) is **Offline**.

2 Select an item and press **[■]**

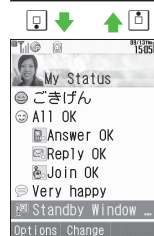
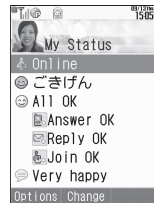
3 Select status and press **[■]**

- To change more items, repeat Steps 2 - 3.
■ For Comment (☞), enter text ▶ Press **[■]**

4 Press **[Z]** **Update**

My Status is set.

- New status is sent to Hot Status members.
- Omit Step 4 for Connection Setting and Standby Window On/Off.



■ My Status Items & Settings

Item	Setting	Default
Connection Setting	Online ¹ /Offline	Offline
Status	Select from 16 combinations ²	☺ ごきげん
Answer Status	All OK/Only Mail is OK/ All NG/User Setting ³	All OK
Availability (Calls)	Answer OK/Urgency Only/Answer NG	Answer OK
Availability (Mail)	Reply OK/Check Later	Reply OK
Availability (Circle Talk)	Join OK/Auto Join/ Join NG	Join OK
Comment	Up to 15 characters	—
Standby Window	On/Off	On

¹Even if **Online** is set, Connection status is updated to **Unknown** or **Offline** after a period of no signal detection. (Connection status is updated to **Online** when signal returns.)

²Create custom combinations by changing Status Icon/Label (P.19-7 "Status Setting").

³See P.19-7 "Answer Status" to assign custom combination.

Registering Members

Register members by sending or receiving a request.

- Register up to 30 members.
- Members cannot be registered when Connection Setting (left) is **Offline**.

Registering by Sending a Request

Main Menu ▶ Communication

1 Select **Hot Status** and press

- When members are already registered, use to select a Group ▶ Press **Options** ▶ Select **Add Member** ▶ Press ▶ Skip ahead to Step 3

2 Choose **Yes** and press

3 **Phone Book**

1 Select **Phone Book** and press

2 Select an entry and press

- For entries with multiple numbers, select one ▶ Press

Direct Entry

1 Select **Add New Entry** and press

2 Enter a phone number and press

4 Choose **Yes** and press

Registration request is sent to the number.

- Registration is complete when an acceptance notice arrives.
- When registration is complete, My Status is sent and member's Hot Status information appears on handset.

Registering from a Received Request

When a registration request arrives, a confirmation appears.

1 Choose **Yes** and press

Acceptance notice is sent and the number is registered to Hot Status member list.

■ To reject, choose **No** → Press → Choose **Yes** → Press

- Rejection notice is sent; the number cannot be registered for 24 hours.

Tip ▶ Rejection notice is sent automatically when 30 members are already registered in total or handset fails to respond within two hours.

Opening Hot Status

Main Menu ▶ *Communication*

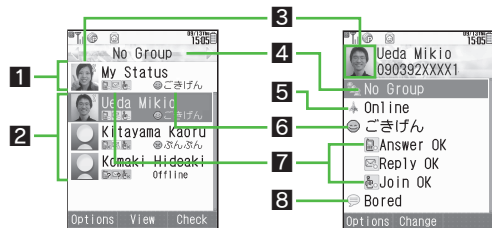
1 Select **Hot Status** and press

Hot Status member list (below) appears.

2 Use to select a Group

■ To open member status details, select a member → Press

Window Description



Member List

Member Status Details

1 My Status

2 Members

3 Image

- Image set for **Picture:** in My Details or Phone Book appears.

4 Group Name

5 Connection Status

6 Status

7 Availability

8 Comment

Editing Hot Status Member List

Renaming Groups

Main Menu ► Communication ► Hot Status

- 1 Use **[F4]** to select a Group and press **[Options]**
- 2 Select **Edit Group Name** and press **[Enter]**
- 3 Enter name and press **[Enter]**

Moving Members

Main Menu ► Communication ► Hot Status

- 1 Select a member and press **[Options]**
- 2 Select **Change Group** and press **[Enter]**
- 3 Select target Group and press **[Enter]**

Tip ► Open Standby Window in Communication mode (P.9-7) to view member Status/availability in Standby.

Deleting Members

Deleting a member simultaneously deletes your number from the deleted member's Hot Status member list.

Main Menu ► Communication ► Hot Status

- 1 Select a member and press **[Enter]**
- 2 Press **[Options]**
- 3 Select **Registration Release** and press **[Enter]**
- 4 Choose **Yes** and press **[Enter]**
- 5 Choose **Yes** and press **[Enter]**

Cancellation notice is sent and the member is deleted from Hot Status member list.

- Note ►
- Deleted members cannot be registered for 24 hours.
 - Registration request arrives when the member fails to receive the cancellation notice within 24 hours.

When Rejection/Cancellation Notice Arrives

- Member is deleted from Hot Status member list.
 - When handset fails to receive rejection/cancellation notice within 24 hours, registration request is sent to the member.

Hot Status Settings

Follow these steps first.

Main Menu ► Communication ► Hot Status ► Options (☒)

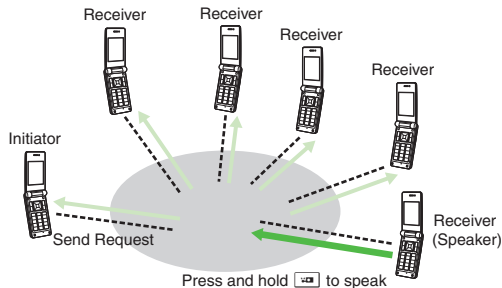
<p>Request Reply <small>Default:</small> Always Confirmed</p>	<p>Select handset response to registration requests</p> <p>Select Settings ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select Request Reply ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select an option ► Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Always Confirmed Show confirmation for all requests ■ Unregistered Entry Reject requests from numbers not saved in Phone Book; otherwise, confirmation appears ■ Always Ignored Reject all requests
<p>Answer Status <small>Default:</small> Calls: Answer OK Mail: Reply OK Circle Talk: Join OK</p>	<p>Assign custom combination to User Setting of Answer Status (P.19-4)</p> <p>Select Settings ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select Answer Status ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select User Setting ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select a type ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select availability ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Save</p>

<p>Status Setting</p>	<p>Change Status Icon Pictogram or edit Status Label description for My Status</p> <p>Select Settings ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select Status Setting ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select a Status ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select Status Icon ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select a Pictogram ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select Status Label ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Enter text ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Save</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Pictogram List: P.20-12 • Enter up to four characters for Status Label.
<p>Status Update</p>	<p>Update Hot Status information manually</p> <p>Select Settings ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> ► Select Status Update ► Press <input type="checkbox"/></p>
<p>Hot Status Notification List</p>	<p>Open list of unconfirmed Hot Status-related notices</p> <p>Select Hot Status Notification List ► Press <input type="checkbox"/></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ To open details, select a notice ► Press <input type="checkbox"/> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ For registration requests, see P.19-5 "Registering from a Received Request."

Circle Talk

Circle Talk is a Walkie-Talkie type communication service. Press one key to speak to up to ten parties simultaneously.

- Only available on compatible 3G handsets.
- Press and hold **[V-M]** to take the floor and speak; other participants may only listen until the floor is released.
- A subscription to Hot Status (P.19-3) is required.
- Transmission/connection fees apply during Circle Talk.



Note ▶ Before use, set IP Service Setting (P.9-18) to **On** and Connection Setting of My Status (P.19-3) to **Online**. (Circle Talk is disabled when Connection Setting is **Offline**.)

Initiating Circle Talk

Create Circle Talk member list beforehand (P.19-10).

1 Press **[V-M]**

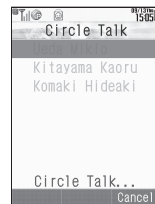
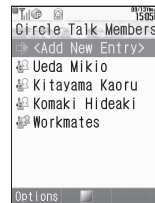
- ▶ To register Circle Talk members, select **<Add New Entry>** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Perform Step 3 on P.19-10

2 Select a member or Group and press **[OK]**

- ▶ To add members, press **[Options]** ▶ Select **Add Member** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select how to specify member ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Select a member, Group or entry, or enter a phone number ▶ Press **[OK]**
- ▶ To delete members, select one ▶ Press **[Options]** ▶ Select **Delete Member** ▶ Press **[OK]** ▶ Choose **Yes** ▶ Press **[OK]**

3 Press **[OK]** **Call**

- Circle Talk starts when request is accepted by a receiver.



4 Press and hold to speak

Do so while initiating Circle Talk to be the first speaker.


- Speaker's voice is heard by all other participants.
- Speak for up to 30 seconds at one time.
- Warning tone sounds five seconds before limit.

Press  to toggle Loudspeaker on/off

5 Release when finished

- The floor is released automatically when the time is up.

6 To speak again, press and hold when **Press and Hold** appears

-  :Own appears when you have the floor.
- **Busy** appears if the floor is taken; try again later.





7 Press to exit

- Circle Talk ends automatically when there is only one participant left, including yourself.

Direct Entry

- Enter a phone number → Press  → Perform from Step 3 on P.19-8

Rejoining Circle Talk

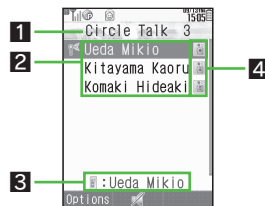
- In Standby, press / to open **Dialled Numbers/Received Calls** → Select the most recent Circle Talk record → Press  **Options** → Select **Rejoin Circle Talk** → Press 

- An error message appears when all other participants have exited or 11 participants are already engaged.

Incoming Calls/Alarm during Circle Talk


- Handset responds to incoming calls according to **Incoming Calls** settings (P.19-11).
- Alarm Times are announced after exiting Circle Talk.

Window Description



- 1 Total Number of Participants
- 2 Participants
- 3 Circle Talk Status
- 4 Connection Status

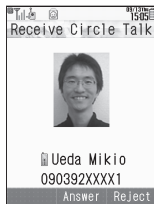
Accepting a Circle Talk Request

- 1** While handset is ringing/
vibrating, press ,  or 

Circle Talk starts.

■ To take the floor, see P.19-9.

- 2** Press  to exit



Note ► To always accept Circle Talk requests automatically, set Circle Talk availability of My Status (P.19-3) to **Auto Join**. If **Join NG** is set, Circle Talk requests are always rejected.

Creating Circle Talk Member List

Save phone numbers to create Circle Talk member list.

- Save members as individuals or Groups.
- Save up to 30 entries in total (up to ten members per Group).

- 1** Press 

- 2** Select <Add New Entry> and press 

3 Saving as Individuals

- 1** Select **Individual** and press 

- 2** Select **Members List** or **Phone Book** and press 


- 3** Select an entry and press 

■ For entries with multiple numbers, select one ► Press 

Saving as Groups

- 1** Select **Group** and press 


- 2** Press 

- 3** Enter name and press 

- 4** Select from **No.1:** to **No.10:** and press 

- 5** Select **Members List** or **Phone Book** and press 

- 6** Select an entry and press 

■ For entries with multiple numbers, select one ► Press 

- 7** Repeat Steps **4** - **6** to add members

- 8** Press  **Save**

Editing Circle Talk Member List

Editing Members or Groups

1 Press **☰**

2 Individual Members

1 Select a member and press **☰** **Options**

2 Select **Edit** and press **■**

3 Press **■**

- Perform from Step **2** in "Saving as Individuals" on P.19-10.

Groups

1 Select a Group and press **☰** **Options**

2 Select **Edit** and press **■**

- Perform from Step **2** in "Saving as Groups" on P.19-10.

Deleting Members or Groups

1 Press **☰**

2 Select a member or Group and press **☰** **Options**

3 Select **Delete** and press **■**

4 Choose **Yes** and press **■**

Circle Talk Settings

Loudspeaker Default: On	Activate or cancel Loudspeaker for Circle Talk Press ☰ → Press ☰ Options → Select Loudspeaker → Press ■ → Choose On or Off → Press ■
Incoming Calls Default: Voice Calls/ Video Calls/ Reject Calls	Set response to calls received during Circle Talk Press ☰ → Press ☰ Options → Select Incoming Calls → Press ■ → Select Voice Calls or Video Calls → Press ■ → Select handset response → Press ■ <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Handset response options:<ul style="list-style-type: none">■ Accept Calls Incoming calls interrupt Circle Talk sessions■ Reject Calls Incoming calls are ignored. (Caller hears a busy tone.)

Near Chat (Japanese)

Exchange real-time text messages wirelessly with compatible Bluetooth® devices within ten meters.

- Because this application employs Bluetooth® wireless technology transmission/connection fees do not apply.
- Usage requires the pre-installed Near Chat S! Application.
- For details, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.

Note ▶ Near Chat range may vary by ambient conditions.

Tip ▶ In the event that this handset may be used by a minor, access to this application may be password restricted by a supervising adult. For more about password restriction, see Near Chat S! Application instructions.

Getting Started

Activate the following Bluetooth® settings beforehand.

Bluetooth®	P.10-8 (choose On)
Visibility	P.10-9 (select Show My Phone)
S! Appli Request	Below (choose On)

- Note** ▶
- Handset may receive unsolicited connection requests. Choose **No** and press in Step 2 of "Receiving Near Chat Request" on **P.19-13** to reject such requests.
 - Set Visibility to **Show My Phone** and activate S! Appli Request to receive Near Chat requests.

Tip ▶ Starting Near Chat activates Bluetooth® and sets Visibility to **Show My Phone**. Bluetooth® remains active even after ending Near Chat but Visibility returns to its previous state.

S! Appli Request

S! Appli Request is **On** by default.

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ **Connectivity** (☰) ▶ Bluetooth ▶ My Device Settings ▶ S! Appli Request ▶ Switch On/Off

1 Choose **On** or **Off** and press

- For **On**, if **Activate Bluetooth?** appears, choose **Yes** ▶ Press

Sending Near Chat Request

Main Menu ▶ Communication

1 Select *Near chat* and press

■ If *Activate Bluetooth?* appears, choose **Yes** ▶ Press

2 Send Near Chat request via the application

- Near Chat starts when the other party accepts your request.

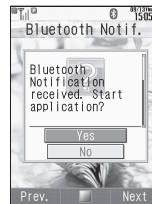
3 To end Near Chat, exit the application (P.16-3)



Receiving Near Chat Request

1 When a Near Chat request arrives, a tone sounds and **Bluetooth® Notification** appears

- After 30 seconds of inactivity, Information window opens, tone sounds and notification appears. (Information window will reopen after another 30 seconds of inactivity.)



2 Choose **Yes** and press

Near Chat S! Application starts.

■ To reject request, choose **No** ▶ Press

3 To end Near Chat, exit the application (P.16-3)

Latest Information Open details of the most recently received Near Chat request

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ **Connectivity** (📶) ▶ Bluetooth ▶ My Device Settings ▶ S! Appli Request

Select **Latest Information** ▶ Press

■ Press to return.

20

Appendix

Software Update.....	20-2
Troubleshooting.....	20-4
Function List	20-8
Key Assignments	20-10
Pictogram List	20-12
Pager Code List.....	20-13
Character Code List.....	20-14
Specifications.....	20-20
Memory List.....	20-22
Index.....	20-23
Warranty & Service	20-38
Customer Service	20-39

Software Update

Check for firmware updates and download as required.

- Choose to begin update or schedule update.
- Handset is disabled until update is complete. Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.

Precautions

Before updating software, turn power off to end all active functions/applications, then restart handset.

- Note** ▶
- Packet transmission fees do not apply to updates (including checking, downloading and rewriting).
 - Make sure signal is strong and stable beforehand.
 - Charge battery beforehand to reduce failure risk.
 - Do not remove battery; update may fail.
 - Disconnect USB Cable beforehand to reduce failure risk.

- Tip** ▶ Software Update information is also available on SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).


Updating Software

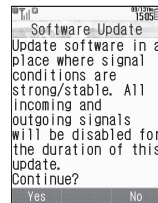
Main Menu

▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings (☎) ▶ Software Update

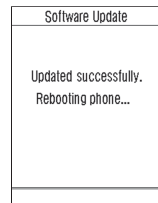
1 Select *Software Update* and press

Confirmation appears.

- Follow onscreen instructions. (ⓘ appears during update.)
- Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- When updated, a message appears and handset reboots; a completion message appears and Information window opens (ⓘ appears).
 - While completion message appears, press  to acknowledge it and close Information window.



Confirmation



Update Complete

Update Result

■ While Information window appears,

select **Update Result** → Press **[OK]**

- Press **[OK]** again to exit.

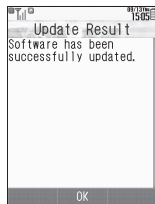
■ In Standby, press **[OK]** → Select

Settings → Press **[OK]** → Select

Software Update → Press **[OK]** → Select

Update Result → Press **[OK]**

- Press **[OK]** again to return.



Note ▶

- Update failure may disable handset. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P.20-39).
- Phone Book entries, media files, and other handset contents are not affected by firmware updates, but always back up important information. (Some files cannot be copied.) SoftBank cannot be held liable for damages from lost information, etc.
- If handset does not return to Standby after update, turn power off, reinsert battery, then restart it.

■ Scheduled Update





Confirmation appears at scheduled update time. Press **[OK]** or wait about ten seconds for update to start.

- Update will not start if other functions are in use. After all operations end, a confirmation appears. If operations do not end within ten minutes, scheduled update is automatically canceled.
- Update automatically cancels Keypad Lock.



Confirmation

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Handset won't turn on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Was  pressed and held long enough? Battery may need to be charged or replaced. Battery may not be properly installed. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press and hold  longer. Charge battery or install a charged battery. Install battery properly.
Handset won't respond	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is Switch On/Off in PIN Entry On? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If On, PIN1 is required. Enter PIN1 according to onscreen instructions. For more, see P.9-23.
<i>Insert USIM Card</i> appears in Standby and handset is unresponsive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> USIM Card may not be properly inserted. The correct USIM Card may not be inserted. There may be debris on IC chip/terminals. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure USIM Card is properly inserted. If the message still appears, USIM may be damaged. Make sure the correct USIM Card is inserted. The inserted USIM Card may not be valid. Clean relevant parts with a dry cloth and re-insert.
Keypad won't respond	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Keypad Lock may be active. ( appears) Password Lock may be active. ( appears) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cancel Keypad Lock (P.1-17). Cancel Password Lock (P.9-17).
Cannot place call from Phone Book	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The number may be saved as Secret entry. Phone Book Lock may be active. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Activate Show Secret Data (P.9-23). Cancel Phone Book Lock (P.9-18).

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
out appears in Standby and call won't connect	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Handset may be outside the service area or otherwise beyond signal transmission range. Is GSM selected in Select Service (P.2-15)? 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move to a place where signal is strong and retry. Select another mode according to service area.
Call won't connect and there's a beeping tone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Did you include the area code or the first 0? Handset may be out-of-range. (out appears) Handset Offline Mode may be active. (ⓧ appears) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dial the number including the area code or 0. Move to a place where signal is strong and retry. Cancel Offline Mode (P.2-19).
Call is choppy or cut off	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Network signal may be weak. Battery may need to be charged or replaced. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Move to a place where signal is strong and retry. Charge battery or install a charged battery.
Line is noisy during calls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Network signal may be weak or unstable. 	—
Battery won't charge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> AC Charger may not be properly connected to handset or Desktop Holder. AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to outlet. Battery may not be properly installed. Handset may not be properly inserted into Desktop Holder. There may be debris on: terminals (handset, battery or Desktop Holder); connector (AC Charger); Connection Port (Desktop Holder); External Device Port. Battery may not charge outside 5°C to 35°C. Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure connector is securely inserted and try again. Remove plug from outlet, re-insert and try again. Open handset, install battery properly and try again. Remove handset and re-insert correctly. Clean terminals, connector and Port with a cotton swab and try again. Charge within an ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C. Replace battery with a new one.
Battery charges quickly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Remaining charge shortens charging time. Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> — Replace battery with a new one.
Handset/Charger/Desktop Holder feels warm	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> During charging, AC Charger or Desktop Holder normally becomes warm; handset may feel warm to the touch during extended periods of use. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Unless handset/accessories become very hot to the touch, this should be considered normal; regardless, avoid prolonged skin contact which could cause burn injuries (P.xvii).

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery Time seems shorter than usual	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Environmental factors (temperature, charging/signal conditions), usage or settings can affect Battery Time. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> For more on Battery Time, usage factors and ways to extend Battery Time, see P.1-9.
Display flickers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Display may flicker under fluorescent lights. 	—
Display went dark	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Leaving handset open with no key presses for a preset period cancels Backlight (Time Out) then panel (Display Saving); this is not a malfunction. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press any key to reactivate Display Backlight.

Tip ▶ For repairs and after-sales services, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.20-39**).

Warning Signs


out appears

Handset is out-of-range.
Move for a better signal.


Battery low. Please connect to charger! appears and short beeps sound

Battery is low (**P.1-11**).
Charge or replace battery immediately.

Keypad Lock appears





Keypad Lock is active (**P.1-17**).
Cancel to use Keypad. Press  to answer calls.

Password Lock appears

Password Lock is active (**P.9-18**).
Cancel to place calls, etc.
Press  to answer calls.

S! Application Display Messages

Display	Cause & Solution
Application suspended. End application?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> An S! Application is paused. ↓ Choose Yes to exit application and proceed.
Application is suspended.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> An S! Application is paused. ↓ Select End to exit application or Cancel to proceed with the application paused.
○○ is downloaded to Phone. Download Size: XXKB Save Size: XXKB Download? Battery low. Download may fail.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Download may fail due to low battery. ↓ Charge battery then try again.

Display	Cause & Solution
○○ is downloaded to Memory Card. Not enough memory in Phone. Download Size: XXKB Save Size: XXKB Download?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Memory is full. ↓ Press  to download or  to cancel.
Exceeds limit. Cannot save.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 100 S! Applications are already saved. (The message disappears automatically.) ↓ Delete applications (P.16-5) and try again.
Same version found. Continue download?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The same version of selected S! Application is already saved. ↓ Choose Yes (download) or No (cancel) and press .
New version found. Continue download?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> An older version of the same S! Application is saved. ↓ Choose Yes (download) or No (cancel) and press .

Tip ► If one of these messages appears, S! Application cannot be downloaded:

- Improper data. Cannot download application.*
- Size too large. Cannot receive.*

Messaging Mishaps

■ When S! Mail is not delivered as sent

Causes include the following. For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

- **Recipient is not subscribed to S! Mail, Super Mail or Long Mail.**
- **Recipient handset is not S! Mail-compatible.**
 - The maximum size of messages/attachments recipient handsets can receive varies by make and model.
- **Recipient handset is not JPEG-compatible.**
 - Some Long Mail-compatible handsets may only be able to process PNG images; convert JPEG files to PNG (P.8-13), then attach and send.

■ When handset memory is insufficient

New messages cannot be delivered (✉ appears in red). Undeliverable mail is saved in Server Mail Box.

- Delete messages to free memory for new ones (P.14-25). When memory is available, new messages are delivered automatically.
- Delete unprotected messages automatically to receive new ones (P.14-32).
- Even if memory is not full, handset cannot receive new messages larger than remaining memory.

Function List

Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to
Communication	S! Town	P.19-2
	S! Loop	P.19-2
	Hot Status	P.19-3
	Circle Talk	P.19-8
	Near chat	P.19-12
Yahoo! Keitai	Yahoo! Keitai	P.15-3
	Bookmarks	P.15-10
	Saved Pages	P.15-10
	Enter URL	P.15-4
	History	P.15-4
	Live Monitor	P.15-14
	PC Site Browser	P.15-16
	Common Settings	P.15-18
Media Player	Music	P.7-6
	Videos	P.7-6
	Streaming	P.15-13
	Setting	P.7-8
Messaging	Received Msg.	P.14-21
	Create Message	P.14-4
	Retrieve New Msg.	P.14-16
	Drafts	P.14-26
	Templates	P.14-10
	Sent Messages	P.14-21
	Unsent Messages	P.14-21
	Chat Folder	P.14-30
	Server Mail Box	P.14-20
	Create New SMS	P.14-11
	Settings	P.14-32
	Memory Status	P.14-20

Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to	
Camera	-	P.6-2	
Data Folder	Pictures	P.8-2	
	DCIM	P.8-2	
	My Pictograms	P.8-2	
	Ring Songs-Tones	P.8-2	
	S! Appli	P.16-2	
	Music	P.8-2	
	Videos	P.8-2	
	Lifestyle-appli	P.16-2	
	Books	P.8-2	
	Custom Screens	P.9-9	
	Flash®	P.8-2	
	Flash® Ringtones	P.8-2	
	Other Documents	P.8-2	
	Memory Status	P.8-2	
Tools	Tools 1	Calendar	P.12-2
		Alarms	P.12-10
		Calculator	P.12-13
		Tasks	P.12-8
	Tools 2	World Clock	P.12-13
		Voice Recorder	P.12-14
		Document Viewer	P.12-16
		Stopwatch	P.12-17
	Tools 3	Countdown Timer	P.12-17
		Expenses Memo	P.12-18
		Notepad	P.3-10
		Barcode	P.12-19
	Phone Help	P.12-25	

Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to	
Entertainment	SI CAST/Weather Icon	P.18-2	
	BookSurfing	P.18-5	
	e-Book Viewer	P.18-4	
SI Appli	SI Appli	P.16-2	
	Settings	P.16-5	
	Information	P.16-3	
Lifestyle-appli	Lifestyle-appli	P.17-2	
	IC Card Settings	P.17-4	
Phone	Phone Book	P.4-2	
	Add New Entry	P.4-4	
	Information	P.2-7	
	Call Log	P.2-12	
	Play Messages	P.2-9	
	Call Voicemail	P.13-4	
	Category Control	P.4-11	
	My Details	P.4-19	
	Speed Dial List	P.4-14	
	Mail Groups	P.4-12	
	SI Address Book	P.4-15	
	Ph.Book Settings	P.4-15	
	Manage Entries	P.4-3	
	Settings	Mode Settings	P.9-2
		Display	P.9-4
Custom Screens		P.9-9	
Sounds & Alerts		P.9-2	
Date & Time		P.9-16	
言語選択 (Language)		P.9-11	
User Dictionary		P.3-9	
Ringer Output		P.9-16	
Earpiece Volume		P.9-26	
Change Menu		P.1-22	
Locks		P.9-17	
Software Update		P.20-2	
Master Reset		P.9-24	

Main Menu	Sub Menu	Refer to	
Settings	Connectivity	Bluetooth	P.10-6
		Infrared	P.10-2
		Mass Storage	P.11-8
		USB Charge	P.10-12
		Memory Card	P.11-2
	Call/Video Call	Call Time & Cost	P.2-13
		Answer Phone	P.2-8
		Voicemail/Divert	P.13-3
		Video Call	P.5-5
		Show My Number	P.13-8
		out Missed Calls	P.13-5
		Int'l Calling	P.9-26
Disp. Time/Call		P.9-26	
Network Settings	Call Barring	P.13-6	
	Minute Minder	P.9-26	
	Auto Answer	P.9-25	
	Call Waiting	P.13-5	
	Select Network	P.10-11	
	Select Service	P.2-15	
	Offline Mode	P.2-19	
Retrieve NW Info	P.10-11		
Location Info	P.10-12		
Network Info	P.10-11		













Key Assignments

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
1	あいうえお あいうえお	アイウエオ アイウエオ	@/_-1 □ (Space)	1	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	ABCabc2	2	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	DEFdef3	3	3
4	たちつとっ	タチツテトッ	GHIghi4	4	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	JKLjkI5	5	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	MNOmno6	6	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ	PQRSpqrs7	7	7
8	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	TUVtuv8	8	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	WXYZwxyz9	9	9
0	わをんー	ワヲンー	0	0	0
	・ ・ Log/History, Pictogram List, Symbol List	・ ・ - ¹ Log/History, Pictogram List, Symbol List ² (Symbol List → Log/History → Pictogram List in single-byte entry mode)	Log/History, Pictogram List, Symbol List ² (Symbol List → Log/ History → Pictogram List in single-byte entry mode)	* + P (Pause) ? - ³ Symbol List, Log/ History, Pictogram List	_____
	、。 ♯ (Line Break) ? ! □ (Space)		、。 ♯ (Line Break)?! □ (Space)	#	_____

¹ - is available only in single-byte katakana entry.


² Double or single-byte according to the entry mode.



³ *, +, P (Pause), ? and - are for phone number entry.

Key	Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]	Katakana [Double & Single-byte]	Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]	Numbers [Single-byte]	Character Codes
	Conversion (Up) ⁴	Cursor Up			
	Conversion (Down) ⁵	Cursor Down ↓ (Line Break)			
	Cursor Left				
	Cursor Right				
	Change Entry Mode				
	Toggle Case (for some characters)	Toggle Case + Toggle Mode (upper/lower and lower case)		_____	_____
 Press	Delete One Character, Cancel Conversion	Delete One Character			Delete Code/ One Character
 Long Press	Delete before or after cursor				
	Re-convert ⁶ Recover up to 64 deleted characters ⁷	Recover up to 64 deleted characters ⁷			
	OK				
	Phonetic Conversion	_____			_____
	Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumeric Conversion	_____			_____

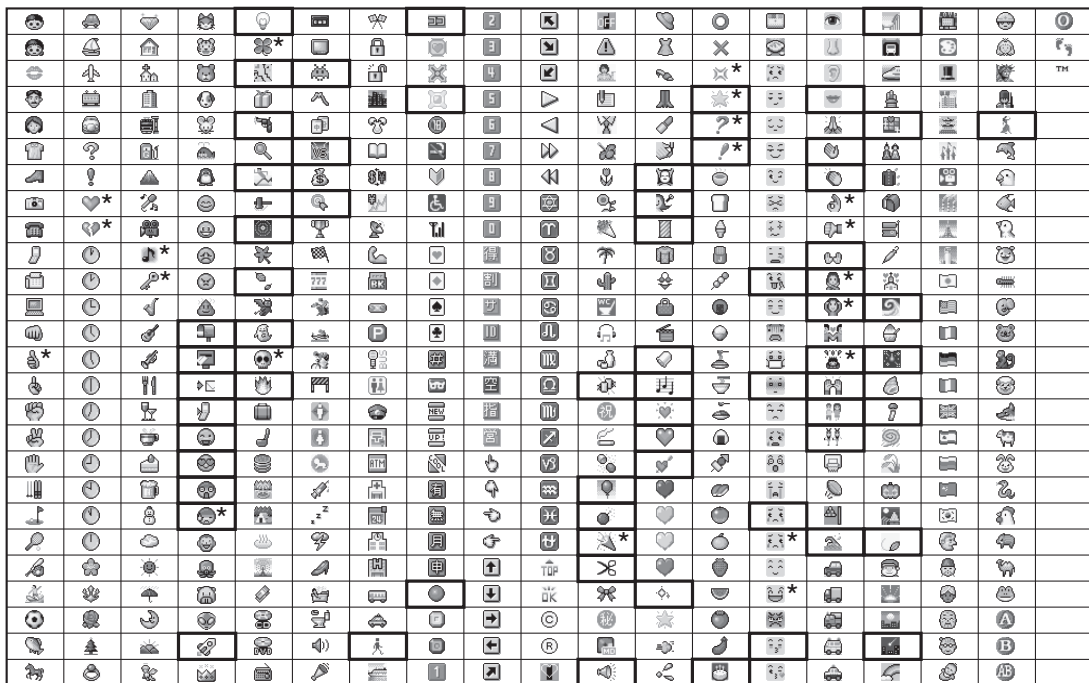
⁴Cursor moves up except during conversion.

⁵Cursor moves down except during conversion.

⁶Press  immediately after inserting characters to re-convert them. (Not available for Arrange Mail.)

⁷Press  once for each character to recover immediately after deletion. (Not available for Arrange Mail or after using  (Long Press).)

Pictogram List



Note ▶ Pictograms do not appear in e-mail or on incompatible SoftBank handsets.

- Tip** ▶
- Pictograms in are animated.
 - Animation View Pictogram (P.14-22).

Pager Code List

- Blanks indicate no entry.
- Gray background indicates upper and lower case available. Press **[FAB]** to switch immediately after character entry.

Double-byte upper case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&	☺	*1	
	8	や	(ゆ)	よ	✳	#	Space	♥	*2
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	ん	.	°	6	7	8	9	0

Double-byte lower case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			つ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	や		ゆ		よ					*2
	9										
	0				.	°					

¹Press **[7_{res}][0_{pr}]** to insert line breaks (in mail message text, Notepad, etc.).

²Press **[8_{ov}][0_{pr}]** to toggle between upper and lower case modes.

Single-byte upper case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&	☺	*1	
	8	ヤ	(ユ)	ヨ	✳	#	Space	♥	*2
	9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	ワ	ヲ	ン	.	°	6	7	8	9	0

Single-byte lower case

		Second digit (Press next)									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit (Press first)	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			つ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										*1
	8	ヤ		ユ		ヨ					*2
	9										
	0				.	°					

First Three Digits	Last Digit										First Three Digits	Last Digit										First Three Digits	Last Digit										First Three Digits	Last Digit																									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9																
363											392	粘	乃	之	莖	惱	濃	納	能	424	僻	壁	癖	碧	別	警	茂	篋	偏	奕																													
364	槌	追	痛	通	椽	津	墜	椎	393	腦	膿	農	覘	蠶	惱	濃	納	能	425	片	編	編	邊	返	邊	便	勉	婉	弁	449	愉	愈	油	癒	優	優	友	幽																					
365	漬	拓	鳧	椽	椽	椽	椽	壺	393										426	鞭										450	論	輸	唯	優	湧	湧	猶	有																					
366	孺	瓜	吊	鶴	鶴	壺	壺	壺	394										426											451	悠	憂	揖	柚	湧	湧	猶	夕																					
366									395										426											452	祐	裕	誘	遊	邑	邑	融	融																					
366									396										426											452																													
367	剌	貞	堤	定	亭	低	停	偵	396										428											452																													
367	梯	抵	提	提	庭	庭	庭	庭	397										429											453	余	揚	羊	譽	輿	預	幼	妖																					
368	艇	抵	蹄	蹄	庭	庭	庭	庭	398										430											454	揚	揚	揚	譽	輿	預	幼	妖																					
369									399										431											455																													
370									400										432											456																													
371									401										433											456																													
372									402										434											456																													
373									403										435											457																													
373									404										436											458																													
373									405										436											458																													
374	堵	途	屠	徒	斗	渡	兎	吐	405										437											458																													
374	賭	途	都	砥	斫	度	登	登	406										438											459																													
376	途	倒	島	冬	凍	塔	塔	塔	407										439											460																													
377	岩	鸕	湯	湯	投	燈	燈	燈	408										440											461																													
378	盜	答	筒	糖	藤	騰	騰	騰	409										440											462																													
379									410										440											463																													
381	鑑	鐘	頭	討	騰	動	踏	逃	411										441											464																													
382	撞	撞	洞	童	童	童	童	童	412										441											464																													
383	擲	擲	得	德	凸	凸	凸	凸	413										441											466																													
384	獨	誦	誦	誦	誦	誦	誦	誦	414										442											467																													
385	黃	韻	韻	韻	韻	韻	韻	韻	415										442											468																													
386	吞								415										443											469																													
386									416										444											470																													
387	謎	灘	奈	那	內	乍	風	雜	417										444											471																													
388	軟	灘	奈	那	內	乍	風	雜	418										444											472																													
388									419										445											473																													
388									420										446											473																													
389	虹	日	乳	入	妊	忍	認	肉	421										446											474																													
390	如	尿	任	妊	忍	認	認	認	422										447											474																													
390									422										448											475																													
391	祢	寧	葱	貓	熱	年	念	濡	423										449											476																													

Specifications

■ SoftBank 814SH

Weight	Approximately 109 g
Continuous Talk Time	Approximately 230 minutes (3G) Approximately 230 minutes (GSM)
Continuous Standby Time (handset closed)	Approximately 300 hours (3G) Approximately 290 hours (GSM)
Continuous Video Call Talk Time	Approximately 120 minutes (with Internal Camera in use)
Charging Time (power off)	AC Charger: Approximately 140 minutes In-Car Charger: Approximately 140 minutes
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 49 x 99 x 18 mm (handset closed, without protruding parts)
Maximum Output	0.25 W (3G) 2.0 W (GSM)

- Values above were calculated with battery installed.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with stable signals. Continuous Talk Time may be less than half this value if signal is weak.

■ SoftBank 815SH

Weight	Approximately 109 g
Continuous Talk Time	Approximately 230 minutes (3G) Approximately 230 minutes (GSM)
Continuous Standby Time (handset closed)	Approximately 300 hours (3G) Approximately 290 hours (GSM)
Continuous Video Call Talk Time	Approximately 120 minutes (with Internal Camera in use)
Charging Time (power off)	AC Charger: Approximately 140 minutes In-Car Charger: Approximately 140 minutes
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 49 x 99 x 18 mm (handset closed, without protruding parts)
Maximum Output	0.25 W (3G) 2.0 W (GSM)

- Values above were calculated with battery installed.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with handset closed without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals. Standby Time may be less than half this value if handset is out-of-range or signal is weak. Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, ambient temperature, etc.).

- Talk Time/Standby Time decreases with frequent use of Display/Keypad backlights.
- Talk Time/Standby Time may decrease when an S! Application is active.
- Talk Time/Standby Time decreases with handset use in poor signal conditions (**P.1-10** "Battery Time").
- Display employs precision technology, however, some pixels may appear brighter/darker.

■ AC Charger

Power Source	AC 100V-240V, 50/60 Hz
Power Consumption	12VA
Output Voltage/Current	DC 5.2V/650 mA
Charging Temperature	5°C to 35°C
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 55 x 45 x 22 mm (without protruding parts, cord)
Cord Length	Approximately 1.5 m

■ Battery

Voltage	3.7V
Battery Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	800 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 37.7 x 44.5 x 4.5 mm (without protruding parts)

Memory List

Messaging	
Received Msg.	Approximately 5 MB or 1,000 messages
Drafts	Approximately 3 MB ¹
Templates	Approximately 50 MB ²
Sent Messages	Approximately 3 MB or 500 messages ¹
Unsent Messages	Approximately 3 MB ¹

¹Drafts, Sent Messages and Unsent Messages share memory.

²Shared with S! Appli Library and Data Folder.

S! Applications	
S! Appli	Approximately 50 MB* (100 items) on handset

*Shared with Templates folder and other folders in Data Folder.

Data Folder	
Data Folder	Approximately 50 MB*

*Shared with Templates folder and S! Appli Library.

Index

Numbers

3D Pictogram	14-23
3G.....	2-15

A

AC Charger.....	x, 1-13
Accessories	x
Add New Member (Chat Folder)	14-30
Add, Edit & Delete (Networks).....	10-11
After-Sales Services.....	20-38
Alarms	12-10
Alarm Options	12-10
Alarm Settings.....	12-11
Alarm Volume	12-11
Canceling	12-12
Custom Screen.....	12-11
Deleting	12-12
Duration.....	12-11
For Manner Mode.....	12-11
Link To World Clk	12-11
Reactivating.....	12-12
Snooze	12-11
Stopping	12-12
Subject	12-10
Vibration	12-11
All Calls	2-12
Answer Phone.....	2-8, 2-17
Activating	2-8

Answer Time	2-9
Canceling	2-8
Volume	2-9

Answer Phone (Mode Settings)	9-4
Attach File	14-6
Auto Answer	9-25

B

Backlight (Display/Keypad)	9-12
Battery	x, 1-9
Battery Disposal	1-12
Battery Strength	1-11
Black List	13-8
Bluetooth®	10-6
All File Transfer (sending).....	10-10
Authorisation Code.....	10-7
Connecting to Paired Devices	10-9
Connection	10-7
Connection requests	10-9
Device Name	10-10
Device Search	10-8
Handsfree Setting	10-10
My Device Details.....	10-8
One File Transfer (sending).....	10-10
Paired Devices	10-9
Settings	10-10
Sound Output	10-10
Switch On/Off	10-8
Timeout	10-10

Transferring Files.....	10-10
Visibility	10-9
BookSurfing®	18-5

C

Calculator.....	12-13
Calendar (schedule).....	12-2
Alarm Settings.....	12-6
All Appointments	12-7
All This 2Months/All This 6Months	12-7
All This Month/Up to Last Month.....	12-7
All This Week/Up to Last Week	12-7
Assign Tone/Video	12-5
Calendar Options	12-5
Category	12-4
Default View	12-2
Deleting entries	12-7
Duration.....	12-5
Edit	12-7
Editing entries	12-7
Format.....	9-16
Location.....	12-4
Memory Status.....	12-6
Opening Calendar.....	12-2
Opening entries.....	12-6
Repeat.....	12-5
Saving entries	12-4
Secret.....	12-5
Set Colour	12-3

- Set Holiday 12-3
- Stamp 12-3
- Stopping Alarm 12-5
- This Appointment/All This Day 12-7
- Unlock Temporarily 12-6
- Call Barring** **13-6**
- Call Costs** **2-14, 9-24**
- Call Forwarding** **13-3**
- Call Log** **2-12**
- Call Settings** **9-24, 9-26**
- Call Time Counter** **9-26**
- Call Timers** **2-13**
- Call Waiting** **13-5**
 - Incoming Calls 13-5
 - While Someone is on Hold 13-5
- Caller ID** **13-8**
 - Show My Number 13-8
- Caller Voice** **2-11**
- Calling from Outside Japan** **2-16**
- Calls (placing/ending)** **2-2**
- Camera** **6-2**
 - Add Frame 6-11
 - Auto Save 6-16
 - Auto Shut-off 6-2
 - Camera Effects 6-11
 - Capturing Still Images 6-6
 - Continuous Shoot 6-10
 - Display Indicators 6-14
 - Exporting Images 6-2
 - Exposure 6-15
 - Image Settings 6-15
- Internal Camera/External Camera 6-3, 6-16
- Key Assignments 6-3
- Microphone 6-15
- Mobile Light 6-14
- Opening Still Images 6-8
- Panorama Picture 6-12
- Picture Size 6-15
- Picture/Video Quality 6-15
- Playing Video 6-8
- Portrait/Macro Selector 6-3
- Record Time/Size 6-15
- Recording Video 6-7
- Save Pictures to 6-16
- Save Videos to 6-16
- Scene 6-16
- SD VIDEO 6-8
- Sending Images 6-13
- Shooting Options 6-14
- Shutter Click 6-2
- Shutter Sound 6-14
- Video Encode 6-15
- Center Access Code** **1-25**
- Change Menu** **1-16, 1-22**
- Change to Bcc** **14-5**
- Change to Cc** **14-5**
- Change to To** **14-5**
- Character Code List** **20-14**
- Character Codes (entering)** **3-5**
- Charger** **xvii, xix, 1-9**
- Charging** **1-9**
- Circle Talk** **19-8**
 - Accepting requests 19-10
 - Call Circle Talk 2-12
 - Creating member list 19-10
 - Deleting members/Groups 19-11
 - Editing member list 19-11
 - Editing members/Groups 19-11
 - Incoming Calls 19-11
 - Initiating 19-8
 - Loudspeaker 19-11
 - Rejoining 19-9
 - Settings 19-11
 - Window Description 19-9
- Conference Call** **13-6**
 - Dial New Number 13-6
 - Multi Party 13-6
 - Swap Calls 13-6
- Content Key** **1-7**
- Content Search** **i**
- Correction (Picture Editor)** **8-13**
- Cost Units** **2-14**
- Countdown Timer** **12-17**
- Country Codes** **9-26**
 - Adding 9-26
 - Changing 9-26
 - Deleting 9-26
- Custom Screens** **9-9**
 - Custom Screen Keys 9-9
 - Downloading 9-9
 - Setup 9-10
- Customer Service** **20-39**

Customizing Handset Modes	9-4	System Graphics	9-5	New Folder	18-5
Customizing Handset Responses	9-2	Vivid Mode	9-14	Reading Books	18-4
Any Key Answer	9-3	Wallpaper	9-4	Reading Dictionaries	18-4
Event Light	9-3	Display Call Cost	9-26	Renaming folders/files	18-5
Status Light	9-3	Display Indicators	1-6	Switch Folders.....	18-5
Vibration	9-3	Display Saving	9-12	e-Books (Japanese)	18-4
Volume	9-2	Display Size (Video Output)	9-14	Emergency Calls	2-20
Customizing Normal Mode	9-2	Document Viewer	12-16	Handset restrictions	2-20
D					
Data Counter	9-25	Key Assignments.....	12-16	Emergency Location Report	2-20
Data Folder	8-2	Loupe	12-16	Encode	11-5
Details	8-3	Viewing on external devices	12-16	Engaged Call Operations	2-10
Memory Status	8-2	Download Dictionary	3-9	English	9-11
Switching File List View	8-3	Acquire	3-9	Entertainment	18-1
Date & Time	9-16	Cancel	3-9	Estimated Hours of Use	1-10
Date Format	9-16	Info	3-9	Event Light (Mode Settings)	9-4
Datum On/Off	10-12	DPOF	11-6	Expenses Memo	12-18
Daylight Saving	9-17, 12-13	Add Date	11-7	Add New Expense.....	12-18
Desktop Holder	1-14	Check Settings	11-7	Change Amount	12-18
Dialled Numbers	2-4, 2-12	For All Pictures	11-7	Change Category	12-18
Digital Zoom	6-3	Index Print	11-7	Deleting entries	12-18
Display	1-6, 9-4	Number of Copies	11-7	Editing entries	12-18
Clock/Calendar	9-6	Reset Settings	11-7	Totals.....	12-18
Dial Number	9-14	Drive Mode	2-17	External Display	1-8
Font Settings	9-5	E			
Greeting Message	9-14	Earpiece Volume	2-10, 9-26	Caller Display	9-12
Light Settings.....	9-12	e-Book Viewer	18-4	Clock Type.....	9-12
Settings	9-4, 9-14	Deleting folders/files	18-5	Clock View	1-8
Show Indicators	9-14	Details	18-5	Display Date & Time	9-12
Show Operator Name	9-14	Downloading e-Books	18-4	Duration.....	9-12
		Moving files	18-5	Indicators.....	1-8
				Messages.....	9-12

F		Frame (Picture Editor)	8-13	Registering Members.....	19-4
Face Arrange	8-12	Function List	20-8	Registration Release.....	19-6
Face Recognition		G		Rejection notices.....	19-6
Activating & Canceling	9-21	GSM	2-15	Renaming Groups.....	19-6
Conductor Setting.....	9-22	H		Request Reply.....	19-7
Opening Contact Information	9-21	Handset	1-4	Settings	19-7
Report	9-22	Handset Closed	1-8	Standby Window	19-4
Saving Portraits	9-20	Handset Code	1-25	Status Setting.....	19-7
Security Level	9-22	Changing.....	9-17	Status Update	19-7
Settings	9-22	Handset Locks	9-17	Window Description	19-5
Unlocking.....	9-21	Handset Menus	1-18	I	
User Registration.....	9-20	Handset Open	1-8	IC Card	17-2
Familiar Usability	9-11	Handset Positions	1-8	IC Card Lock	17-5
Canceling	9-11	Handset Security	9-17	IC Card Status.....	17-7
Downloading.....	9-11	Handsfree devices	10-9	In-Car Charger	1-15
Setup.....	9-11	Hide My ID	2-2	Incoming calls (answering)	2-6
FeliCa	17-2	History Lock	9-19	Incoming Calls (Call Barring)	13-6
File Format (Picture Editor)	8-13	Hold	2-10	Canceling	13-7
Files (copying)	8-7	Hot Status	19-3	Setting	13-7
Files (moving)	8-7	Answer Status	19-7	Information	2-7
Files (opening)	8-3	Cancellation notices	19-6	Opening items	2-7
Files (sorting)	8-5	Changing My Status.....	19-3	Opening list manually.....	2-7
Files (switching list view)	8-3	Connection Setting.....	19-4	Infrared	10-2
Files/folders (deleting)	8-6	Editing member list.....	19-6	All File Transfer (receiving).....	10-5
Files/folders (managing)	8-5	Moving members.....	19-6	All File Transfer (sending)	10-4
Files/folders (renaming)	8-6	Notification List.....	19-7	Authorisation Code.....	10-2
Flash®	8-2	Opening.....	19-5	One File Transfer (receiving).....	10-5
Folders (adding)	8-5	Registering by sending requests.....	19-4	Receiving Files.....	10-5
Font Settings	9-5	Registering from received requests	19-5	Receiving Folders	10-6
Format (time/date)	9-16			Sending Files	10-4

Chat Folder.....	14-30	Message List View	14-18	Recording & attaching sounds	14-7
Classify.....	14-29	Message Notice	14-32	Remote Forward	14-19
Customizing Handset Address.....	14-2	Messages (checking)	14-21	Remote Fwd. Action.....	14-11
Delete (Server Mail)	14-19	Messages (copying content)	14-22	Reply	14-23
Delete All (Server Mail)	14-19	Messages (creating).....	2-12, 14-3	Reply All	14-23
Delete NG.....	14-12	Messages (deleting).....	14-25	Reply Request.....	14-12, 14-16
Delivery Failure.....	14-3	Messages (forwarding).....	14-24	Reply To Settings	14-13, 14-33
Delivery Report	14-11, 14-32	Messages (protecting).....	14-24	Retrieve All.....	14-19
Delivery Report (opening)	14-16	Messages (receiving)	14-15	Retrieve New Msg.	14-16
Display Effect.....	14-23	Messages (receiving calls during creation)	14-3	Retrieving Mail List.....	14-18
Display Speed (3D Pictogram).....	14-23	Messages (receiving out of Standby)	14-15	Ringtone volume	2-17
Editing/Deleting Recipients	14-5	Messages (sending).....	14-3	S! Mail	14-2
Expiry Time	14-12, 14-34	Messages (sending from Sent Messages).....	14-26	S! Mail (retrieving all Server Mail).....	14-19
Feeling Mail	14-10	Messages (sending from Unsent Messages).....	14-26	S! Mail (retrieving remaining portion)	14-19, 14-19
Feeling Mail (customizing handset response)	14-17	Messages (viewing on External Display)	14-15	S! Mail (sending)	14-4
Feeling Mail (receiving)	14-16	Messaging Folder Contents	14-17	S! Mail Notice	14-19
Files (attaching).....	14-7	Messaging Folders	14-20	S! Mail Settings	14-33
Folders (adding)	14-28	Messaging Settings.....	14-11	Save Address.....	14-26
Folders (deleting)	14-28	Move to Folder	14-29	Save to Phone Book	14-26
Font Size	14-22	My Folders.....	14-29	Saving attachments.....	14-27
Forward NG	14-12	Picture Appearance.....	14-33	Scroll Unit.....	14-33
Idle Screen Info. (Feeling Mail)	14-17	Placing calls (using linked info)	14-27	Secret Folder.....	14-32
Light.....	14-17	Priority.....	14-11	Selecting Multiple Messages.....	14-22
Mailbox Volume	14-20	Quick Reply Set.	14-32	Send File Settings.....	14-34
Memory Status	14-20	Quiz.....	14-12, 14-16	Send Reservation	14-13
Message Centre	14-34	Received Msg. View.....	14-32	Sending from Drafts	14-26
Message Contents	14-18			Sending Images	6-13
Message Details.....	14-19			Sending Status.....	14-32
Message DL (Abroad)	14-33			Sent Messages	14-20
Message DL (Japan)	14-33			Sent Msg. View	14-32

Server Mail Box	14-18	Multi Job	1-21	Optional Services	13-2	
Set Auto Delete	14-12	Multi Selector	ii	Status	13-2	
Set Auto Play File	14-7	Mute	2-10	Outgoing Calls (Call Barring)	13-6	
Set Secret.....	14-30	My Details	1-17, 4-19	Canceling	13-7	
Set Sent Cancel	14-25	My Pictograms	8-2	Setting	13-7	
Settings	14-32	N			Out-of-range	1-6
Signature Settings	14-14	Near Chat (Japanese)	19-12	P		
SIM Sync	14-21	Latest Information	19-13	Pager Code	3-5	
SMS.....	14-2	Receiving requests.....	19-13	Pager Code List	20-13	
SMS (character entry limit).....	14-11	Sending requests	19-13	Parts & Functions	1-4	
SMS (sending).....	14-11	Network Info	10-11	Password Lock	9-17	
SMS Settings.....	14-34	Network Password	1-25	Unlocking	9-18	
Sort.....	14-17	Changing.....	13-7	PC Site Browser	15-16	
Speed Mail	14-13	Network S! Applications	16-2	Activating/Canceling Pointer Navigation	15-5	
Switch to Read	14-21	Network Settings	10-11	Cookies	15-19	
Switch to Unread	14-21	Notepad	3-10	Delete Auth Info.....	15-18	
Templates	14-10	Add New Entry	3-10	Delete Cache	15-18	
Templates (changing name display)	14-10	Deleting	3-10	Delete Cookies.....	15-18	
Unsent Messages.....	14-20	Editing	3-10	Download to	15-18	
Using attachments.....	14-28	Inserting into text entry windows	3-10	Downloads	15-18	
Vibration Pattern	14-17	Opening.....	3-10	Enter URL	15-17	
View Mail Address	14-21	O			Flash® Restriction	15-19
Window Description.....	14-17	Offline Mode	2-17	Font Size	15-18	
Messaging (checking messages)	14-15	Activating.....	2-19	Function Shortcuts	15-8	
Messaging Mishaps	20-7	Canceling	2-19	History	15-17	
Microphone	1-5	One Hiragana Predictive Entry	3-7	Initialized Browser	15-18	
Minute Minder	9-26	One-Hiragana Conversion	3-7	Keep Auth Info.....	15-19	
Mobile Light	1-6	Optional Predictive Functions	3-7	Manufacture Number	15-18	
Mode Settings	9-2			Opening Yahoo! JAPAN.....	15-16	
Money Converter (Calculator)	12-14					

- Page Navigation 15-6, 15-18
 - Pointer 15-5
 - Quick Movement 15-17
 - Reset Settings 15-18
 - Root Certificates 15-19
 - Rotation 15-17
 - Script Settings 15-19
 - Scroll Unit 15-18
 - Secure Prompt 15-19
 - Security Settings 15-18
 - Send Referer 15-19
 - Settings 15-19
 - Speed Settings 15-5
 - Switching View 15-17
 - Warning Message 15-19
 - Zoom 15-17
 - Zoom Setting 15-19
 - Pen Light 1-21**
 - Phone Book 4-2**
 - By a-ka-sa-ta-na 4-9
 - By Category 4-9
 - By Reading 4-9
 - Category (customizing handset responses) 4-12
 - Category (moving) 4-11
 - Category (renaming) 4-11
 - Category Control 4-11
 - Copy 4-10
 - Customizing Handset Responses 4-5
 - Delete 4-11
 - Edit 4-10
 - Entry items 4-2
 - Mail Groups 4-12
 - Mail Groups (changing members) 4-13
 - Mail Groups (creating) 4-12
 - Mail Groups (deleting members) 4-13
 - Mail Groups (deleting) 4-13
 - Mail Groups (editing members) 4-13
 - Mail Groups (renaming) 4-13
 - Mail Groups (saving members) 4-12
 - Memory Status 4-3
 - New Number Prompt 4-15
 - Phone Book Lock 9-18
 - Picture 4-5
 - Placing calls 4-8
 - Save New Entry 4-15
 - Saving entries 4-4, 4-7
 - Saving files 8-8
 - Secret 4-7
 - Select Phone Book 4-15
 - Sort Entries 4-9
 - Unknown 13-8
 - Window Description 4-9
 - Phone Help 12-25**
 - Pictogram List 20-12**
 - Pictograms 3-4**
 - Picture Editor/Composite 8-9**
 - PIN 1-3**
 - Changing 9-23
 - Switch On/Off 9-23
 - Portrait/Macro Selector 1-6**
 - Power Off Sound 9-15**
 - Power On Sound 9-15**
 - Power on/off 1-16**
 - Predictive (conversion) 3-4**
 - Preset Folders 8-2**
 - Print 8-9**
- Q**
- QR Code 12-22**
 - Creating 12-22
 - Save To 12-22
 - Send As 12-22
 - Quick Address List 3-5**
 - Quick Operations 1-20**
- R**
- Received Calls 2-5, 2-12**
 - Redial 2-4**
 - Rejected Numbers 13-7, 13-8**
 - Adding numbers 13-8
 - Switch On/Off 13-8
 - Unknown 13-8
 - Withheld 13-8
 - Reset All 9-24**
 - Reset Settings (handset settings) 9-24**
 - Resize 8-10**
 - Retouch (Picture Editor) 8-11**
 - Retrieve NW Info 10-11**
 - Ringer Output 9-16**
 - Ringtone/Ringvideo 9-2**
 - Roaming 2-15**
 - Rotation Setting (Video Output) ... 9-14**

S

S! Address Book	4-15	Suspending/resuming	16-3	S! Town Library	19-2
Auto Sync Settings	4-18	Synchronization.....	16-3	Safety Precautions	xi
Backup	4-17	Vibration	16-6	SAR	xxix
Service Usage Outline	4-16	Video Output	16-2	Save and Send	6-13
Synchronization.....	4-18	S! Cast (Japanese)	18-2	Scan Barcode	12-19
View Log.....	4-18	Back Issues.....	18-2	Access Internet Sites	12-20
S! Applications	16-2	Copy Text	18-3	Continuous Mode	12-20
Application Volume.....	16-5	Font Size	18-3	Copy Text	12-21
Backlight.....	16-6	Get Latest Contents	18-2	Exposure	12-19
Blink.....	16-6	Opening information.....	18-2	Help.....	12-19
Calls & Alarms.....	16-6	Page Information.....	18-3	Mobile Light.....	12-19
Deleting	16-5	Save Items	18-3	Open Barcode.....	12-21
Details	16-3	Scroll Unit.....	18-3	Open Images.....	12-21
Display Messages	20-6	Service Registration & Content		Open Properties.....	12-21
Downloading.....	16-4	Subscription	18-2	Place Calls	12-20
Lifestyle-Appli	16-2	Using Information	18-3	Play Melodies.....	12-21
Managing.....	16-5	S! FeliCa (Japanese)	17-2	Quote & Send Mail.....	12-20
Memory All Clear.....	16-6	Call Remote Lock.....	17-6	Save to Data Folder	12-20
Memory Status	16-2	Checking balance.....	17-4	Save to Phone Book	12-20
Move to Card.....	16-5	IC Card lock.....	17-5	Saving	12-20
Permission.....	16-5	IC Card Status.....	17-7	Scan Code	12-20
Remote Control	16-2	IC Info Display	17-4	Scanned Results	12-21
S! Appli Request.....	19-12	Interface Settings	17-7	Scanning during Text Entry	12-20
Screensaver	16-4	Lifestyle-Appli	17-2	Send Mail	12-20
Screensaver Activation Time.....	16-6	Mail Remote Lock.....	17-5	Use for System Graphics	12-20
Set to Default.....	16-6	Remote Lock	17-5	Using Scan Results.....	12-20
Settings	16-5	Set to Default.....	17-7	Wallpaper.....	12-21
Starting.....	16-3	Settings	17-7	Scan Text	12-23
Surround.....	16-6	Transactions	17-3	Continue Part	12-24
		S! Loop (Japanese)	19-2	Exposure	12-24
		S! Town (Japanese)	19-2	Help.....	12-24

- Mobile Light 12-24
 - Reversed Text 12-24
 - Scan More 12-24
 - Scan Operations 12-24
 - Scanning during Text Entry 12-24
 - Text Scanner 12-24
 - SD Local Contents** 11-3
 - Secret entries** 9-23
 - Security Codes** 1-25
 - Select Network** 10-11
 - Self-timer** 6-9
 - Set as Ring Video** 8-8
 - Set as Ringtone** 8-8
 - Set as Wallpaper (Data Folder)** 8-7
 - Set Date/Time** 9-16
 - Set Preferred (Networks)** 10-11
 - Set Time Zone** 9-17, 12-13
 - Sharp Space Town** 15-10
 - Shortcuts** 1-19
 - Assigning 1-19
 - Moving 1-19
 - Opening menu 1-19
 - Set to Default 1-19
 - Show My ID** 2-2
 - Show Secret Data** 9-23
 - Side Keys** ii
 - Simple Menu** 1-22
 - Activating 1-22
 - Canceling 1-22
 - Operations 1-23
 - Slide Show** 8-4
 - Slides** 14-21
 - Small Light** 1-11
 - Softkeys** 1-18
 - Software Update** 20-2
 - Scheduled Update 20-3
 - Update Result 20-3
 - Sound Settings** 9-15
 - Space** 3-4
 - Specifications** 20-20
 - Speed Dial List** 4-14
 - Clear All 4-14
 - Delete 4-14
 - Saving Phone Numbers 4-14
 - Speed Dial 4-14
 - Split Picture** 8-14
 - Stamp (Picture Editor)** 8-11
 - Standby** 1-16, 1-18
 - Standby Window (Japanese)** 1-20, 9-6
 - Add News Content 9-7, 9-8
 - Assign Bookmark 9-8
 - Assign Member 9-8
 - Assign Shortcut 9-8
 - Calendar mode 9-7
 - Change Member Icons 9-8
 - Change Templates 9-7
 - Clock/Calendar 9-6
 - Communication mode 9-7
 - Customizing 9-7
 - Delete Member Icons 9-8
 - Delete Members 9-8
 - Delete Shortcuts/Bookmarks 9-8
 - Headline mode 9-6
 - Move Members 9-8
 - My Status Settings 9-8
 - News Speed 9-7
 - Shortcut mode 9-6
 - Target News 9-7
 - Status Light (Mode Settings)** 9-4
 - Stopwatch** 12-17
 - Surround** 9-16
 - SVG Files** 8-4
 - Symbols** 3-4
 - System Graphics** 9-5
 - System Sounds** 9-15
- ## T
- Tasks** 12-8
 - All Comp. Tasks 12-9
 - All Tasks 12-9
 - Deleting entries 12-9
 - Edit 12-9
 - Editing entries 12-9
 - Memory Status 12-9
 - Opening entries 12-9
 - Saving entries 12-8
 - Task Options 12-8
 - This Task 12-9
 - Unlock Temporarily 12-9
 - Text Entry** 3-2
 - Adding * 3-4
 - Adding ° 3-4
 - Alphanumerics 3-4

Copy	3-8
Cut	3-8
Deleting	3-8
Deleting characters on and after cursor	3-8
Editing	3-8
Emoticons	3-5
Entering	3-3
Font Size	3-6
Help	3-3
Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumeric Conversion	3-6
Jump to	3-6
Kanji	3-3
Key Assignments	20-10
Line Break	3-4
One Hiragana Word Call	3-7
One-Hiragana Conversion	3-7
Paste	3-8
Paste List	3-8
Phone Book (quoting information)	3-6
Phonetic Conversion	3-6
Previous Usage (conversion)	3-4
Quick Conversion	3-7
Recovering Deleted Characters	3-8
Reset Learning	3-7
Set Low Priority	3-7
Small Kana	3-4
Switching Entry Modes	3-2
Undo	3-6
Time Correction	9-17

Time Format	9-16
Touch Tones	2-11
Troubleshooting	20-4

U

URL Setting	10-12
USB Charge (Japanese)	10-12
User Dictionary	3-3, 3-9
Deleting	3-9
Editing	3-9
New Entry	3-9
USIM Card	1-2, 4-3
About USIM Card	1-2
USIM Card Installation	1-3
USIM PINs	1-3
Using This Manual	ii
Utility Software	x

V

Vibration	2-17
Video Call	5-2
Backlight	5-5
Camera Picture	5-4, 5-5
Digital Zoom	5-4
Enable/Disable DTMF	5-4
Engaged Video Call Operations	5-4
Exposure	5-4
Help	5-4
Hold	5-4
Hold Guidance Pict	5-5
Incoming Picture	5-5

Initiating/answering	5-3
Loudspeaker	5-2, 5-4, 5-5
Mirror Image	5-4
Mobile Light	5-4
Mute Microphone	5-5
Outgoing Picture	5-5
Remote Monitor	5-6
Settings	5-5
Switch Images	5-4
Transfer Audio	5-4
Video Output	5-4
Window Description	5-2

Video Output (activating)

Video Output (connecting to devices)	9-13
---	-------------

Video Output (image settings)

Voice Output	2-10
---------------------------	-------------

Voice Recorder

Playback	12-15
Recording	12-15
Recording Setting	12-15
Save Recording To	12-15

Voicemail

Call Voicemail	13-4
Initiating/Canceling	13-4
Missed Call Notification	13-5

Volume (ringtone)

Volume (System Sounds)	9-15
-------------------------------------	-------------

W

Wallpaper	9-4
------------------------	------------

Warning Signs	20-6
Warning Tone	9-15
Warranty	20-38
Weather	18-3
Weather Indicator	18-3
Manual Update	18-3
Settings	18-3
World Clock	12-13

Y

Yahoo! Keitai	15-2
Activating/Canceling Pointer Navigation	15-5
Advanced Features	15-10
Basic Operations	15-5
Bookmarks	15-10
Bookmarks (editing)	15-12
Bookmarks (editing titles)	15-12
Bookmarks (saving & opening)	15-11
Bookmarks (using folders)	15-12
Change to PC Browser	15-3
Char-code	15-10
Cookies	15-19
Copy Text	15-9
Cursor	15-5
Delete Auth Info	15-18
Delete Cache	15-18
Delete Cookies	15-18
Details	15-9
Download to	15-18
Downloads	15-18

Enter URL	15-4
Flash [®] Menu	15-10
Flash [®] Restriction	15-19
Font Size	15-18
Function Shortcuts	15-8
Help	15-9
History (deleting)	15-4
History (using)	15-4
Initialized Browser	15-18
Input Memory	15-9
Jump to Bottom	15-3
Jump to Top	15-3
Keep Auth Info	15-19
Manufacture Number	15-18
Opening Main Menu	15-3
Page Browsing	15-6
Pointer	15-5
Reload	15-9
Reset Settings	15-18
Root Certificates	15-19
Save Items	15-12
Saved Pages	15-10
Saved Pages (editing)	15-12
Saved Pages (editing titles)	15-12
Saved Pages (saving & opening)	15-11
Script Settings	15-19
Scroll Bar	15-5
Scroll Unit	15-18
Scrolling Pages	15-6
Search	15-9
Security	15-2

Security Settings	15-18
Selecting Items	15-5
Send Referer	15-19
Send URL	15-4, 15-9
Speed Settings	15-5
SSL	15-2
Streaming	15-13
Streaming (Backlight)	15-14
Streaming (Display Size)	15-14
Streaming (Sound Effects)	15-14
Switch Browser	15-3
Switching Frames	15-6
Tab	15-7
Tabbed Browsing	15-7
Uploading Files	15-10
User Authentication	15-3
Using Linked Info (mail addresses)	15-13
Using Linked Info (URLs)	15-13
Viewing Single Frame	15-6
乱数	15-10

Objectives

Backing Up

- Files 11-4
- Phone Book entries 4-17

Canceling

- Alarms 12-12
- Answer Phone 2-8
- Call Barring (Incoming Calls) 13-7
- Call Barring (Outgoing Calls) 13-7
- Call Waiting 13-5
- Download Dictionary 3-9
- IC Card Lock 17-5
- Keypad Lock 1-17
- Manner mode 2-18
- Missed Call Notification 13-5
- Offline Mode 2-19
- Password Lock 9-18
- Password Lock (Face Recognition) 9-21
- Secret (Messaging folders) 14-30
- Secret (Phone Book entries) 4-7
- Secret (schedule entries) 12-6
- Secret (tasks) 12-9
- Show My Number 13-8
- Simple Menu 1-22

Changing

- Font Size 3-6
- Handset Code 9-17
- Handset mail address 14-2
- Mode settings 9-4
- Network Password 13-7

- PINs 9-23

Checking/Opening

- Battery Strength 1-11
- Call Costs 2-14
- Call Log 2-12
- Call Time 2-13
- Hot Status 19-5
- Information 2-7
- Information (Live Monitor) 15-15
- Mailbox Volume 14-20
- Memory Status (Messaging folders) 14-20
- Memory Status (Phone Book) 4-3
- My Details 4-19
- Network Information 10-11
- New messages 14-15
- Notepad 3-10
- Schedule entries 12-6
- Sender/recipient details 14-21
- Status (Optional Services) 13-2
- Update Result 20-3
- Weather forecast 18-3

Copying

- Files 8-7
- Message contents 14-22
- Phone Book entries 4-10
- Scan results (Barcodes) 12-20
- Text 3-8
- Text (S! Cast) 18-3

Deleting

- Alarm entries 12-12

- Circle Talk members/Groups 19-11
- Files/folders 8-6
- Messages 14-20, 14-25
- Music/video files 7-11
- My Details 4-19
- Notepad entries 3-10
- Phone Book entries 4-11
- S! Applications 16-5
- Schedule entries 12-7
- Server Mail 14-20
- Tasks 12-9

Editing

- Characters 3-8
- Phone Book entries 4-10
- User Dictionary 3-9

Initiating

- Domestic calls 2-2
- Emergency calls 2-20
- International calls 2-3
- Video Calls 5-3

Inserting/Removing

- Battery 1-12
- Memory Card 11-2
- USIM Card 1-3

Opening/Showing

- Call Cost 9-26
- Call Time 9-26
- Caller information 9-12
- Clock 9-6, 9-12
- Data Folder 8-2
- Network Information 10-11

- Schedule entries..... 12-2
- Shortcuts menu 1-19
- Standby Window..... 1-20, 9-6
- Playing**
- Music/video 7-6
- Scanned images/melodies (Barcodes)
 12-21
- Voice files 12-15
- Voicemail messages..... 13-4
- Protecting**
- Call Log 9-19
- Mail records 9-19
- Messages 14-24
- Phone Book entries 4-7, 9-18
- Receiving**
- Complete messages..... 14-19
- Feeling Mail 14-16
- Messages 14-15
- S! Cast information 18-2
- Resetting/Formatting**
- Handset 9-24
- Memory Card 11-3
- Mode Settings 9-2
- PC Site Browser 15-18
- S! Application 16-6
- S! FeliCa 17-7
- Yahoo! Keitai 15-18
- Saving**
- Hot Status members..... 19-4
- Notepad entries 3-10
- Phone Book entries 4-4, 4-7
- User Dictionary entries 3-9
- Searching**
- Bluetooth® devices 10-8
- Music 7-3
- Phone Book entries 4-9
- Sending**
- Manufacture Number 15-18
- S! Mail 14-4
- SMS 14-11
- URL 15-4, 15-9
- Setting**
- Alarms 12-10
- Answer Phone 2-8, 9-4
- Anti Spam Measures 14-32
- Any Key Answer 9-3
- Backlight 9-12
- Bluetooth® 10-10
- Calendar (Standby) 9-6
- Call Barring (Incoming Calls) 13-7
- Call Barring (Outgoing Calls) 13-7
- Calls 9-24, 9-26
- Clock (Standby) 9-6
- Country Codes 9-26
- Custom Screen 9-10
- Date/time 9-16
- Display 9-4, 9-14
- Encode 11-5
- Event Light 9-4
- External Display 9-12
- Face Recognition 9-22
- Familiar Usability 9-11
- Fonts 9-5
- Format (date, time or Calendar) 9-16
- Handset Security 9-17
- IP Service 9-18
- Keypad Lock 1-17
- Location Info 10-12
- Manner mode 2-18
- Messaging 14-32
- Mobile Light 6-14
- Modes 9-2
- Network 10-11
- Offline Mode 2-19
- PC Site Browser 15-19
- PIN Entry 9-23
- PINs 9-23
- Rejected Numbers 13-8
- S! Application 16-5
- S! FeliCa 17-7
- S! Mail 14-33
- Screensaver 16-4
- Show My Number 13-8
- Simple Menu 1-22
- SMS 14-34
- Sound Output (music/video) 7-9
- Sounds 9-15
- Speed Dial List 4-14
- System Sounds 9-15
- Time/date 9-16
- Vibration 2-17, 9-4
- Video Call 5-5
- Volume (incoming transmissions) 9-4

Volume (ringtones)	9-2
Wallpaper	9-4
Weather Indicator	18-3

Warranty & Service

■ Warranty

Warranty is provided when you purchase handset.

- **Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.**
- **Read through contents and keep in a safe place.**
- **The warranty term is described in the warranty.**

■ After-Sales Services

See **P.20-4** "Troubleshooting" before contacting SoftBank for service or repairs. If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.20-39**) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.

- **Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.**
- **Out of warranty, possible repairs are performed upon request at subscriber expense.**

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest SoftBank shop or SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (**P.20-39**). Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.

Note ►

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.

Customer Service

For SoftBank handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Customer Centers

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at **157**
for General Information or **113** for Customer Assistance

SoftBank International Call Center

From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491**
(International charges will apply.)

■ Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Area	Service Center	Phone Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	☎ 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	☎ 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	☎ 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	☎ 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-250-113

SoftBank 814SH/815SH Instruction Manual

August 2007, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank shop.

**Model: SoftBank 814SH
815SH**

Manufacturer: SHARP CORPORATION



モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルにご協力を。

Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:

- Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.



Mind your mobile manners when carrying a handset.